This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 00329340 8

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

Maguire Sculp.t

A View of the Castle & part of the City of Moscow.

Dublin. Published by J. Christie 17. Ross Lane.

THE

WORLD DISPLAYED;

OR,

A COLLECTION

OF

VOYAGES AND TRAVELS,

SELECTED FROM

THE WRITERS OF ALL NATIONS.

EMBELLISHED WITH PLATES.

IN TEN VOLUMES.

VOL. VII.

CATHEDRAL LIBRARY, M. D. G. 111 E. 60TH STREET, NEW YORK CITY.

DUBLIN:

PRINTED BY J. CHRISTIE, 17, ROSS-LANE.

1815.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
436745
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.
1908

2042

910
W2

CONTENTS.

THE TRAVELS OF THE AMBASSADORS FROM THE DUKE OF HOLSTEIN INTO MOSCOVY, TARTARY AND PERSIA.

Page

Chap. I. A description of Livonia, and of the city of Revel; marriage ceremonies of the Livonians; description of Novogorod; entrance and reception of the ambassadors into Moscow..... 1

Chap. II. A particular description of Moscow, and of the climate, produce and inhabitants of Moscovy, with an account of their dress, manners and customs..... 13

Chap. III. The ambassadors embark on the river Mosca, enter Occa, arrive at Nisenovogorod, whence they proceed down the Volga. A description of the Ceremissian Tartars. Several towns described. A view of several extraordinary mountains, and of the most remarkable places; their arrival at Astrachan. A description of the island of Dolgoi, the city of Astrachan, and the country and inhabitants of Nagaia..... 39

Chap. IV. The ambassadors arrive at the city of Terki; are entertained by a Tartarian princess; narrowly escape destruction in a violent storm. Description of the province of Schirwan, and the village of Niasabath; visit the tombs of two Persian saints; make their public entry into Scamachie. Ceremonies used by the Armenians at the baptism of the cross; and by the Persians on the festival of the prophet Hali; description of the city of Scamachie, and the adjacent country..... 66

Chap. V. They leave Scamachie and proceed to Ardebil. The manner in which the festivals of Kurban and Ashur are celebrated; a description of Ardebil, and the sepulchres near it. Their arrival at Sulthania. That city with its mosques described. They thence proceed to Caswin, to Com, and to Katschan; a description of those cities, and of the scorpions and spiders of Katschan... 96

Chap. VI. The ambassadors enter Ispahan. A quarrel between the servants of the ambassadors and those of the Great Mogul. Their first audience of the sophi. A description of the marriage of an Armenian, and the baptism of an infant. A Swiss bravely suffers death, rather than become a Mahometan. A curious hunting-match. The manner in which the sophi's women travel. A description of Ispahan..... 120

FEB 1 1908

Hamilton Grange

from circ. dept.

Page

Chap. VII. Departure of the ambassadors from Ispahan. A description of the pass of Pylas, and a view of the province of Ghilan. They arrive at Scamachie. A description of Derbent, and of the Daghestan Tartars. They arrive at the town of Andre; enter Circassia; arrive at Terki; proceed through a desolate forest to Astrachan; arrive at Moscow, and return to Gottorp..... 149

THE TRAVELS OF MR. JONAS HANWAY THROUGH RUSSIA INTO PERSIA, AND RETURN THROUGH GERMANY AND HOLLAND.

Chap. I. Mr. Hanway sails to Riga, from whence he proceeds by land to Petersburgh. Takes the charge of a caravan of woollen goods for Persia. A description of Valdai and Twere; of the city of Moscow. Manners of the Cossacks. Remarks on the Calmuck Tartars. Mr. Hanway arrives at Astrachan..... 177

Chap. II. A description of Astrachan, its fisheries and trade. An account of the neighbouring Tartars, of the Calmuck settlements, and of the river Volga, with the method of curing caviare. The author arrives at Langarood-bay, and from thence proceeds to Astrabad. A description of the Persian manner of smoking, and other customs of the inhabitants. A rebellion breaks out; the author in great distress; the city taken, and the caravan designed for Mesched plundered..... 194

Chap. III. Mr. Hanway arrives at Balfrush; joins the shah's forces; retires before the Turkuman Tartars; is kindly received by Mr. Elton, and by Hadgee Zamon. The Persian manner of eating, and the nature of their beds. A description of the city of Casbin. The author's arrival at the Persian camp..... 213

Chap. IV. A description of the Persian camp. Of the shah's women; their manner of travelling. Journey from the Persian camp to Langarood. A description of the country. An account of the Persian couriers; of the Persian women, their marriages and domestic slavery. A description of the province of Ghilan..... 233

Chap. V. Second journey from Langarood to Astrabad. A description of the province of Mazanderan; the cities of Amul and Balfrush; of the causeway built by Shah Abbas, and of the famous palace of Ashereff; pyramids of human heads at the entrance of Astrabad; cruelties exercised on the rebels; Mr. Hanway recovers his money and effects. A description of the Persian paper and ink; of the everlasting fire of the Guebres, and of springs of naphtha..... 248

Page

Chap. VI. Mr. Hanway returns to Russia, arrives at Petersburgh; its revenues, number of inhabitants, climate, persons and dress of the people 269

Chap. VII. Mr. Hanway leaves Petersburgh. A description of Cronstadt, Revel and Dantzic. His travels through Pomerania to Berlin, which is described. A description of Wirtemberg and Dresden. Of the porcelain manufacture at Meissen, and of the hunting palace of St. Hubertsburg..... 279

Chap. VIII. An account of Leipsic, and a succinct view of the little sovereignties of Anhalt Koethen, Anhalt Dessau, Binburg, and Zerbst; a description of the cities of Magdeburgh, Wolfenbuttel, and Brunswick; of the city of Hanover, and palace of Herenhausen..... 299

Chap. IX. Mr. Hanway proceeds to Zell, and thence to Hamburgh and Bremen, which are described. He arrives at Amsterdam; a description of that city, and of the manners of the Dutch; and also of Haerlem, Leyden, the Hague, Dort, Rotterdam, and Helvoet, where Mr. Hanway embarks for England, and lands at Harwich 304

THE TRAVELS OF SIR JOHN CHARDIN THROUGH MINGRELIA AND GEORGIA INTO PERSIA.

Chap. I. He sails through the Thracian Bosphorus into the Euxine, or Black Sea; touches at Caffa, Donslow, and Cape Cuodos; a description of the country of the Circassian Tartars; manners, customs, and religion of the Mingrelians; of the principality of Curiel, and the kingdom of Imeretta..... 321

Chap. II. A description of Isgaour. A war breaks out, and a trade is carried on in slaves. Sir John Chardin proceeds to the village of Anarghia, and thence to Sipias, the residence of some Theatine monks, where he is visited and invited to dinner by a Mingrelian princess 335

Chap. III. The author leaves Anarghia. The Euxine, or Black Sea, described. He proceeds to Gonia, then passes over Mount Caucasus, which is described. His arrival at Teflis, and return to Mingrelia. Treachery of his valet 356

Chap. IV. A description of Georgia, and of the manners of the inhabitants; the capital city, Teflis, described. Sir John Chardin proceeds to Dilyjan, and thence to Irivan, which, with the customs and manners of the inhabitants is described. He travels to Nacchivan, Abrener, Julfa, and Taurus to Ispahan..... 373

Chap. V. The author leaves Ispahan, and visits the remains of the ancient palace of Persepolis, which are particularly described; proceeds to Schiras, to Laer, arrives at Gambroon..... 400

DIRECTIONS FOR PLACING THE PLATES

OF THE SEVENTH VOLUME.

A View of the Castle and part of the city of Moscow.....Frontispiece
The Hall in which the ambassadors are entertained.....Page 125
A View of the great Meidan, or Market, before the Shah's palace at Ispahan..... 145
The Tower of Horis at Ispahan..... 149
Cossacks of the Don..... 187
Calmuck Tartars..... 200
Pyramids of Heads at the entrance of Astrabad..... 257
The Czarina's manner of travelling in winter..... 274
The Arsenal at Berlin..... 286
The Theatre at Berlin..... 287
The Stadthouse at Amsterdam..... 314
A View of the Ruins of the Palace of Persepolis from the east..... 402
The ascent to the Columns..... 403
The Portico to the east..... 408
A beautiful Avenue near the king's garden at Schiras..... 420

CATHEDRAL LIBRARY
111
NEW YORK CITY.

THE

WORLD DISPLAYED.

THE TRAVELS

OF THE

AMBASSADORS FROM THE DUKE OF HOLSTEIN INTO MOSCOVY, TARTARY AND PERSIA.

CHAP. I.

A description of Livonia, and of the city of Revel; marriage ceremonies of the Livonians; description of Novogorod; entrance and reception of the ambassadors into Moscow.

FREDERIC duke of Holstein, after building of the city of Frederickstadt, resolved to settle the silk trade there; and as silk was then brought by land from Persia by the way of Moscovy, he, in the year 1633, appointed Philip Crusius, his privy counsellor, and Otto Brugman, a merchant of Hamburgh, his ambassadors to the Czar and to the Sophi. As their first voyage to Russia is but little interesting or instructive, we shall here omit it, and proceed to the second, in which they set sail from Hamburgh, with a numerous retinue, on the 21st of October, 1635; but meeting with several storms, and at last, finding it impossible to save the ship, the ambassadors, with some of their retinue, were,

on the 8th of November, carried ashore on the island of Hogland. However, all the men, the greatest part of the goods, and seven horses, were saved; their chief loss being a clock, valued at one thousand pounds sterling, which was broken to pieces by the horses struggling to get loose.

They now sheltered themselves in some miserable cottages inhabited by Livonians, where they dried their clothes; but their provisions being either lost or spoiled by the sea-water, they were under the greatest apprehensions of being reduced to feed on the bark of trees, as had been the case of some who had been forced to winter in that island. They, however, supplied their present necessities with what little biscuit they had saved, which, being soaked in salt water, they had boiled in fresh, and putting in some fennel and cummin seed, they made it into pottage; and sometimes they had the happiness of catching a few fish.

The isle of Hogland, which is so named from its height, may be seen at a great distance at sea. It is about three leagues in length, and one in breadth, and is covered with rocks, fir-trees and thorns.

On the 17th the ambassadors prevailed on two fishing-boats to transport them to the continent, with five attendants in each: but it being twelve leagues over, they had scarce sailed five, when the wind turning against them, they, with much difficulty, persuaded the fishermen not to return back, but to land them on an island, which they reached before night, where they were obliged to sup upon a Milan cheese; however, the next day, after suffering several squalls of wind, they landed in the province of Estonia. Four days after, two barks being forced into Hogland by stress of weather, those

who had been left there took this opportunity of being carried with the remaining baggage and horses to the continent, where they safely arrived on the 24th, and after having staid some days to refresh themselves, proceeded from thence to Revel, which they reached on the 2d of November.

Revel is a port town of Livonia, and the capital of Estonia, or East Land. It is situated in twenty-four degrees east longitude, and fifty-nine degrees north latitude, upon the south entrance of the gulf of Finland. It is a large city, and as it has one of the most commodious harbours in the Baltic, was, for above three hundred years, a member of the Hanseatic League. The castle is built upon a rock, and is surrounded by precipices on all sides, except towards the city. The inhabitants profess the Lutheran religion, and their ecclesiastical affairs are managed by a consistory and superintendant. Their political constitution is democratical; the magistrate being obliged, in affairs of moment, to take the advice of the chief men of all the corporations.

Livonia is bounded by the gulf of Finland to the north; by Ingria and great Novogorod on the east; by Lithuania and Courland on the south; and by the Baltic on the west. It is about one hundred and sixty miles long, and one hundred and twenty broad; and is usually divided into Estonia, and Letteland or Lesticia. Its chief towns are Revel, Narva and Riga, which have all good harbours. Livonia abounds in all sorts of grain, and more particularly in wheat, the grounds having been much improved and fitted for tillage, by setting the great forests on fire, the ashes of which have enriched the soil. They have also abundance of cattle and fowl, which are much cheaper here than in Germany; a

on the 8th of November, carried ashore on the island of Hogland. However, all the men, the greatest part of the goods, and seven horses, were saved; their chief loss being a clock, valued at one thousand pounds sterling, which was broken to pieces by the horses struggling to get loose.

They now sheltered themselves in some miserable cottages inhabited by Livonians, where they dried their clothes; but their provisions being either lost or spoiled by the sea-water, they were under the greatest apprehensions of being reduced to feed on the bark of trees, as had been the case of some who had been forced to winter in that island. They, however, supplied their present necessities with what little biscuit they had saved, which, being soaked in salt water, they had boiled in fresh, and putting in some fennel and cummin seed, they made it into pottage; and sometimes they had the happiness of catching a few fish.

The isle of Hogland, which is so named from its height, may be seen at a great distance at sea. It is about three leagues in length, and one in breadth, and is covered with rocks, fir-trees and thorns.

On the 17th the ambassadors prevailed on two fishing-boats to transport them to the continent, with five attendants in each: but it being twelve leagues over, they had scarce sailed five, when the wind turning against them, they, with much difficulty, persuaded the fishermen not to return back, but to land them on an island, which they reached before night, where they were obliged to sup upon a Milan cheese; however, the next day, after suffering several squalls of wind, they landed in the province of Estonia. Four days after, two barks being forced into Hogland by stress of weather, those

who had been left there took this opportunity of being carried with the remaining baggage and horses to the continent, where they safely arrived on the 24th, and after having staid some days to refresh themselves, proceeded from thence to Revel, which they reached on the 2d of November.

Revel is a port town of Livonia, and the capital of Estonia, or East Land. It is situated in twenty-four degrees east longitude, and fifty-nine degrees north latitude, upon the south entrance of the gulf of Finland. It is a large city, and as it has one of the most commodious harbours in the Baltic, was, for above three hundred years, a member of the Hanseatic League. The castle is built upon a rock, and is surrounded by precipices on all sides, except towards the city. The inhabitants profess the Lutheran religion, and their ecclesiastical affairs are managed by a consistory and superintendant. Their political constitution is democratical; the magistrate being obliged, in affairs of moment, to take the advice of the chief men of all the corporations.

Livonia is bounded by the gulf of Finland to the north; by Ingria and great Novogorod on the east; by Lithuania and Courland on the south; and by the Baltic on the west. It is about one hundred and sixty miles long, and one hundred and twenty broad; and is usually divided into Estonia, and Letteuland or Lesticia. Its chief towns are Revel, Narva and Riga, which have all good harbours. Livonia abounds in all sorts of grain, and more particularly in wheat, the grounds having been much improved and fitted for tillage, by setting the great forests on fire, the ashes of which have enriched the soil. They have also abundance of cattle and fowl, which are much cheaper here than in Germany; a

hare being sold for four pence, and a heath-cock for six pence.

The inhabitants of Livonia were involved in the darkness of Paganism till the twelfth century, and most of them are still so addicted to their pagan superstitions, as scarce to deserve the name of Christians. The ordinary women of Estonia wear their petticoats without plaits, and on their backs have little brass chains, with counters of the same metal hanging at the ends. Those who have the ambition to appear in a high rank, have a necklace of plates of silver, of the size of crown or half-crown pieces, but no thicker than the back of a knife; and upon the breast hangs one as large as a trencher. Both men and women are clothed either in coarse woollen stuff, or linen, and their shoes are either of the bark of trees, or of raw leather. Maids wear nothing on their heads, but let their hair hang carelessly, like the men.

The ceremonies after marriage are peculiar to themselves; for if a country fellow marries one of another town or village, he goes thither on horseback, sets her behind him, and makes her clasp him round with her right arm, holding in his hand a stick, cleft at the end, with a piece of brass money in it, which he gives to him who opens a brass wicket, through which he is to pass. Before him rides a person playing on a bag-pipe, and two of his friends with naked swords, who strike with them twice against the door of the house where the marriage is to be consummated. As soon as the bridegroom is seated, one of the swords is stuck in a beam over his head, to prevent the effects of charms; for which purpose, the bride also scatters many little pieces of red cloth on the road, especially at the

cross ways, and upon the graves of such children as have died without baptism, who are commonly buried on the high way. The bride sits at table with a veil over her face; and before the guests have been long seated, they both rise and go to bed, but return about two hours after, and sit down with the rest. The feast is concluded with dancing and drinking, till they fall down upon the floor.

To this account of Livonia by the secretary of the embassy, let it be added, that dreadful were the calamities suffered by this fertile country in the beginning of the present century; for while the Russians and Swedes were contending for its dominion, the czar Peter the Great, fearing that he should be unable to keep possession of that part he had taken from the Swedes, suffered the Calmucs, and other Tartars in his army, to commit unparalleled barbarities: and afterwards, when he conquered the whole country, observing that the natives were fonder of their old masters than of the Russians, he cruelly compelled the inhabitants to abandon the place of their nativity, driving multitudes in chains to the confines of the Caspian Sea. The czarina Catharine, who was born in Livonia, afterwards prevailed on him to recal them; but most of them perished before the publication of the edict: and other Russian nations being introduced here, it remains in the possession of Elizabeth, the present czarina.

But to proceed: a page, who had been sent to Gottorp for new credentials, and one of the interpreters, who had been dispatched to Moscow with an account of the shipwreck of the ambassadors, being returned, they sent their baggage in thirty-one sledges, and a few days after followed them. On

the 5th of March they arrived at Narva, a large city and port of Livonia, situated in the district of Allentaken, upon the river Narva, which rises out of the lake Peipus, and two leagues below the town falls into the gulf of Finland. About half a league above this town is a cataract, the waters of which break with such violence upon the rocks, that a kind of dewy cloud rising up high into the air, affords, in a sun-shiny day, the appearance of a rainbow. This river divides Livonia from Russia. There is a strong castle on the same side of the river as the town, and on the other side is the castle of Juanogorod, built by the Moscovites on a steep rock, which forms a kind of peninsula. Betwixt Revel and Narva are abundance of bears and wolves, which are very dangerous in winter, when the ground is covered with snow.

They left Narva on the 7th of March; and having received news on the 9th, while they were at Orlin, that the Russian pristaff waited on the frontiers, they immediately set out to meet him; and, having travelled about a league, found him in a wood, attended by twenty-four strelitzers and ninety sledges. The pristaff no sooner perceived the ambassadors alighting, but he came out of his sledge, clothed in a vest of flowered velvet, with a gold chain across his breast, his upper garment being lined with sables. They advanced slowly to meet each other, till coming up together, the ambassadors pulled off their hats, when the pristaff cried, "Ambassadors be uncovered;" and being told that they were so, he began to read his paper. "Knez Peter Alexiowitz Repnin, waywode of Novogorod, has sent me an order from the great lord czar, and grand duke, &c. to receive the ambassa-

dors Philip Crusius and Otto Brugman, and to accommodate you with horses, carriages, provisions, and all other necessaries for the continuation of your journey to Novogorod, and thence to Moscow."

The ambassadors returned him thanks, and he having given them the precedency, accompanied them to Novogorod, which is forty German leagues from Narva. They arrived there on the 11th, when the pristaff took the precedency of the ambassadors, for which he had received express orders from the waywode of Novogorod.

This city is situated in a spacious plain, upon the river Wolcoff, which rising from the lake of Ilmen, half a league above the city, and crossing the lake of Ladoga, is augmented by the river Niova, and discharges itself into the gulf of Finland. It abounds in all sorts of fish, but especially in bream. The city was formerly governed by its own prince, who was independent of the czar of Moscovy. Here the Hans Towns had their office; for the river being navigable from its source, and the country round about abounding in honey, flax, hemp, wheat, wax, and Russia leather, which is better dressed here than in any other part of Moscovy, this became the chief trading city of all the north; it being anciently a proverb, "Who can oppose God and the great city of Novogorod?" Indeed, from the number of its steeples, and the ruins of the walls, it sufficiently appears, that it was of much larger extent than at present, and, with great propriety, obtained the name of Novogorod Veliki, or Novogorod the Great.

The castle, which is on the other side of the river, is the residence of the governor, and is joined to the city by a bridge. Opposite to the castle is

first public audience, through a body of strelitzers, who made a lane from their house to the castle. After this audience, which only consisted in compliments of thanks to the czar, they returned to their lodgings, and, it being lent, one of the czar's carvers followed them with forty dishes of fried and boiled fish, and twelve sorts of liquor for their drinking: in return the ambassadors made the carver a present of a piece of gilt plate, and gave two crowns to each of the persons who carried the fish and liquor.

On the 19th of April they had a conference with the czar's commissioners, and the 10th, being Palm-Sunday, they having expressed their desire of seeing the annual procession, in which the Moscovites represent the entrance of our Saviour into Jerusalem, horses were sent to carry them and their retinue to a place near the castle-gate, where two small theatres were erected for that purpose; one for them, and the other for the Persian ambassador, who sat behind them.

After the service was performed in our Lady's church, the czar and patriarch came from thence out of the castle, in the following order: first appeared a boarded chariot, which was very large, but low, drawing after it a tree, on which hung many apples, figs and grapes, and within it four little boys, with surplices, singing Hosanna. Then came a considerable number of priests, in their surplices and copes, with banners, crosses and pictures, fastened to long poles; some of them singing, and others casting incense among the people. They were followed by the czar's factors, and these by the diaken, clerk, secretaries, knez and boyars, with branches of palm in their hands; after whom

came the czar himself, with a crown on his head; and most magnificently dressed, supported by his two principal counsellors of state, and leading by the bridle the patriarch's horse, which was covered with cloth, and dressed up like an ass. The patriarch had a white, round satin cap, adorned with pearls, and about it a very rich coronet; and in his right hand he carried a cross, richly set with diamonds, with which he gave his benediction to the spectators. He was surrounded by some metropolitans and bishops, and followed by a great number of priests, with books and censers in their hands. Fifty boys were seen to leave their red cassocks on the ground, while others spread pieces of cloth of an ell square, along the way where the procession passed.

The czar being come opposite the theatre where the two ambassadors were placed, stopped, and sent his interpreter to inquire after their health, and staid till their answer was brought him. This procession then proceeded to the church, and having continued there about half an hour, returned back to the castle. The patriarch is obliged to present the czar with a purse of four thousand crowns, for the honour he does him on this occasion, in leading the horse on which he rides. This ceremony is observed on the same day throughout all Moscovy, the governors of the provinces and the metropolitans supplying the place of the czar and the patriarch.

On the 17th of April the ambassadors saw them celebrate Easter-day with great rejoicings, which chiefly consist in great feasting and debauchery; the public houses being filled in the day, and the streets at night, with drunken people, as well ecclesiastics as laics, of both sexes. On this day

on the 8th of November, carried ashore on the island of Hogland. However, all the men, the greatest part of the goods, and seven horses, were saved; their chief loss being a clock, valued at one thousand pounds sterling, which was broken to pieces by the horses struggling to get loose.

They now sheltered themselves in some miserable cottages inhabited by Livonians, where they dried their clothes; but their provisions being either lost or spoiled by the sea-water, they were under the greatest apprehensions of being reduced to feed on the bark of trees, as had been the case of some who had been forced to winter in that island. They, however, supplied their present necessities with what little biscuit they had saved, which, being soaked in salt water, they had boiled in fresh, and putting in some fennel and cummin seed, they made it into pottage; and sometimes they had the happiness of catching a few fish.

The isle of Hogland, which is so named from its height, may be seen at a great distance at sea. It is about three leagues in length, and one in breadth, and is covered with rocks, fir-trees and thorns.

On the 17th the ambassadors prevailed on two fishing-boats to transport them to the continent, with five attendants in each: but it being twelve leagues over, they had scarce sailed five, when the wind turning against them, they, with much difficulty, persuaded the fishermen not to return back, but to land them on an island, which they reached before night, where they were obliged to sup upon a Milan cheese; however, the next day, after suffering several squalls of wind, they landed in the province of Estonia. Four days after, two barks being forced into Hogland by stress of weather, those

who had been left there took this opportunity of being carried with the remaining baggage and horses to the continent, where they safely arrived on the 24th, and after having staid some days to refresh themselves, proceeded from thence to Revel, which they reached on the 2d of November.

Revel is a port town of Livonia, and the capital of Estonia, or East Land. It is situated in twenty-four degrees east longitude, and fifty-nine degrees north latitude, upon the south entrance of the gulf of Finland. It is a large city, and as it has one of the most commodious harbours in the Baltic, was, for above three hundred years, a member of the Hanseatic League. The castle is built upon a rock, and is surrounded by precipices on all sides, except towards the city. The inhabitants profess the Lutheran religion, and their ecclesiastical affairs are managed by a consistory and superintendant. Their political constitution is democratical; the magistrate being obliged, in affairs of moment, to take the advice of the chief men of all the corporations.

Livonia is bounded by the gulf of Finland to the north; by Ingria and great Novogorod on the east; by Lithuania and Courland on the south; and by the Baltic on the west. It is about one hundred and sixty miles long, and one hundred and twenty broad; and is usually divided into Estonia, and Letteuland or Lesticia. Its chief towns are Revel, Narva and Riga, which have all good harbours. Livonia abounds in all sorts of grain, and more particularly in wheat, the grounds having been much improved and fitted for tillage, by setting the great forests on fire, the ashes of which have enriched the soil. They have also abundance of cattle and fowl, which are much cheaper here than in Germany; a

hare being sold for four pence, and a heath-cock for six pence.

The inhabitants of Livonia were involved in the darkness of Paganism till the twelfth century, and most of them are still so addicted to their pagan superstitions, as scarce to deserve the name of Christians. The ordinary women of Estonia wear their petticoats without plaits, and on their backs have little brass chains, with counters of the same metal hanging at the ends. Those who have the ambition to appear in a high rank, have a necklace of plates of silver, of the size of crown or half-crown pieces, but no thicker than the back of a knife; and upon the breast hangs one as large as a trencher. Both men and women are clothed either in coarse woollen stuff, or linen, and their shoes are either of the bark of trees, or of raw leather. Maids wear nothing on their heads, but let their hair hang carelessly, like the men.

The ceremonies after marriage are peculiar to themselves; for if a country fellow marries one of another town or village, he goes thither on horseback, sets her behind him, and makes her clasp him round with her right arm, holding in his hand a stick, cleft at the end, with a piece of brass money in it, which he gives to him who opens a brass wicket, through which he is to pass. Before him rides a person playing on a bag-pipe, and two of his friends with naked swords, who strike with them twice against the door of the house where the marriage is to be consummated. As soon as the bridegroom is seated, one of the swords is stuck in a beam over his head, to prevent the effects of charms; for which purpose, the bride also scatters many little pieces of red cloth on the road, especially at the

cross ways, and upon the graves of such children as have died without baptism, who are commonly buried on the high way. The bride sits at table with a veil over her face; and before the guests have been long seated, they both rise and go to bed, but return about two hours after, and sit down with the rest. The feast is concluded with dancing and drinking, till they fall down upon the floor.

To this account of Livonia by the secretary of the embassy, let it be added, that dreadful were the calamities suffered by this fertile country in the beginning of the present century; for while the Russians and Swedes were contending for its dominion, the czar Peter the Great, fearing that he should be unable to keep possession of that part he had taken from the Swedes, suffered the Calmucs, and other Tartars in his army, to commit unparalleled barbarities: and afterwards, when he conquered the whole country, observing that the natives were fonder of their old masters than of the Russians, he cruelly compelled the inhabitants to abandon the place of their nativity, driving multitudes in chains to the confines of the Caspian Sea. The czarina Catharine, who was born in Livonia, afterwards prevailed on him to recal them; but most of them perished before the publication of the edict: and other Russian nations being introduced here, it remains in the possession of Elizabeth, the present czarina.

But to proceed: a page, who had been sent to Gottorp for new credentials, and one of the interpreters, who had been dispatched to Moscow with an account of the shipwreck of the ambassadors, being returned, they sent their baggage in thirty-one sledges, and a few days after followed them. On

the 5th of March they arrived at Narva, a large city and port of Livonia, situated in the district of Allentaken, upon the river Narva, which rises out of the lake Peipus, and two leagues below the town falls into the gulf of Finland. About half a league above this town is a cataract, the waters of which break with such violence upon the rocks, that a kind of dewy cloud rising up high into the air, affords, in a sun-shiny day, the appearance of a rainbow. This river divides Livonia from Russia. There is a strong castle on the same side of the river as the town, and on the other side is the castle of Juanogorod, built by the Moscovites on a steep rock, which forms a kind of peninsula. Betwixt Revel and Narva are abundance of bears and wolves, which are very dangerous in winter, when the ground is covered with snow.

They left Narva on the 7th of March; and having received news on the 9th, while they were at Orlin, that the Russian pristaff waited on the frontiers, they immediately set out to meet him; and, having travelled about a league, found him in a wood, attended by twenty-four strelitzers and ninety sledges. The pristaff no sooner perceived the ambassadors alighting, but he came out of his sledge, clothed in a vest of flowered velvet, with a gold chain across his breast, his upper garment being lined with sables. They advanced slowly to meet each other, till coming up together, the ambassadors pulled off their hats, when the pristaff cried, "Ambassadors be uncovered;" and being told that they were so, he began to read his paper. "Knez Peter Alexiowitz Repnin, waywode of Novogorod, has sent me an order from the great lord czar, and grand duke, &c. to receive the ambassa-

dors Philip Crusius and Otto Brugman, and to accommodate you with horses, carriages, provisions, and all other necessaries for the continuation of your journey to Novogorod, and thence to Moscow."

The ambassadors returned him thanks, and he having given them the precedency, accompanied them to Novogorod, which is forty German leagues from Narva. They arrived there on the 11th, when the pristaff took the precedency of the ambassadors, for which he had received express orders from the waywode of Novogorod.

This city is situated in a spacious plain, upon the river Wolcoff, which rising from the lake of Ilmen, half a league above the city, and crossing the lake of Ladoga, is augmented by the river Niova, and discharges itself into the gulf of Finland. It abounds in all sorts of fish, but especially in bream. The city was formerly governed by its own prince, who was independent of the czar of Moscovy. Here the Hans Towns had their office; for the river being navigable from its source, and the country round about abounding in honey, flax, hemp, wheat, wax, and Russia leather, which is better dressed here than in any other part of Moscovy, this became the chief trading city of all the north; it being anciently a proverb, "Who can oppose God and the great city of Novogorod?" Indeed, from the number of its steeples, and the ruins of the walls, it sufficiently appears, that it was of much larger extent than at present, and, with great propriety, obtained the name of Novogorod Veliki, or Novogorod the Great.

The castle, which is on the other side of the river, is the residence of the governor, and is joined to the city by a bridge. Opposite to the castle is

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
436745
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.
1908

2042

910
W2

CONTENTS.

THE TRAVELS OF THE AMBASSADORS FROM THE DUKE OF HOLSTEIN INTO MOSCOVY, TARTARY AND PERSIA.

Page

Chap. I. A description of Livonia, and of the city of Revel; marriage ceremonies of the Livonians; description of Novogorod; entrance and reception of the ambassadors into Moscow..... 1

Chap. II. A particular description of Moscow, and of the climate, produce and inhabitants of Moscovy, with an account of their dress, manners and customs..... 13

Chap. III. The ambassadors embark on the river Mosca, enter Occa, arrive at Nisenovogorod, whence they proceed down the Volga. A description of the Ceremissian Tartars. Several towns described. A view of several extraordinary mountains, and of the most remarkable places; their arrival at Astrachan. A description of the island of Dolgoi, the city of Astrachan, and the country and inhabitants of Nagaia..... 39

Chap. IV. The ambassadors arrive at the city of Terki; are entertained by a Tartarian princess; narrowly escape destruction in a violent storm. Description of the province of Schirwan, and the village of Niasabath; visit the tombs of two Persian saints; make their public entry into Scamachie. Ceremonies used by the Armenians at the baptism of the cross; and by the Persians on the festival of the prophet Hali; description of the city of Scamachie, and the adjacent country..... 66

Chap. V. They leave Scamachie and proceed to Ardebil. The manner in which the festivals of Kurban and Ashur are celebrated; a description of Ardebil, and the sepulchres near it. Their arrival at Sulthania. That city with its mosques described. They thence proceed to Caswin, to Com, and to Katschan; a description of those cities, and of the scorpions and spiders of Katschan... 96

Chap. VI. The ambassadors enter Ispahan. A quarrel between the servants of the ambassadors and those of the Great Mogul. Their first audience of the sophi. A description of the marriage of an Armenian, and the baptism of an infant. A Swiss bravely suffers death, rather than become a Mahometan. A curious hunting-match. The manner in which the sophi's women travel. A description of Ispahan..... 120

FEB 1 1908

Page

Chap. VII. Departure of the ambassadors from Ispahan. A description of the pass of Pylas, and a view of the province of Ghilan. They arrive at Scamachie. A description of Derbent, and of the Daghestan Tartars. They arrive at the town of Andre; enter Circassia; arrive at Terki; proceed through a desolate forest to Astrachan; arrive at Moscow, and return to Gottorp..... 149

THE TRAVELS OF MR. JONAS HANWAY THROUGH RUSSIA INTO PERSIA, AND RETURN THROUGH GERMANY AND HOLLAND.

Chap. I. Mr. Hanway sails to Riga, from whence he proceeds by land to Petersburgh. Takes the charge of a caravan of woollen goods for Persia. A description of Valdai and Twere; of the city of Moscow. Manners of the Cossacks. Remarks on the Calmuck Tartars. Mr. Hanway arrives at Astrachan..... 177

Chap. II. A description of Astrachan, its fisheries and trade. An account of the neighbouring Tartars, of the Calmuck settlements, and of the river Volga, with the method of curing caviare. The author arrives at Langarood-bay, and from thence proceeds to Astrabad. A description of the Persian manner of smoking, and other customs of the inhabitants. A rebellion breaks out; the author in great distress; the city taken, and the caravan designed for Mesched plundered..... 194

Chap. III. Mr. Hanway arrives at Balfrush; joins the shah's forces; retires before the Turkuman Tartars; is kindly received by Mr. Elton, and by Hadgee Zamon. The Persian manner of eating, and the nature of their beds. A description of the city of Casbin. The author's arrival at the Persian camp..... 213

Chap. IV. A description of the Persian camp. Of the shah's women; their manner of travelling. Journey from the Persian camp to Langarood. A description of the country. An account of the Persian courtiers; of the Persian women, their marriages and domestic slavery. A description of the province of Ghilan..... 233

Chap. V. Second journey from Langarood to Astrabad. A description of the province of Mazanderan; the cities of Amul and Balfrush; of the causeway built by Shah Abbas, and of the famous palace of Ashereff; pyramids of human heads at the entrance of Astrabad; cruelties exercised on the rebels; Mr. Hanway recovers his money and effects. A description of the Persian paper and ink; of the everlasting fire of the Guebres, and of springs of naphtha..... 248

Page

Chap. VI. Mr. Hanway returns to Russia, arrives at Petersburgh; its revenues, number of inhabitants, climate, persons and dress of the people 269

Chap. VII. Mr. Hanway leaves Petersburgh. A description of Cronstadt, Revel and Dantzic. His travels through Pomerania to Berlin, which is described. A description of Wirtemberg and Dresden. Of the porcelain manufacture at Meissen, and of the hunting palace of St. Hubertsburg..... 279

Chap. VIII. An account of Leipsic, and a succinct view of the little sovereignties of Anhalt Koethen, Anhalt Dessau, Binburg, and Zerbst; a description of the cities of Magdeburgh, Wolfenbuttel, and Brunswick; of the city of Hanover, and palace of Herenhausen..... 299

Chap. IX. Mr. Hanway proceeds to Zell, and thence to Hamburgh and Bremen, which are described. He arrives at Amsterdam; a description of that city, and of the manners of the Dutch; and also of Haerlem, Leyden, the Hague, Dort, Rotterdam, and Helvoet, where Mr. Hanway embarks for England, and lands at Harwich 304

THE TRAVELS OF SIR JOHN CHARDIN THROUGH MINGRELIA AND GEORGIA INTO PERSIA.

Chap. I. He sails through the Thracian Bosphorus into the Euxine, or Black Sea; touches at Caffa, Donslow, and Cape Cuodos; a description of the country of the Circassian Tartars; manners, customs, and religion of the Mingrelians; of the principality of Curiel, and the kingdom of Imeretta..... 321

Chap. II. A description of Isgaour. A war breaks out, and a trade is carried on in slaves. Sir John Chardin proceeds to the village of Anarghia, and thence to Sipias, the residence of some Theatine monks, where he is visited and invited to dinner by a Mingrelian princess 335

Chap. III. The author leaves Anarghia. The Euxine, or Black Sea, described. He proceeds to Gonia, then passes over Mount Caucasus, which is described. His arrival at Teflis, and return to Mingrelia. Treachery of his valet 356

Chap. IV. A description of Georgia, and of the manners of the inhabitants; the capital city, Teflis, described. Sir John Chardin proceeds to Dilyjan, and thence to Irivan, which, with the customs and manners of the inhabitants is described. He travels to Nacchivan, Abrener, Julfa, and Taurus to Ispahan..... 373

Chap. V. The author leaves Ispahan, and visits the remains of the ancient palace of Persepolis, which are particularly described; proceeds to Schiras, to Laer, arrives at Gambroon..... 400

ill taste. If they would keep it working a good while, they set it in a warm place; and if they would have it only for present use, they put it into a cool room. To add to the flavour, they sometimes put in a little bag filled with cinnamon, grains of paradise, and a few cloves.

Drunkenness is so common a vice in Moscovy, that scarce any body is exempt from it, for the brandy they take at their meals commonly introduces a debauch. Nay, the vulgar are so much addicted to this vice, that they are frequently seen coming out of their tippling-houses quite naked, and without the least shame, covering the parts, which in other countries people are taught to conceal, with only a handful of herbs. The women are no less addicted to this vice than the men, nothing being more common among them than to follow their husbands to the tippling-house, where they will be sure to make the cup go merrily round; and, when their husbands are fallen asleep upon the floor, they even seat themselves upon them, and continue drinking till they tumble down among them.

The Moscovites are extremely quarrelsome and abusive; but though they vent their passion with such noise, that a stranger would imagine it impossible for them to part without bloodshed, yet they seldom draw blood, unless it be with a switch, or a blow with their fists; they generally satisfy their revenge with a kick or two on the belly. Indeed, if a quarrel happens between two persons of distinction, they decide it on horseback, but not with sword and pistol; the greatest stretch of their resentment arising no higher than to fight it out with a good whip.

The base disposition of the Moscovites, the meanness of their education, and that state of slavery in which all, from the highest to the lowest, are born, have such an effect upon them, that nothing but the cudgel and whip can bring them to reason; and from this slavish chastisement even the greatest boyars are not exempted, who make no scruple of confessing that they are the czar's slaves. As they have an utter aversion to the manners and customs of all foreigners, they are insensible of the liberty which other nations enjoy; and the profound reverence they pay to their superiors, after they have received a good cudgelling, is an infallible demonstration of the slavishness of their dispositions.

As the lords are absolute slaves of the czar, so they keep a great number of slaves of their own, both in their country-houses and farms, and in their service in the city, who, in the night, frequently commit great disorders in the streets of Moscow, and also make the roads about that city very unsafe for travellers, whom they rob and murder without remorse. These slaves are sold by their masters, in the same manner as we do our horses and cows. Nay, a father may dispose of his son for his own advantage, which, however, they seldom do, unless it be to satisfy their creditors.

The greatest pride of persons of quality in Moscovy consists in their retinues, which, however, put them to no great expence; for though they sometimes keep fifty or sixty slaves, have a good number of horses, and also plenty of provisions, beer, mead, and other liquors, at their tables, yet they are furnished with every thing from their farms, which are cultivated by slaves, who stand them in very little money. Besides, most of the entertain-

ments of the boyars, and governors of places, are only made for those who stand in need of their favour, and are obliged in return to make very considerable presents. When at these entertainments they intend to show a more than ordinary respect to their friends, they permit them to see and salute their wives. Our author having dined with count Leo Alexander de Slakow, that nobleman introduced him into another room, where his lady was richly dressed in her wedding-clothes, and attended by a gentlewoman with a bottle in her hand: the lady bid her fill a silver cup, and taking it from her, put it to her lips, and desired him to drink it off, which he having done three times, the count desired him to kiss her, which he did, after which she presented him with a handkerchief, embroidered round the edges with gold, silver and silk, and adorned with a deep fringe.

There is scarce a Moscovite, of what quality soever, but has his afternoon's sleep, for which reason the shops are always shut up after dinner. They are also extremely fond of bathing, though their public baths are but very indifferently fitted up. Our author went incognito into one of them, that was only parted from that belonging to the other sex by a few deal boards, which, not being well joined, he could see all that passed; and besides, there was only one door for the men and women to go in and out of the water. Some of both sexes, who are more modest, hide their nakedness with a handful of leaves soaked in water, but the rest appear naked without the least concern; nay, some of the women came in this manner to speak with their husband's in the man's bath. It is surprising to see them come out of such an intense degree of

heat, and suddenly run into the cold water, or have it poured upon them; or in the winter roll in the snow, and then return again into the stoves, which is also practised by the Finlanders who live in Livonia. This can only be ascribed to custom, which rendering it habitual, makes them not so sensible of the opposite qualities of heat and cold as other people; for our author observed at Narva, that the Moscovite boys of eight, nine, or ten years of age, stand for half an hour together bare-footed upon the ice, without ever complaining of the cold.

Their religious ceremonies ought next to be considered. And here it is proper to be observed, that the Moscovites have the Bible printed in the Sclavonian tongue, which much resembles the German. They pay a particular regard to the books of the Evangelists, and never touch them without marks of respect and veneration. But though they make the Holy Scriptures the rule of their faith, they also adhere to the seven first general councils, and the Greek fathers, especially to the works of Basil the Great, Gregory Nazianzen, John Chrysostom, and Ephraim the Syrian; but the later councils they consider as infected with heresy. Among the doctors of their own church, they set an extraordinary value on the writings of one Nicholas Sudatwitz, whose memory is celebrated twice a year. They also receive the Apostles, the Nicene and Athanasian creeds. When any point of religion is to be proved, they first have recourse to the Scripture, next to the seven councils, and lastly to the abovementioned fathers; but disputes are determined only by the patriarch of Moscovy. Their priests read the New Testament, and the Psalms of David, in their churches; but the rest of the Old Testa-

ment they think contains many things not fit to be known by the vulgar. They never pretend to explain texts of Scripture, and consequently allow of no preaching; it being their opinion, that public orations in the pulpit, being full of subtleties, create only misunderstanding and misinterpretations.

With respect to baptism, as they acknowledge themselves conceived and born in sin, they baptize their children immediately after they are born: if they are weak, this is done at home, but if well in the church, the child being received at the door by the priest, who signing his forehead with the sign of the cross, says, "The Lord preserve thy coming in and going out;" and then fastens nine wax candles, given him by the godfathers ready lighted, round the font. Having incensed the godfathers, and consecrated the water, each of them takes a wax candle, and they all walk three times round the font, which always stands in the midst of the church, the clerk carrying the picture of St. John before them, and the priest reading out of a book. The priest then asks the godfathers the name of the child, which having given him in writing, he puts it upon a picture which he holds upon the child's breast, while he mutters certain prayers, and then asks if the child believes in God the Father, the Son and the Holy Ghost; and the godfathers having answered in the affirmative, they immediately turn their back to the font, to shew their aversion to the three next questions, Whether the child forsakes the devil, his angels, and his works? the godfathers answer yes, to each question, and as often spit upon the ground, and then turn again to the font, where the priest asks, "Whether they

promise the child shall be brought up in the true Greek religion;" and, laying his hands upon him, says, "Get out of this child, thou unclean spirit, and make room for the Holy Ghost." He then blows upon the child three times, to drive away the devil, by whom they suppose children are possessed before baptism. After this he cuts off a little of the child's hair, which he puts into a book; and having asked the godfathers whether they desire the child should be baptized, he takes him naked into his arms, and dipping him three times into the water, makes use of the usual words: "I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." He then puts a corn of salt into the child's mouth, and making the sign of the cross on his forehead, hands, breast, and back, with consecrated oil, puts on him a clean shirt, saying, "Thou art as clean from thy original sin as this shirt:" and hangs a small cross of gold, silver or lead, according to every one's ability, about his neck, and a strict charge to wear it all his life-time: in which they are so exact, that if no such cross is found about a deceased person, they will not allow him Christian burial. He also assigns a peculiar saint, whom the child is hereafter to reverence as his patron; and having kissed the child and his godfathers, he exhorts them to mutual love. If more children are to be baptized at the same time, the font is emptied, because they imagine the water to be defiled by the original sin of the preceding child.

Their proselytes, who are of age, are baptized in a river, and three times plunged over head, like the children, on mentioning the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. Those who are inclined to change their religion for that of the Moscovites, are instructed for

six weeks in some convent, and at their baptism are to abjure their former religion, to detest it as heretical, and, as a sign of their abhorrence, to spit on the ground as often as it is named. After their baptism the czar makes them a present of a rich Moscovian habit, and allows them a pension according to their quality, which induces many to embrace that religion.

The marriage ceremonies are performed in the following manner. As the young couple are not permitted to see, much less to discourse with each other, those who have marriageable children, especially daughters, pitch upon a person they like, and then address themselves to his parents; by whom if the match is approved of, and the young woman is handsome, leave is given for some female relation to see her; but this is not always granted. However, all things being agreed upon between the parents, if they are of quality, a woman, called the suacha, is appointed by the bridegroom's friends, and another by those of the bride, to take joint care of the nuptials, who provide every thing fit for the chamber where the new-married couple is to lie. The bed is made of forty sheaves of rye laid in good order, encompassed with several barrels of wheat, barley, and oats. When all things are ready, the bridegroom goes late in the evening from his house, accompanied by his kindred; the priest, who is to marry him, leading the van on horseback. They are received at the bride's door by her kindred, invited to come in, and to sit down at table; where only three dishes of meat are served up, and even these are not to be touched by any body present. At the upper end of the table a place is left for the bridegroom, which is taken up by a

young lad appointed for that purpose, while the bridegroom is talking with the bride's friends: but at length he having prevailed on the youth, by some presents, to resign his place to him, takes his seat, and the bride, richly dressed, is brought in with a veil over her face, and placed next the bridegroom, two lads, at the same time, holding a piece of taffety between them, to prevent them seeing each other. The suacha then comes in and paints her, ties up her hair in two knots, puts a coronet on her head, and all the ornaments of a married woman. The coronet is of leaf gold, or silver gilt, and lined with silk; having on both sides, near the ears, five or six rows of pearls, hanging down in strings on her breast. The upper garment, which has sleeves an ell and a half wide, is embroidered at the edges with gold and silver, especially about the neck, where it is stiff with embroidery for the breadth of three inches. They sometimes bestow a thousand crowns upon this robe. The bridegroom is then painted by his suacha, whilst the women who are present stand singing upon the benches. Then two young men, well dressed, bring into the room a large cheese laid upon a bier, with some loaves, several marten-skins hanging down from the bier; and the same being done on the bride's side, a large silver bason is set upon the table, filled with small pieces of satin, little pieces of silver, hops, barley, and oats, mixed together; which, as soon as the bride's face is covered again, are thrown by handfuls by the bride's suacha among the company, who gather them up from the ground, and having received the priest's benediction, go to church, where the young couple stand upon a piece of taffety, and have a canopy of the same over their heads. Here having

made offerings of fried meats, fish and pastry, the priest gives them his benediction, and taking the man by his right hand, and the woman by her left, he asks them three times, whether they are both willing to be married, and to love one another as they ought to do. To which having answered Yes, the whole company join hands, and the priest sings the 128th psalm, those present singing every other verse, and dancing all the time. The psalm being ended, he puts a garland of rue upon the heads of the young couple, and if one of them be a widow or widower, about their shoulders, saying, "Increase and multiply. Whom God hath joined together, let no man separate." While the priest pronounces these words, each of the people invited to the wedding lights a wax candle, and one of them gives a glass of wine to the priest, which he drinks; and the married couple having pledged the same three times each, the bridegroom throws down the glass, and he and the bride treading it under their feet say, "May they thus fall under our feet, and be trodden to pieces, who shall endeavour to sow division or discontent between us." The women then cast some flax or hemp at the young couple, wishing them much prosperity; while some pull the bride by the robe, as if they would take her away from the bridegroom, to whom she sticks so close, that they seem unable to remove her.

The marriage ceremony being ended, the bride returns in a sledge by the light of six torches or wax-candles, and the bridegroom on horseback. The men immediately sit down at the table, which is covered with provisions, while the women conduct the bride into her chamber, undress her, and having put her to bed, come to the bridegroom, and force

him to rise from the table; on which he is conducted to the bride's chamber by six or eight young men, each with a torch in his hand, which they stick in the barrels of wheat and barley that stand round the bed. The bride no sooner sees the bridegroom enter the bed-chamber, than she slips on a morning-gown lined with fur, rises, meets, and salutes him with a a low inclination of the head, which is the first time of his seeing her face. They then sit down to a table, where, among other provisions, they have a roasted fowl, which the bridegroom pulls asunder, and casting away, over his shoulder, that part he lights on first, they eat the rest, and then go to bed, while the guests employ themselves in several charms, to promote the happiness of the new-married couple. An old servant of the house, who attends at the door, comes after a while, and asks, whether the business be done; and the bridegroom answering, yes, the word is given for the trumpets and timbrels to strike up, and these sound till the new-married couple are conducted to the stoves, where they bathe themselves apart. After they have been well washed in the bath with water, mead and wine, the bride sends the bridegroom a shirt richly embroidered, especially at the neck, and a rich habit. The two next days they spend in mirth and festivity.

Persons of an inferior condition are satisfied with fewer ceremonies; for the night before the wedding the bridegroom send some clothes, a comb, and a looking-glass; and the next day the priest is brought in by two lads, carrying lighted wax-candles. As soon as he enters the house, he gives his benediction first to the lads, and then to the guests. The young couple being set down at the table, the lads holding a piece of taffety between them, the suacha dresses

the bride's head, which being done, a looking-glass is brought, and the young couple joining their cheeks, look and smile one upon the other, while the two suachas cast hops upon them, after which they go to church, where they are married with the ceremonies already mentioned.

The wedding-day may be said to be the last day of pleasure enjoyed by the Moscovite women. Their chief employment is embroidering, sewing, or making little purses, and other insignificant toys; and they never stir abroad except upon extraordinary occasions. Within doors their clothes are very mean; but when they appear in public they are richly dressed, and generally paint their faces, necks, and arms. The wives of persons of quality ride in chariots, attended by a great number of slaves: but as those of the ordinary ranks are debarred the visits and conversation enjoyed by the European women, and seldom meddle with household affairs, the only diversion left them is, to pass away the time with their maids. They lay a plank across a block, and one getting on each end, they toss one another up and down. Sometimes they swing themselves in ropes, and in country villages they have a swinging engine, in which four persons may divert themselves at a time.

As the Moscovites esteem marriage a very sacred contract, polygamy is forbidden under pain of death, the czar himself being allowed no more than one wife at a time; though if she proves barren, or brings forth no sons, he may send her into a monastery, and marry another. Second marriages they consider as allowable, but not very commendable; a third marriage is not to be undertaken but upon very weighty considerations; and a fourth is punished

with death. Divorces, however, are very frequent among them, though they cannot be obtained without the bishop's consent.

Persons of quality adorn the pictures of their saints with pearls and precious stones; they place wax-candles before them, and look stedfastly upon them while at prayers. Whenever a Moscovite comes into a house, he looks for the saint before he utters a word, and, if he does not see him, asks, "Where is the god?" and when he has found him, he makes his reverence, and having said, "Lord have mercy upon us," goes to the company. But though in outward show the Moscovites seem to have great devotion, not one in ten can recite the Lord's prayer, which, they say, was instituted for the use of persons of quality, and not for mechanics; and, that it is enough for them to repeat the Gospodi, or the Lord have mercy upon us. They pray for the dead.

As soon as a Moscovite is come to years of discretion, he goes to confession, which they always do before communion, which is generally done by extraordinary preparations and mortifications, for a whole week; during which they eat scarcely any thing, except a kind of biscuit, and drink quaz and fair water. They commonly receive the communion upon Easter-eve, and never but upon a fast-day; for if any one should communicate on Sunday, he is obliged not to eat flesh on that day. They receive it in both kinds. They believe transubstantiation. They give the sacrament to the youngest child, if it be sick; but only in one kind, till it be seven years old.

Their ordinary fast-days are Wednesdays and Fridays, and the eves of great festivals, when they abstain not only from all kind of flesh, but also

from eggs and milk; nay, some will not use sugar.

Besides their ordinary fast-days, they keep four great fasts in the year, the first of which is forty days before Easter; the second begins eight days after Whitsuntide, and ends with the feast of St. Peter and St. Paul; the third, which is kept in honour of the Virgin Mary, begins on the 1st of August, and lasts till the feast of the Assumption of the Virgin Mary; and the fourth begins on the 12th of November, and continues till Christmas.

They have also a kind of carnival, which lasts eight days, and is called by them the Butter-week, because after these days are expired, they are forbid to eat either butter, bread, cheese, or milk; but during the time of this carnival they commit almost incredible excesses in drinking, which draws them into all manner of crimes. This renders it not safe for any person to pass the street, murders being then so frequent, that many dead bodies are exposed to public view, that their friends may take care of their interment.

Their burials, like their other public actions are performed with great ceremony; for the soul of the sick person is no sooner departed, than the widow sends for their kindred and friends, who, standing round the corpse, break out into lamentations, asking the deceased, Why he would die? Whether he wanted any thing? Whether his wife was not young and handsome enough? Whether she had been inconstant? and other questions of the like kind. They then wash the body, and having put a clean shirt or shroud about him, with a new pair of thin Russia leather shoes on his feet, lay him with his arms across his breast in a coffin made of the trunk of a tree, and in the meanwhile send a present to

the priest, to pray for his soul. The coffin is covered with a piece of cloth, or the coat of the deceased: The richer sort, if the season will permit, keep the body eight or ten days, during which the priest comes every day to purify it with incense, and by sprinkling it with holy water.

At length the priest proceeds with the picture of the patron saint of the deceased, followed by four virgins, who are nearest related to the latter, and make very mournful lamentations, but begin and leave off exactly at a time. Then comes the dead body, carried by six men upon their shoulders; but if the deceased was a monk or a nun, this office is performed by those of their own profession. The corpse is surrounded by several priests, who incense it, to keep off evil spirits, all the while singing psalms; then follow the kindred and friends with wax-candles, but without any order. On their coming to the grave the coffin is uncovered, over which the priest, holding the picture of the patron saint, says several prayers, in which he often repeats, "Lord, look upon this soul in righteousness." Meanwhile the widow, continuing her lamentations, asks the questions already mentioned. The relations and friends then take their leave, either kissing the deceased, or the coffin. The priest then takes a piece of paper, which is a kind of ticket for his entrance into paradise, and which being signed by the patriarch or metropolitan of the place, and the confessor, is sold for more or less, according to the abilities of those who purchase it. This ticket is of so extraordinary a nature, that the reader will not be displeased at our inserting it at length.

"We whose names are hereunto subscribed, the patriarch or metropolitan, and priest of the city of

N. do make known and certify, by these presents, that the bearer of these our letters, hath always lived among us like a good Christian, professing the Greek religion; and though he hath committed some few sins, yet he hath confessed the same, and thereupon he hath received absolution, and taken the communion, for the remission of his sins: that he hath honoured God and his saints: that he hath said his prayers; and that he hath fasted on the hours and days appointed by the church; and that he hath carried himself well towards me, who am his confessor; that I have no reason to complain of him, or to deny him the absolution of his sins. In witness whereof, we have given him this present testimonial, to the end, that upon sight thereof, St. Peter may open unto him the gate of eternal bliss."

The coffin is then shut, and put into the grave, the face being turned to the east, while those who return to the house of mourning, drown their sorrow in good liquor.

Their whole time of mourning lasts forty days, during which three feasts are made for the kindred of the deceased, on the third, ninth, and twentieth days after the burial, during which the priest says certain prayers over the grave morning and evening, which for that purpose is covered with a small hut of mats.

Before we mention the different orders of their priests, it may be proper to observe, that the Moscovites have the highest veneration for their sovereign: that they look upon his pleasure as the will of God, and that their lives, and every thing they have, is at his disposal. The chief persons in the empire never approach his person but with the same veneration with which they adore the Al-

mighty; and if he gives them the least marks of displeasure, they are ready to offer their lives for the expiation of their fault.

They pay great veneration to the clergy, the principal of which is the patriarch, who is always obliged to reside at Moscow. He is nominated by the metropolitans and bishops, with the czar's approbation: he is the chief person in the empire next to his sovereign, and determines all ecclesiastical affairs: he wears a long black robe, and has a cross always carried before him. He has also four metropolitans, and under them are seven bishops. Next to these are the priests, called by them popes, who are again subdivided into proto-popes, or archpriests, and common popes, of which there are vast numbers in Moscow; no other qualification being necessary for their admission into this order, but reading, writing and singing. The chief badge of priesthood is a kind of cap, put on their heads at their consecration, which they are obliged to wear as long as they continue priests, and it is no small crime for a layman to touch it. However, as most of the Moscovite clergy are great drunkards, and constant frequenters of tipling houses, they frequently fall into quarrels, when, if a person has occasion to beat a clergyman, he must first civilly secure his bonnet, and then he may drub him handsomely, and afterwards put it on again. The other badges of the priesthood are a stick which they carry in their hands, and their wearing a wide long robe, which is black, green, blue or red.

As the protopopes and popes or priests are obliged to marry once, so they are absolutely forbidden to marry more than once. The prelates, however, are obliged to take a vow of chastity.

Their churches are built round and vaulted, to bear some resemblance to the heavens, and each of them has five steeples, one of them being larger and higher than the rest; the other four are built round it. They have neither pews, benches, nor chairs, because they perform their devotions either kneeling or prostrate upon the ground. They allow neither organs, nor any other musical instruments, nor have any images, though they allow of paying their devotions to pictures. There are about two hundred of these churches in Moscow. They also look upon their church-yards as very sacred places, and therefore will not allow of any impurities being thrown there, or suffer a dog to pass over them. They are great admirers of bells, and think them an essential part of divine service.

When the Moscovites are at their devotions, they often strike their foreheads against the ground, and cross themselves in the following manner: they first make the sign of the cross with their fingers on the forehead, which, they say, is to intimate the ascension of Christ; next on the heart, to intimate that the heart is the receptacle of the word of God; then they make a cross on the right, and next on the left shoulder, to show that, at the day of judgment, those to be blessed with eternal life shall be placed to the right, and the damned to the left. Not many years ago the patriarch ordered that the laymen should cross themselves with only two fingers, though before that time, they had always done it with three, in remembrance of the Holy Trinity; but meeting with great opposition in this point, he prevailed on the czar to send to the arch-patriarch of Constantinople, and to two other patriarchs of the Eastern churches, who approving his order, it was enacted

into a law; notwithstanding which, several Moscovites would sooner lose their heads than comply with it, and to this day they make use of three fingers, when they can do it in private.

The Moscovites tolerate all religions, except the Roman Catholics and Jews. Heretofore, those of the reformed religion, and the Lutherans, had their churches in the quarter of Czaargorod. The Lutherans lost theirs, by a quarrel that happened between the wives of the officers and merchants, who came to blows in the church, about precedency; and those of the reformed religion had theirs taken away, because they began to build a sumptuous edifice of stone, instead of the old one, which was of wood. But a suburb has been since assigned to foreigners, in which they have built convenient houses and churches, two for the Lutherans, one for the Dutch, and one for the English; and are thus freed from the barbarous society of the Moscovites.

CHAP. III.

The ambassadors embark on the river Mosca, enter Occa, arrive at Nisenovogorod, whence they proceed down the Volga. A description of the Ceremissian Tartars. Several towns described. A view of several extraordinary mountains, and of the most remarkable places; their arrival at Astrachan. A description of the island of Dolgoi, the city of Astrachan, and the country and inhabitants of Nagaia.

THE ambassadors went from Moscow by land as far as the monastery of Simana, where taking leave of their friends, they embarked in the river Mosca, or Moskva, and proceeded to Kolumna, which lies on the right side of the river, is of a considerable bigness, and is surrounded with stone

walls. Three wersts above the city the Mosca falls into the Occa, which is much broader and more pleasant than the former river; its current passes from the south, through a very fertile, and well peopled country, and its banks are covered on both sides with oaks, which, in these parts, are a kind of rarity. Here embarking again, they passed a pretty large island, and several handsome villages on the right side of the river, and on the fourth of July came to the city of Presia. The next day they passed by the town of Rhesan, and on the evening of the 7th arrived at Cassinogorod, the capital of the Tartars of Cassinow, which lies on the right side of the river Occa. They here met with the first Mahometans. The young prince of the country lived at that time in an old castle not far from the city; his name was Rez Ketzi, and he had, a few years before, put himself under the czar's protection. They sent him a present of tobacco and brandy, in return for which, he sent them two sheep, a barrel of mead, another of beer, and a third of brandy, besides some cream and fresh butter, which the prince's mother had taken the pains to make, excusing his not having invited the ambassadors on shore, for fear of raising the jealousy of the neighbouring Moscovite governors.

On the 9th they passed by Morumna on the left side of the river, where they discovered a troop of Crim Tartars, who fired at them from the woods, but the retinue of the ambassadors returned their fire, on which they did not think fit to approach.

They then passed by several villages and monasteries, and on the eleventh, at night, reached the city of Nise or Nisenovogorod, where they found the ship Frederic, which had been built by the ambas-

sador's orders, and was now quite finished; it was a large three-mast ship, so flat-bottomed that it drew no more than seven feet water. It had many closets and convenient apartments, and was provided with some brass and iron guns, and twelve seats for the rowers. They had also a large shallop to carry their anchors, cables, and other necessaries, and to discover any banks or sands. The city of Nise is about one hundred German leagues from Moscow by land, and one hundred and fifty by water. It is surrounded with stone walls and towers; but the suburbs, which are half a league in circumference, are much larger than the city. It is inhabited by Moscovites, Tartars, and the Dutch, who have a protestant church here, consisting of one hundred persons. They here bought a pullet for a penny; a quarter of a hundred of eggs for the same price, and a sheep for twelve, fifteen, and eighteen pence each.

The ambassadors sent Mr. Mandeslo and our author, with their pristaff, and the Moscovite interpreter, to thank the waywode or governor, for the many civilities he had shown to the duke of Holstein's subjects while they were building the ship, which took them up near a year, and to offer him a present worth about twenty-five pounds sterling: the reception he gave them showed him to be a person much above the ordinary rank of the Russians. He sent two of his gentlemen to receive them at the gates of his palace, from whence, being conducted through a gallery, they were, at the entrance of the palace, complimented by two others richly dressed, who introduced them to the waywode, who was in his chamber, dressed in brocade, and attended by a considerable number of persons

a mountain, on the right side of the river Volga, at the conflux of that river, and the little river Sura, which was formerly the common boundary between the territories of the Moscovites and the Tartars of Casan, called Ceremisses. This city is without walls, and the houses are of wood; for the Moscovites, extending their territories farther on that side, have occasioned its being neglected.

The country inhabited by the Ceremissian Tartars extends on both sides the river Volga, beyond Casan. They live only in huts, and feed upon the milk afforded by their pastures, and on the wild fowl and honey they take in the woods; but they are very barbarous, treacherous, cruel, and much addicted to robbery. Those who live in the mountainous country on the right side of the Volga, are called Nagorni, or Mountaineers; and those on the other side are termed Lugoivi, or Lugowizene, from their plentiful meadows, which supply both them and the Nagorni with great quantities of hay. They are said to be partly Mahometans, and partly Heathens; but those about Casan are Pagans. They are entirely unacquainted with baptism or circumcision. In order to give a name to a child, they appoint a certain day, six months after it is born, and then give it the name of the person they first meet. They acknowledge the existence of an immortal Being, the Author of all good, who therefore ought to be reverenced; but have no idea of a future state, either of rewards or punishments; yet believe that there are evil spirits, that afflict people in this life, and therefore ought to be appeased by sacrifices. To these evil spirits they pay their devotions at a certain place among the fens, about four leagues from Casan, where they never appear

empty-handed, lest this neglect should be punished by some lingering disease. One of the principal residences they assign to these evil spirits is the Shockshem, two leagues from Nunda, which having a swift current between two mountains, is never frozen, and has imprinted such an idea of a hidden mystery in these poor wretches, that though they see the Moscovites pass it every day, they think they cannot approach it without manifest danger of their lives. When they offer their sacrifices to God, they kill an ox, horse, or sheep, and hanging the skin upon a pole laid across the boughs of two trees, roast the flesh by a fire kindled underneath; then taking a slice of the meat, and a cup of mead, they throw them both into the flames, offering their prayers to God for the preservation and increase of their cattle, or some other of the conveniences of life. They also pay adoration to the sun and moon, and have a peculiar veneration for whatever they dream of, whether it be a horse, cow, fire or water; and say, that animated things are more worthy of worship than the painted gods of the Moscovites. They perform most of their religious ceremonies near the torrent; and at the death of a friend feast upon his best horse.

These people make no use of priests or books, and their language has nothing in common with the other Tartars. Some of them, however, understand the Moscovite tongue. They not only suffer, but encourage polygamy, nothing being here more common, than for a man to marry two or three sisters at a time. Their women are only wrapped in a piece of coarse white cloth, and show scarce any part of their persons but their faces. Those who are betrothed have, however, a peculiar head-dress,

pointed like a horn, to the end of which is fastened a silk tassel, on which hangs a small bell. The men have breeches under their upper garment, which resembles a great coat. They all shave their heads; but the unmarried men wear a long tress of hair, which they sometimes suffer to hang down their backs, and at others tie it in a knot.

These people were so much affrighted at the sight of our travellers, that very few of them dared to venture to the side of the river to see them pass by; yet at night, when they reached Welluka, one of those Tartars came on board to sell a sturgeon, for which they paid him the value of fifteen pence.

On the 7th of August they arrived before the city of Kusmademianski, forty wersts from Basiligorod, and situated at the foot of a mountain. Here they observed whole forests of very large elms, out of the bark of which the inhabitants make sledges, and out of the bodies of the trees, cut in the manner of a cylinder, and hollowed out, form barrels and other utensils. Then proceeding three wersts farther, near the isle of Krius, they were supplied by the peasants with fresh provisions, and forced by a tempest to stay all night.

On the 8th they continued their voyage with a fair wind, to the isle of Turich, where they had the misfortune, when under sail, of being forced on a sand-bank, and of being four hours before they could get off. In the mean while they saw abundance of Tartars at some distance, coming from hay-making: however, by night they got within sight of Sabakzar, which stands in a most agreeable situation; but its buildings, like those of the other cities, are all wood. Near the isle of Makrits they saw a boat, which being sent to gain intelli-

gence who they were, took a circuit round the ship; they being informed of their quality, above three hundred persons appeared on the shore to see them pass by.

On the 11th, being forced on shore by the current, Mr. Mandeslo and our author had the curiosity, while the men were endeavouring to get off the vessel, to land, in order to take a view of the country, for which they had like to have paid very dear: for a fair gale springing up, the ship was soon out of sight: but after being obliged to travel a great way along the banks, they at last espied a boat sent to carry them to the ship, which they reached at night, when they found her at anchor.

On the 13th of August they came before the city of Suiatski, situated on the left hand, on the ascent of a hill. It has a castle, and some churches, of stone; but its other fortifications, and all the private buildings, are of wood. At night they arrived before the city of Casan, which is situated in a large plain, upon the river Casanke, and has given its name both to the city and province. The city, which is about seven wersts from the Volga, is very considerable, both for its bigness, its situation, and its strength. The castle and its fortifications are of stone, and are well provided with artillery, and a good garrison of Moscovites, the Tartars being forbid to enter it upon pain of death. The commander-in-chief of the place, being brother to the governor of Nise, was presented by the ambassadors with a very fine ruby. Mr. Mandeslo and our author went on shore, to take a view of the place, and to purchase some provisions; but they could get none that were good, except some fruit, and particularly melons, that were as big as

pompkins. At their leaving the city, they were informed by some Tartars that their ship was gone, which obliged them to hire a waggon, by the help of which they proceeded along the shore, till meeting with the pristaff's boat, they were carried on board, the ship lying at anchor two leagues below Casan. The country hereabouts is fertile, but almost desolate, from its being so much infested by the Cossacks.

They afterwards proceeded by several villages, and were frequently exposed to danger from the sand-banks. On the 18th they were met by the governor of Torki, a place upon the Caspian Sea, who was returning from his government, attended by eight boats with musqueteers. At first, not knowing to whom these boats belonged, the ambassadors made them keep at a distance: but coming nearer, they told them, that three thousand Cossacks waited upon the river, by the Caspian Sea, for their coming, and had sent out seventy horse to discover them at a distance; but they were so little terrified by these stories, that they continued their course without stopping. The next night a false alarm was given, by order of the ambassadors, to make trial of their people in case of a sudden attack, which succeeded to their satisfaction. The next day they came to an island called Staritzo, fifteen wersts in length, behind which they found a great quantity of stones, shaped like lemons or oranges, which, being broken in the middle, represented a star of several colours, and some that appeared like gold and silver. They then came in sight of a place pleasantly situated, the ruins of which showed it to have been a Tartarian city, called Uneroskora, where was yet to be seen the monument of a saint,

to which the inhabitants of those parts pay extraordinary devotion.

On the 2d some fishermen of this place sold them 55 large breams for the value of fifty pence. They have here a peculiar way of fishing: they take a long cord, to one end of which they fasten a pretty large stone, that falls to the bottom, and to the other several pieces of wood, which swim upon the water: all along the cord are fastened many lesser ones, each with a hook, and a fish for a bait, at the end. In this manner they take very fine fish, of eight, ten, or twelve feet long.

When the Moscovites pass along the rivers in their boats, they fasten a hook to one end of a cord, and to the other end of it a smooth board, of a hand's breadth, tinned over, which they drag along after the ship or boat, and the stream causing the tinned board to turn frequently to the sun, makes it appear like the scales of fish; by which means they allure after them, and take as many fish, even of the larger sort, as they have occasion for, so that they make scarcely any other provision for these voyages but a kind of biscuits; for the multiplicity of their fast-days accustoms them so much to fish, that while they are on board they set little value on flesh. The ambassadors here caused a boat, which had brought their provisions from Nise, and was now empty, to be set on fire, for fear of its falling into the hands of the Cossacks.

On the 21st they saw on the right hand the ruins of two places, in a delightful situation, said to have been destroyed by Tamerlane; and on the 22d passed with much difficulty over three great sand-banks, near which may be seen, on the right hand, Mount Arbeuchim, which received its name

from a large city, the ruins of which are still visible. Here they discovered, between two little hills, a stone twenty-eight feet square, with the following inscription: "If thou raise me, thou shalt be rewarded." They were told, that fifty passengers, being forced on shore there some years before, had the curiosity to lift up the stone, and found on the other side nothing but the following sentence: "In vain dost thou look for what thou hast not put here." At a small distance from the river is a spacious fertile country, rich in pasture grounds, but destitute of inhabitants, there being nothing to be seen but the ruins of cities and great towns destroyed by Tamerlane.

On the 24th they were driven twice on shore by contrary winds, and the two following days found great difficulty in getting over the sand-banks. This, with the bad diet, to which most of the people were unaccustomed, and the frowardness of one of the ambassadors, rendered the hardships they laboured under almost insupportable.

On the 25th they discovered to the right a mountain, from whence the Moscovites obtain abundance of salt, which being prepared in huts built for that purpose, and dried in the sun, is transported from thence to Moscow. At some distance they at length perceived Mount Diwisagora, or the Maid's Mountain, which, towards the river side, is divided into many steep hills; and these being of various colours, afford a very agreeable prospect. Upon each of these hills is a row of pine-trees, growing with such regularity, that, were not these hills inaccessible, they might rather be considered as planted there by art than by nature. At the foot of this mountain rises another, which extends eight leagues

along the river; the valley between them produces a vast number of apple-trees fit for making cyder.

Having the same evening received advice by letter from Moscow and Nise, that four Cossacks were got into their retinue in quality of mariners, they became alarmed, especially on their perceiving, after sun-set, two great fires at the entrance of the wood, on the right hand; but having dispatched five or six musqueteers ashore, they were discovered to be strelitzers, who had guarded a Persian caravan: and the following night they were put into another fright by two fishermen, who passing by the ship in a boat, were stopped by the sentinels; but finding that they differed in their relations, and suspecting them to be Cossacks, they sent them the next morning to the governor of Samara.

They now passed by Mount Saccobei, which reaches fifteen wersts along the river, as far as Samara; it being one continued rock, bare on the top, but on the sides covered with trees. While they were detained here by contrary winds, two large red snakes, that come from the shore, got up by the cables into the ship; but they were no sooner perceived by the Moscovites, than they begged they might not be killed, and that some food might be given them, alleging that they were sent by St. Nicholas as the forerunners of a fair wind.

Early on the 28th they came near the city of Samara, which lies two wersts from the left side of the river, and three hundred and fifty from Casan: it is almost square; and all the buildings, except some churches and two or three monasteries, are of wood. Before night they arrived at the mountain of the Cossacks, which obtained its name from the frequent robberies here committed by them; this being their

place of assembly, from whence they discovered what ships came that way; but since four or five hundred of them were killed by the garrison of Samara, they have not infested the mountain in such numbers.

On the 31st they met with two large barges, manned with 400 mariners, each laden with provisions, particularly caviar, and afterwards four more coming from Astrachan with salt and salt fish; who told them they had met with two hundred Cossacks near the city, who had suffered them to pass by unmolested.

On the 1st of September they passed in sight of Saratof, a city situated in a large plain, upon a branch of the Volga, and only inhabited by Moscovite soldiers, who kept garrison here to bridle the Calmuc Tartars, a people who inhabited a vast tract of ground, from hence to the Caspian Sea and the river Jaika, and are so powerful, as sometimes to make open war with the czar. The next day they passed by the mountain of Achmat Kigori, which affords a fine prospect at a distance, from its top being covered with verdure, the ascent chequered with mold of different colours, and its being skirted by a bank, as even as if formed by art. They then passed by the Golden Mountain, so called from the Tartars having near it surprised a fleet of Moscovite vessels, said to be so richly laden, that they divided the gold and silver by the bushel. They were scarce out of sight of this mountain, when they discovered another, called the Chalk Mountain, which extending forty wersts along the river, rises, by an easy ascent, to the top; and at the foot, near the river, are many trees, planted chequer-wise.

They next came to the Mountain of Pillars, so called from the rocks of several colours appearing above the rest. Here meeting with a large barge, they were told by the pilot, that he had passed in sight of seventy Cossacks, who had suffered the vessels to pass by, but had in the night stole the lighter, for which he had paid five hundred crowns to have it again. The same evening, the ambassadors saw ten Cossacks cross the river, upon which Mr. Brugman, one of the ambassadors, ordered eight musqueteers to find them out, and bring them on board; but the Cossacks having time to get into an adjacent wood, and it being very late before the musqueteers returned, this caused some dispute between the ambassador and the stewart of the embassy, the latter alleging, that it was extremely dangerous to expose the men in the dark, and in an unknown place, where they must infallibly perish for want of timely relief; however, he had no other answer than ill language.

On the 3d of September they came to the mountain of Kamachinka, and a river of the same name, that arises out of the torrent of Iloba, which falls into the Don. The Cossacks, by crossing this river in small boats, make excursions as far as the Volga, which renders travelling very dangerous. But they had no sooner passed this place, than finding themselves within sight of the caravan of Persia and Tartary, they made all the haste they could to get up with it, and saluted it with four pieces of cannon and a volley of small arms, under the sound of their trumpets, which was returned by the discharge of some musquets. The chief persons belonging to this caravan were a Tartarian prince, named Mussal, the Persian cuptzi, a Moscovite

envoy sent into Persia, an ambassador of Crim Tartary, and two or three Persian merchants. They immediately after saw a Moscovite officer, with some strelitzers, coming towards them in a boat, who having saluted them with a volley of small arms, the officer alone came on board, to compliment them in the name of the Tartarian prince, and his example was soon followed by the Persian cuptzi; upon which the ambassadors sent two gentlemen of their retinue, with their Moscovite interpreter, to the prince, and the secretary of the embassy, with the Persian interpreter, to the cuptzi, to return the compliment. The secretary happening to go to the larboard side of the ship, he was told by the cuptzi's servants, that their master's wife being lodged on that side, they desired him to come to the other; which being done accordingly, the secretary, and his attendants, were received by several well dressed persons, who lifted them up by the arms into the ship, and conducted them to the cuptzi's chamber, where they found him sitting cross-legged, after the Persian custom, upon a couch, covered with the best Persian tapestry, and resting his back against a crimson cushion; he put his hands to his breast, with a low inclination of his head, the highest mark of respect used in Persia, and having intreated them to sit down, which they could not do in that posture, without some trouble, he answered their compliment in a very obliging manner, telling them, that how desirous soever he was of seeing his own country and house, he had conceived a much greater satisfaction at the sight of their ship; adding, he hoped, that as soon as they entered Persia, they would be sensible of the difference there was between the barbarity of the Mos-

covites, and the politeness of the Persians; and that after his return, he would employ all his interest to be made their mehemander, or conductor, that he might lay them under all the obligations in his power.

Before they left the ship, the cuptzi treated them with a collation served up in plate vermillion gilt, consisting of several sorts of fruits and pistachios, dried and pickled.

On the 4th of September, several men, whom the Tartarian prince had sent to excuse his not coming to visit the ambassadors, came on board. These were Circassian Tartars, and he who appeared to be the chief, was pretty tall, of an olive colour, with long greasy black hair, and his beard of the same colour. Over his garment he wore a black sheep-skin, with the woolly side outwards, with a cap close to his head, and had a very frightful countenance. The rest had black or brown coarse cloth coats. They were sent back loaded with brandy.

On the 5th of September they came to the first branch by which the Volga discharges itself into the Caspian sea, and the next day came to Zariza, where they overtook the caravan which had got before them, and taking the advantage of a fair wind, continued their course. The city of Zariza being three hundred wersts distant from Saratof, is situated at the bottom of a high hill, on the right side of the river, and is fortified with five bastions, and as many wooden towers. It has no other inhabitants but the garrison, which is kept here to bridle the Cossacks and Tartars, and to serve as convoys up and down the river. All the country between Zariza and Astrachan being barren, the last is supplied with wheat for Casan in such plenty,

that it is bought cheaper than at Moscow. At a small distance below Zariza, they passed by the island of Zerpinske, where the Cossacks had, a little before, surprized and ravished the wives and daughters of the soldiers belonging to the garrison of Zariza, who keep their cattle there. This island is twelve wersts in length.

On the 7th of September, the weather being very tempestuous, they advanced but slowly, on which the ambassador, Brugman, took this opportunity to summon all the servants of the embassy before him, and to charge them with want of duty and respect, requiring the musicians, guards and footmen, to take an oath of fidelity to his person: to which they answered, that he had no reason to suspect their fidelity, and that they were ready to sacrifice their lives in his service; desiring, however, that they might be treated with less rigour than he had hitherto used, which he promised; this promise, was, however, but indifferently performed.

In the evening a fisherman brought them a fish five feet in length, with a long and broad snout, like the bill of a wild drake; the body was full of white and black spots, like the skin of a tyger, except upon the belly, which was quite white. This fish had a more luscious taste than a salmon. They also bought of him some white fish, which are about eight feet long and four broad, and are not unlike a sturgeon, but have a wider mouth and whiter flesh. They now came to a second branch of the Volga, from whence, as far as Astrachan, the country, on both sides of the river, abounds in liquorice, the stalks of which are of the thickness of a man's arm, and near four feet high.

On the 9th of September a violent wind carried them within sight of the little city of Tzornogar, situated two hundred wersts from Zariza, which had been then only built about nine years. The former city of the same name being situated on the shore about half a league from thence, where it was inconvenient landing, was removed to the place where it now stands, on a high shore on the right side of the river. Its fortifications consist of eight wooden towers, and a rampart formed of thick planks. It has a garrison of four or five hundred strelitzers, kept there to secure the adjacent country from the incursions of the Cossacks and Calmuc Tartars, on which account a watch-house is erected at each of the four corners of the city upon high poles, from whence they may, without the least interruption, command the view of a spacious plain.

They afterwards passed by several other branches of the Volga, and on the 15th of September made the island of Dolgoi, in which Astrachan is situated. As this city lies in that part of the Volga which divides Europe from Asia, and they were now entering another part of the globe, they saluted it from the midst of the river, with a general discharge of their great guns and small shot, to the great surprise of the inhabitants.

The climate was here as hot as the weather is in Germany in the midst of summer, especially when the wind blew to the eastward from the Volga; but the sea breezes, which blow from the south, moderate the heats in the hottest months. The winter lasts here no longer than two months, but is so exceeding cold, that the river is frozen, and sledges are used upon it.

The isle of Dolgoi is sandy and barren, and pro-

duces nothing for the subsistence of human life, except what is raised by the industry of the inhabitants in their gardens, and some well cultivated grounds. The continent, on the right hand, is no less barren; but on the left, towards the river Jaika, are very good pastures. The only thing produced by the deserts is salt; for there are certain salt-pits, where the salt swims upon the surface of the water, of the thickness of a finger, and is not unlike our rock crystal; and of this there are such prodigious quantities, that, for the value of a halfpenny, a person may take up forty pounds weight: one crust being no sooner taken off than another rises.

The river between Astrachan and the Caspian Sea, which is twelve leagues in extent, so abounds in fish, that they bought twelve large carp for two pence, and 200 young sturgeons for half a crown. There are here infinite numbers of lobsters, which are never eaten by the Moscovites or Tartars. The numerous islands afford an incredible number of wild fowl, especially wild geese and wild ducks, which the Tartars take with hawks and falcons, in the breeding of which they are very expert. They are also fond of hunting the wild boar, the flesh of which they sell to the Moscovites, their religion not permitting them to eat it.

That part of Tartary which is inclosed between the rivers Volga and Jaika, as far as the Caspian Sea, is called Nagaia; of this country Astrachan is the capital. The fruits it produces are not inferior either in flavour or beauty to those of Persia, especially their nuts, apples, quinces, peaches and melons, of which last there is an admirable sort, of a delicious taste, said to have been first brought from

the Indies; the rind is of a lively green, the pulp of a pale carnation, and the seed black: two or three of these are sold for a halfpenny. Grapes were but lately introduced, by the means of some Persian merchants, who brought the first stalks to Astrachan, which were planted by an old monk, in a garden belonging to the convent in the suburbs; and the czar having tasted some of these grapes, ordered him, in 1613, to increase his stock with all possible diligence, which he did so effectually, that at this time there was scarcely a house in the town without its vineyards, which turn to such advantage to the owners, that the proprietor of the house where the ambassadors lodged, assured them, that the preceding year the vines about his house had yielded him no less than a hundred crowns; and, that some years before they planted a vineyard, which produced sixty pipes of excellent wine in one year.

The city of Astrachan is surrounded with a stone wall, and strengthened by other fortifications. The whole compass of the city is 8,000 geometrical feet, and the side which looks to the river is 2,216 feet broad, affording a fine prospect from its many turrets and steeples, built of stone, which make a handsome appearance at a distance. The houses, however, are generally of wood, and but indifferently built. To keep the neighbouring Tartars in awe, the above fortifications are said to contain 500 large brass guns, besides many mortars; and it has a garrison of strelitzers, consisting of nine regiments of 500 men each.

As this city is, in a manner, the common frontier between two considerable parts of the earth, not only the Crim, Precopense, Calmuc and Nagaian Tartars, but also the Persians, Armenians, and even

the Indians themselves, carry on a considerable trade there, which makes the customs of the place, though very low, amount to 25,000 crowns per annum.

The natives of Nagaia are neither allowed to dwell within the city, nor to build any other, but are forced to be satisfied with living in an inclosure formed with palisades, without the city walls, or to live in straggling huts about the fields. Their huts, which are made of bulrushes or canes, are round, and about twelve feet in diameter; and in the centre of the top have a hole, which answers the purpose of a chimney, through which passes a stick, with a piece of coarse cloth at the end, to facilitate the passage of the smoke; this stick they draw in as soon as the turf or cow-dung, which is their ordinary fuel, is reduced to a live coal. During the cold season they cover these huts with coarse cloth, and spend their time within doors with their wives and children, scarcely ever stirring abroad. In the summer season they move from place to place, and settle where they meet with the best pasture for feeding of their cattle, which failing in one place, they put their wives and children, with their huts and utensils, upon camels, oxen and horses, and then go to another. However, at the approach of winter they all retire about Astrachan, where they lodge in troops at such a distance from each other, as to be in a condition to join their assistance against the Calmuc Tartars, and the Tartars near the river Jaika; for which reason the Moscovites furnish them with arms in the winter, which they are obliged to return as soon as the rivers and roads are unthawed; for they are not allowed to have any arms, either offensive or defensive, in the summer. These, as well as the Daghestan Tartars, are free from all

taxes; but are obliged to serve the czar in his wars. They have princes, commanders, and judges of their own; but to secure their allegiance to the czar, some of their princes are left as hostages in the castle of Astrachan.

The Nagaian, as well as the Crim Tartars, are, in general, low of stature, inclining to fat, of an olive complexion, with large faces and little eyes. The men have also but small beards, and are seldom without wrinkles; they shave their heads, and wear a garment, which is a kind of cassock, of a coarse grey cloth, over which they commonly wear a kind of mantle, made of black sheep-skins, with the woolly side outward, and a cap of the same stuff. Their women, who are not disagreeable, are commonly clothed in white linen, wearing on their heads a sort of cap, round which hang many copees, or Moscovite pence. It is customary with them to devote their children to God, or to some imam or saint. Their girls they distinguish from others by a ring with a ruby, turquoise, or coral hanging at their nostrils. The boys wear a ring in their right ear.

They are, for the most part, Mahometans of the Turkish sect; but some profess the Moscovite religion. They live upon their cattle, and what they obtain by hunting and fishing. Their cattle are very large, and their sheep, like those of Persia, have great fat tails, which weigh twenty or thirty pounds; they are flat-nosed, and have hanging ears like our spaniels: their horses are but small and ill-shaped, though they are strong and hardy. They have some camels, and those have generally two bunches on their backs. They use fish dried in the sun instead of bread, and sometimes make cakes of

meal, rice, and millet, which they fry in oil or honey. They eat camels or horse-flesh; and their drink is water or milk, but mare's milk is most esteemed.

They had no sooner anchored before the city than the Persian cuptzi sent them a present of fruit, in return for which the ambassadors made him a present of several sorts of distilled waters, and some sweetmeats. The next day several of the Persian merchants came on board, and, as it is not usual for any in their country to come empty-handed before persons of distinction, every one of them brought a present of fruit; and our German travellers being greatly pleased with their frank and civil behaviour, after their being so long troubled with the barbarity of the Russians, made them so welcome, that some of them fell drunk upon the deck, and one of them was forced to stay on board all night.

On the 17th the Persian cuptzi sent on board a present of very fine rice, and a vessel filled with garlick, preserved after the Persian manner. Some of his domestics, who brought the present, and were mariners, were surprised at the largeness of the ship; and they all agreed, that it would not be fit for the Caspian Sea, unless the masts were taken down. The ambassadors did not wonder at their being of this opinion, as the Persian ships are made like our European bathing-tubs, and scarcely take two or three feet of water; for which reason they seldom venture far into the Caspian Sea. The Persians being gone, the ambassadors sent a large drinking-cup, vermillion gilt, to the chief governor, desiring his advice in relation to their intended voyage; and it was soon after resolved to continue it by sea.

On the 19th of September they sent the shallop to fetch the Tartarian prince, who brought another Tartar prince along with him, and a retinue of forty persons. He was about twenty-eight years of age, and had an agreeable countenance; he was of a merry disposition, and was richly dressed after the Moscovite fashion. He was received with the sound of trumpets, and a discharge of three great guns, and having staid about two hours in the ambassadors cabin, and taken a view of the ship, was conducted back in the same manner, after his refusing to taste the collation prepared for him.

The Persian cuptzi having, at the ambassadors invitation, promised to pay them a visit on board their vessel, came accordingly two days after, in company with a rich Persian merchant and a pristaff. He was received in the same manner as the Tartar prince, and treated with a very fine collation and music, after which the Persians made their hautboys and timbrels play several tunes.

On the 22d, in the morning, the governor sent the ambassadors a present of twenty flitches of bacon, twelve large fishes dried in smoke, a barrel of caviar, a ton of beer, and another of mead; and the ambassadors the same day desiring leave to come on shore, and to have some horses, to visit the Tartar prince, the governor very obligingly sent them to the river-side the next day, from whence the ambassadors being conducted to an apartment prepared for them on purpose without the city, they walked to the prince's lodgings, where he received them in the court, and conducted them into an apartment richly hung, where they found Alexis, a Moscovite envoy, and an ambassador from the Crim Tartars. A fine collation of fruit was prepared for them, and

they had great plenty of wine, beer, mead and brandy, the governor's trumpets sounding all the time. When the health of the czar and the duke of Holstein were drank, the prince presented the cup standing, even to the pages. In the mean time Alexis, the Moscovite envoy, entertained the ambassadors with the great qualities, and extraordinary rank of this Tartarian prince, observing, that his sister was to be married to the king of Persia.

A few days after the cuptzi invited the ambassadors to an entertainment. They were conducted with their attendants to a house he had borrowed of the governor, opposite to which he had hired another, where a scaffold was erected, covered with tapestry, on which his hautboys and timbrels played from the time of the ambassadors coming till their departure. The cuptzi met them in the court, from whence he conducted them through two rooms hung with rich Turkish and Persian tapestry, and into a third hung with gold and silver brocade. In all the rooms the tables and seats were, for the convenience of the ambassadors, placed after the European manner. The tables were covered with satin or taffety, and loaded with a variety of fruits and preserves, as grapes, peaches, apricots, melons, almonds, pistachios, and several Indian fruits preserved with sugar and honey. Soon after the Persian and Polish ambassadors, who were travelling to the court of Moscovy, came in, having over their own habits rich robes presented them by the king of Persia, and each a gold cross hanging upon the breast. As they were well versed in the Latin, Spanish, Italian and French languages, their company was extremely agreeable. The entertainment, according to the custom of Persia, began with fruits

and preserves; in two hours time the meat was brought up in large silver dishes, filled with rice of several colours, and upon that various sorts of meat boiled and roasted, as beef, mutton, tame fowl, wild ducks, fish, &c. which were very well dressed.

As the Persians make no use of knives at table, their cooks always cut their meat, ready for eating, in small pieces. Each table has a carver, who takes the meat out of the great dishes in which it is brought up, and fills some lesser ones with three or four sorts of meat, so that each dish might serve two or three people. The drink was beer, mead, and brandy, of which little was drank till the latter end of the feast, when the cups began to go merrily round; and the whole was concluded with a large porcelain vessel filled with a hot blackish liquor, called kahawa. In short, they were entertained with as much civility as if they had been in any part of Europe.

On the 27th the ambassadors, with some of their retinue, took a walk round the city, towards the quarters of the Tartars, in order to view their habitations. They observed that the people did not thrash their corn, but trod it out by oxen and horses; and that every hut had its hawk or falcon.

On the 30th of September the governor of the city sent the ambassadors a present of gingerbread, and the juice of gooseberries made into a paste, or rolls. It was of a sharp and pleasant taste, and is frequently used by the Moscovites in their sauces. The next day the secretary of the embassy, with two other gentlemen, were ordered to attend the governor on business. He gave them a favourable reception, and made them sit down by him; but, before he would give them an answer, complained

of the ill conduct of the ambassador Brugman, who had used very reviling language to the pristaff, without regard to his quality, as the servant of the czar, to whom he ought to have complained, or to those who represented him at Astrachan. But added very obligingly, that though it was his duty to make these remonstrances, he would not impute it to the whole retinue, but would give them their dispatches, which he accordingly did.

CHAP. IV.

The ambassadors arrive at the city of Terki; are entertained by a Tartarian princess; narrowly escape destruction in a violent storm. Description of the province of Schirwan, and the village of Niassbath: visit the tombs of two Persian saints: make their public entry into Scamachie. Ceremonies used by the Armenians at the baptism of the cross; and by the Persians, at the festival of the prophet Hali; description of the city of Scamachie, and the adjacent country.

HAVING taken in a supply of biscuit, beer, twenty fat oxen, and some barrels of salt-fish, they hired some Tartars, who promised to go before them in boats, to conduct them over the shoals at the mouth of the Volga. They left Astrachan on the 10th of October, but were soon after driven to the shore, where they were visited by a prince of Tartary, who had a graceful person, and who presented them with a sheep and a barrel of milk.

On the 13th they were forced to anchor near a small round mountain, fifteen wersts from Astrachan; and from the great number of snakes they saw there, they called it the Snaky Mountain. It was covered with caper-trees, and the herb sempervivum, or house-leek, of several kinds: the adjacent plain

afforded the most delightful prospect in the world. They afterwards passed by many islands covered with bushes, canes and osiers; they saw a great many dog-fish, and a kind of cormorants larger than swans, with their bills above a foot and a half long, two fingers broad, and forked at the end. Under their bills they have a bag of skin, which they can contract, or extend to such a size, that it will contain three gallons of water; and this they use as a reservatory for the fish they take, till they can swallow them. The ambassador Crusius afterwards shot one of them upon the Caspian Sea, which was two ells and a half between the extremities of the wings, and seven feet from the head to the feet.

On the 15th they reached the mouth of the Volga, which is full of small islands, that abound with canes and reeds. The passages between these islands being shallow water, they were reduced to great danger, and were seven days in advancing four leagues. At length, finding the Moscovite pilot very ignorant, and the maps of the Caspian Sea they had brought along with them entirely false, they addressed the colonel of the strelitzers, desiring him to furnish them with an able pilot. He came on board and being well treated, promised to send such a pilot as they might confide in; but no sooner returned to his own ship than he set sail, without fulfilling his promise. They therefore applied to the master of the Persian ship, who, notwithstanding his being owner of all the goods in the vessel, freely came on board, and steered them into ten feet water.

On the 30th of October they, as soon as it was light, discovered the country of Circassia, which, extending from the south-west to the north-east,

earth, but so contrived, that at equal distances they might see a number of niches vaulted, and adorned either with rich beds, with silk or cotton counterpanes, or filled with pieces of Persian tapestry, coverlets wrought with gold and silk, and large chests, covered with the same rich stuffs. Under the ceiling hung two rows of wooden and earthen dishes, and on the pillars which supported the edifice were hung scymeters, quivers and arrows, of the best kind. The prince's mother sat in a chair. She was about forty-five years of age, tall, majestic, and of a good countenance. She was wrapt up in a black night-gown lined with sables; behind on her neck hung an ox's bladder full blown, wound about with a rich scarf, embroidered with gold and silk; and about her neck she had another scarf, both ends of which hung down upon her shoulders. A woman who attended her, had also an ox's bladder, which they afterwards understood to be the badge of widowhood. On her right hand stood her three sons, the two youngest of whom could not be distinguished by their dress from the most inconsiderable person of the country. Behind these youths were several servants, whose faces being torn with their nails, still bore the marks of mourning for the death of her eldest son, who had been lately executed at Moscow; and on her left hand stood several aged Tartars, who were officers of the court.

After the princes had returned the compliment made by the ambassadors, a collation of fruit was brought in upon a little table. The gentlemen urged the princes to sit down with them; but they excused themselves, by alleging the custom of the country, which did not allow of their sitting in the

presence of their mother. After the collation, the princess, and the rest of those who were present, took particular notice of the gentlemen's clothes; and then the princess herself, and each of the three princes, presented them a large cup of spiritous liquor, extracted out of millet, and as strong as brandy: the princes also did the same to the servants. Meanwhile they saw a door suddenly open behind the princess, at the entrance of which appeared several women, and among the rest the princess's daughter, who was betrothed to the sophi of Persia. She was about sixteen years of age, very handsome, and of a clear complexion, to which the blackness of her hair added no small lustre. These ladies were so curious to see the clothes of these German gentlemen, that they pushed one another backwards from the door, which, at the first wink from the princess, was shut; but they soon opened it again to take a full view of them, and calling one of the servants, seemed much delighted with his dress, and even made him draw his sword, in order to view the blade; but a Persian eunuch, who had been sent to carry the young princess into Persia, happening to come, the door was immediately shut, and the gentlemen took their leave of the princess and her sons, in order to take a view of the city. The houses there are low and mean, being made of boughs of trees, plaistered over with earth or clay. The men are generally strong-limbed, of a tawny complexion, but not so broad-faced as the Nagaian Tartars. Their hair is black and long; but they shave from the forehead to the neck, about the breadth of an inch, leaving, just at the crown, a lock which falls down behind. Their clothes are like those of the other Tartars who inhabit these parts, only their

cloaks, which are either of sheep-skins or very coarse cloth, are somewhat larger: they are fastened at the neck with a string, and as they are too scanty to cover the whole body, they turn them, so as to shield them from the wind and rain. The women are handsome and well shaped, having a clear complexion, and an agreeable bloom in their cheeks. They never cover their faces, and their black hair hangs down in two tresses on both sides. They wear black caps upon their heads, which they cover with a fine piece of calico, or linen cloth, tied under the chin. All the women they met were clothed only in a kind of smocks or frocks, which were green yellow, or blue, and the bosom cut so deep before, that these gentlemen could easily see below the navel. They appeared very familiar, stopped the gentlemen to examine their dress, and though some of the retinue, under the pretence of handling their necklaces, which were of amber, copper or tin, slipped their hands into their bosoms, they did not seem in the least offended. They have, notwithstanding, the reputation of being very virtuous, and one of the officers belonging to the retinue, afterwards becoming familiarly acquainted with one of the women, who was very handsome, made trial of her chastity, but found it impregnable.

As to the religion of these people, though they use some Mahometan ceremonies, and in particular circumcision, they have neither the koran, priests, nor mosques, and may properly be termed pagans.

Having received advice, that the convoy of camels and mules were returned into Persia, the ambassadors resolved to continue their voyage by sea, upon which the Tartarian princess sent them a present of two sheep, fifty pullets, and other provisions; they

had also a present of beer, mead, and a sheep sent them by the high chancellor of Moscovy. In the afternoon of the same day, prince Mussal came on board to bid them farewel, bringing along with him Tartarian Myrze, a brother to the prince of Tarku in Daghestan. His habit, which was like that of the rest of the Tartars, was only a coarse cloth cloak over his old clothes; his countenance sufficiently discovered his natural fierceness, and his behaviour was in all respects answerable to it. He refused to arise, like the rest of the company, when the czar's health was drank; and being admonished by prince Mussal to consider what country he was in, answered, that he knew not whether he had not as much right to it as the grand duke, reproaching Mussal, that with all his fine clothes, he was no more than a slave, while he, in his rags, was a sovereign prince, and acknowledged no superior but God, and then absolutely refusing to drink the czar's health, went away. His servants, however, found means to take a silver spoon and a knife with them.

In the mean while the governor sent the ambassadors a present of a hundred pieces of hung beef, one of mead, a cask of wine, and another of vinegar, with some cakes of gingerbread, and some common bread.

On the 10th of November they set sail, directing their course towards Derbent, and about noon discovering a bark, which hovered about at a distance, the ambassador Brugman ordered a great gun to be fired, which made her bring to. She proved a vessel laden with fruit, the master of which happened to be brother to the Persian pilot; and finding him among a strange sort of people, broke out

into dreadful lamentations, thinking himself and his brother past all redemption; nor could be persuaded of the contrary, till his brother gave him a circumstantial account of the reason of these strangers being here, when he took the courage to enter the ship with a present of apples, pears, quinces and nuts, and sold a considerable number of very large apples, at the rate of four-pence a hundred.

They soon after came to an island, called by the Persians Tzenzeni. It is three leagues in length, and is extremely barren and sandy. Here they cast anchor, and staid twenty-four hours; but continuing their voyage, on the 11th met with a violent tempest, when furling their sails, the ship drove before the wind. They had two boats, besides the shallop, which were soon swallowed up by the waves, and the shallop followed not long after. The ship, which was only of fir, receiving many shocks on the sand-banks, opened on all sides, and they were forced to be without intermission at the pump. While they were in this distress, they discovered the mountain of Derbent, about ten leagues off, and the violence of the tempest being somewhat abated, they hoisted their sails, in order to run the ship aground; but the wind blowing from the north-west, they were forced beyond the city of Derbent, where no harbour was to be found, the rocks extending six leagues into the sea. They, however, in the afternoon of the 13th, came to an anchor before the village of Niasabath, and the next morning, when the tempest was somewhat abated, they, after firing their great and small guns, as signals of distress, without receiving any hopes of relief, began to make a kind of flat-bottomed boat, of deal boards; but at this instant two

boats were seasonably sent by the magistrate of the village to their assistance. They brought a present of apples, and the persons having complimented the ambassadors in the name of the magistrate, exhorted them to convey their valuable effects into the boats, and to go along with them, before the tempest arose again, as they feared it would.

The ambassadors took their advice, and went in the boats with part of their retinue, and some of the soldiers and officers, leaving their steward, the secretary of the embassy, and other of their own officers in the ship, intending to send the boats back to fetch them, after they themselves were landed. The magistrate waited on horseback at the sea-side for their coming; but scarce had the ambassadors set foot on the Persian shore, when the tempest increased with such violence, that it was absolutely impossible to send back the boats, so that the unhappy persons on board found themselves in the utmost danger of being wrecked. They had the misfortune to find, that they dragged their anchor, and that they were forced a quarter of a league from the place where the ambassadors left the ship; upon which they cast out two other anchors, but both these and the rudder were lost by eleven at night. All the hopes they had left were now in their biggest anchor, which still held: but the ship drawing water on all sides; and the pump becoming useless, the seamen, who were tired out with labour and watching, earnestly entreated the secretary to consent to their cutting the rope, which he for some time refused; but soon after, the main and mizen-masts being carried overboard, he consented, and the ship was run aground near the

place where the ambassadors and the rest of their friends impatiently expected them.

The country where they were cast ashore was at this time covered with an agreeable verdure, and thus continued till the middle of December, the soil being extremely fertile, and producing great quantities of rice, wheat and barley. They indeed make but little hay, which is only used for the convenience of travellers, as the cattle are kept abroad all the year round. This province, which is named Schirwan, produces a great number of vines, which are planted all along the hedges, and fastened to the trees. It has also vast quantities of wild fowl, especially pheasants; there are hares in abundance, with two kinds of foxes, one like those of Europe, but the other have wool instead of hair, with white bellies, black ears, and tails that are not so large as those of our foxes: these last run in herds in the night time about the villages, and make a doleful noise. The inhabitants use buffaloes instead of horses, and make them draw in the same manner; they feed them with fenugreek, which they sow, and cut green, herb and seed together, and thus give it to them to eat. Their cows milk produces a cream of two fingers thick, of which they make great plenty of excellent butter; but they make all their cheese of sheep's milk.

The village of Niasabath consists only of fifteen or sixteen poor houses, scattered up and down. They are built of clay, and exactly square, with flat roofs covered with turf, so that a man may conveniently walk upon them. But notwithstanding the mean appearance of these houses on the outside, some of them were handsome enough within, and the floors covered with tapestry; but the village

being too small to contain all the people belonging to the retinue, they pitched their tents near the ambassador's lodgings: they were here obliged to be contented with eating mouldy scraps of bread found in the ship, and with drinking the muddy water of an adjacent torrent.

On the 19th of November the governor of Derbent sent two persons, well dressed, to compliment the ambassadors upon their arrival in Persia, and to make them a present of two horses, two oxen, twelve sheep, twenty pullets, three pitchers of wine, one pitcher of water, two panniers of apples, and three sacks of wheat flour; but the governor's letter mentioning only one horse, and the ambassador Brugman finding his not so good as the other, absolutely refused to accept of it, though the persons who brought them solemnly protested, that this mistake was occasioned by the governor's supposing there had been but one ambassador; but that they, being informed by the way that there were two, had brought the best horse they could get, from the opinion that the governor would approve of it; yet notwithstanding all their excuses, Mr. Brugman persisted in his resolution, and, contrary to the customs both of Persia and Moscovy, sent these persons back without any presents; which was so highly resented by the governor, that he ever after did the ambassadors all the ill offices in his power.

On the 22d of November the ambassadors sent one of their retinue, with a Persian interpreter, to Scamachie, to give notice of their arrival to the khan, or governor-general, of the province of Schirwan, and to desire him to furnish them with every thing necessary for continuing their journey; but

the governor having before received intelligence of their arrival, had immediately dispatched a mehemander, or conductor, who in Persia supplies the office of the Moscovite pristaffs; but the gentlemen who were sent were not so fortunate as to meet him. The mehemander arrived on the 29th of November, richly dressed, and extremely well mounted, his horse's harness being embroidered with gold and turquoises. He made the ambassadors a very handsome and obliging compliment, and offered them his utmost assistance while they continued under his conduct, which was to be as far as Scamachie; upon which they treated him and his retinue with some fruit and brandy, entertained him with their music, and discharged some of their great guns, with which he was so well pleased, that he no sooner returned to his lodging, than he sent them a present of five sheep, three pitchers of wine, and some pomegranates.

The messengers returned with advice, that meeting with the khan at some distance from the city, he had given them a very kind reception, assuring them that he had already dispatched a mehemander to conduct and provide for the ambassadors; adding, that he had been informed that their retinue consisted of three hundred persons, but that if they had twice the number they should be very welcome; and that he longed to see them. He then inquired concerning the quality and temper of the ambassadors, and their manner of life.

The first effects they felt from the governor of Derbent's displeasure was his denying them a sufficient number of cattle for the prosecution of their journey, which obliged them to send back their mehemander to Scamachie, to procure some from

thence, and this forced them to stay near a month at the village of Niasabath.

On the 9th of December the Tartar prince of Tarku, whom they had seen near Terki, came to pay them a visit, in company with his brother and a retinue of twenty persons, and the next day he sent them a present of an ox, some sheep, and two large panniers of apples; in return for which the ambassadors presented him with some ells of cloth and satin, a vessel of brandy, a roll of tobacco, and a barrel of gun-powder of eighty pounds weight, which he most earnestly desired. What gave the ambassadors the highest satisfaction at this time, was the return of their mehemander, who brought them the agreeable news, that within fifteen days they should be provided with cattle and carriages sufficient for their journey. Accordingly, a few days after, some camels and horses arrived, the rest being delayed by the falling of the snow, which rendered the roads slippery; the camels, whose hoofs are not so flat as those of other beasts, cannot travel in the snow without much hazard, and this obliged the ambassadors to stay ten days longer, during which Mr. Brugman, notwithstanding the remonstrances of the Persians, very imprudently caused some pieces of timber, that were brought by the sophi's orders to the sea-side, for the building of ships, to be cut in pieces, to make carriages for the artillery.

On the 21st of December, two mehemanders, one from Schamachie, and the other from Derbent, brought forty camels, thirty waggons drawn by buffaloes, and eighty horses, when the baggage being loaded and sent before, with part of the retinue, there were but sixty horses left for ninety-four per-

sons; some of the servants and guards were therefore obliged to travel on foot. They proceeded to the southward, along the coast of the Caspian Sea.

The first place at which they lodged was a village called Mordors, four leagues from Niasabath. The houses, which are round, like those of the Tartars, were built of oziers and canes. They spent the night very ill for want of fuel, this village lying in the midst of fens. The many springs about this place send forth their waters with such violence, that they never freeze, and the brooks which flow from them are full of swans, whose down is gathered for the sophi's beds. The inhabitants, who are called Padars, use a peculiar dialect, which partakes both of the Persian and Turkish tongue. They are Mahometans, and partly of the Turkish sect, accompanied with some odd superstitions: thus they never cut their meat after it is dressed, until it is almost cold, and if any one happens to breathe or blow upon it, they cast it away as impure.

On the second day after they left Niasabath, the mehemander brought them twenty horses more, when leaving part of their useless baggage behind, the whole retinue mounted on horseback, and travelled to a very handsome village, called Tachousi, and having proceeded three leagues farther, came to the mountain of Barmach, where they lodged that night in a caravansera. These edifices are built in the deserts of Persia, within a day's journey of each other, for the accommodation of travellers. This was an ancient square structure, of free-stone, about forty paces each way, and here they staid all the following day.

On the 26th of December they left Barmach, the sun then casting a greater heat than it does with us

in May. The baggage took the way through the plain, towards Bakuje; but the ambassadors, with the rest of the company on horseback, proceeded through the mountains, and staid that night at the village of Chanega, where they met with most excellent fruit and honey, but the water was muddy and stinking.

On the 27th they travelled to the village of Pyrmaraas, famous for the sepulchre of two Persian saints, one of whom is named Seid-Ibrahim. This sepulchre is surrounded with walls, and has two courts, like a castle; but though the ambassadors were very desirous of taking a view of it, they were only permitted to enter the first court, in which were many square stones set up on the end, they being the tomb-stones of private persons. Our author, however, having an extraordinary curiosity to obtain a sight of this tomb, got into the first court; from thence, under pretence of making some inscriptions in his book, he got into the second, where he found many other inscriptions, in the copying of which he bestowed about half an hour; when, perceiving that the Persians took no farther notice of him, he ventured to draw a wooden pin, with which the door that leads into the edifice was fastened, and immediately entering it, found many arched apartments. In the first was a tomb, inclosed within an iron grate, just opposite to the door; it was about two feet high, and had as many steps to get up to it. On the left hand he observed a door that led into a large and very lightsome gallery, the walls of which were extremely white, and the floor covered with rich tapestry. In another apartment, on the right hand which was vaulted, he saw eight high tombs; and through this passed into another

vault, where was the sepulchre of Seid-Ibrahim, whose tomb, which was two feet above the ground, was covered with a carpet of yellow damask. At the head and feet, and also on each side, were several wax candles in brass candlesticks, and many lamps hung down from the roof of the vault. Thus our author satisfied his curiosity, without receiving any prejudice from the superstition of the people.

About two musket shot to the east of the same village is a very sumptuous sepulchre in a rock, belonging to a Persian saint named Tiribabba, said to be the master of Seid-Ibrahim. Both these places are famed for the many pilgrimages made thither by the Persians. Here several chambers, niches and holes, are formed within the rock, in which the pilgrims take up their lodging, and perform their devotions; but some of these are so high that they cannot get up to them without ladders of twelve or fifteen feet in length. Our author, and two others, made a shift, however, to get up to the top of the rock, where they found spacious rooms, and several niches cut within the rock, to serve for beds; but what most suprised them was their finding, upon the very top, a vault, which, as well as the places about it, seemed as if the rock was made up of sand and muscle-shells.

The inhabitants of the village of Pyrmaraas abstain from drinking all sorts of wine, for fear of defiling those holy places; and it is observable, that near the sepulchre of Seid-Ibrahim, is a large cistern fifty-two feet in length, and twenty feet in breadth, inclosed by a wall of free-stone, where the inhabitants keep their snow and ice.

On the 29th the khan sent to inform the ambassadors that they might make their entrance into

Scamachie that day; but just as they were ready to take horse, a messenger arrived to intreat them to stay at Pyrmaraas till the next; and to show that this was not done with any sinister design, he brought a present of wine, pomegranates, apples, pears, quinces and chesnuts, and for each of the ambassadors a very fine horse, with all its furniture. This delay, it was afterwards found, proceeded from the khan's astrologer, who had told him, that it was no fortunate day for receiving of strangers.

The next morning, however, they mounted on horseback, in order to make their entrance into the city, which was at the distance of three leagues. When they had proceeded about a league, they were met by a messenger, who bid them welcome, and told them that the khan would come in person to receive them without the city, and afterwards march in front of the cavalcade. Within a league of the city they met with thirty gentlemen, who having taken a view of them, returned, and soon after they met with one hundred more, who opened on both sides to let them pass through. About two musket shot farther, they met with another troop of horse, among whom were twelve persons who had turbans, pointed at the top, to show that they were of the posterity of the prophet Hali. These, saluting the ambassadors with a low inclination of the head, bade them welcome, and having kept them company for half a league, there appeared, to the right, a body of five hundred horsemen, and being told that the khan and his calenter, or lieutenant, were among them, in person, and that the open fields were more proper for the ceremonies used at the reception of ambassadors than the high road, which was dirty, they proceeded directly towards

the khan, who waited upon an eminence for their coming, and advanced towards them, as soon as he perceived them turn that way. He had on his right hand a guard of six men, armed with gilt bows and arrows, and as many on his left with muskets, and was attended by a numerous retinue of gentlemen on horseback, all dressed in brocade, with mantles and caps embroidered with gold and silver. Being come near the ambassadors, he, contrary to the custom of Persia, took one, and then the other by the hand, and ordering wine to be poured into a silver vessel, drank to the ambassadors, who pledged him twice. The calenter and the Moscovite envoy already mentioned, who was now with the khan, also bid them welcome, by giving them their hands.

As they marched along, the German and Persian music led the way, consisting of trumpets, hautboys, timbrels, cornets, tabors and brass instruments called kerrenai, which was eight feet long, and two feet in diameter at the end. They had not proceeded far when the khan ordered a halt, and drank again to the ambassadors, and while they were pledging him, a jester diverted the company by singing, playing with castagnets, and throwing himself into a thousand ridiculous postures. Within a quarter of a league of the city, they were met by a body of two thousand Armenian foot, divided into five regiments, distinguished by their colours and music, which consisted of pipes and two brass basons struck against each other. Here another halt was made for the ambassadors to drink, and at the city gate they were met by another band of music.

The khan, having invited the ambassadors to supper, would have them cross the court on horseback, to the very entrance of his apartments; but

the rest of his retinue alighted at the outer gate. As the floors of all the apartments were covered with rich carpets, the Persians took off their shoes before they went in, but the ambassadors and their retinue were conducted in their boots, through three handsome rooms, into a sumptuous and spacious hall, the walls of which were hung with paintings of naked figures. Round a fountain, which was in the middle of the hall, stood several silver flaggons, and bottles of wine to cool, and several tables were furnished with all sorts of conserves. Opposite to the fountain, the ambassadors were complimented with seats made after the European fashion; the khan causing one of them to sit at his right hand, and the other at his left. Upon the ground sat the calenter, the khan's astrologer, physician, and other persons of distinction. The gentlemen, and others of the retinue, were placed on the floor, on the other side of the hall, while the musicians stood directly opposite to the khan, and continued playing as long as the entertainment lasted; and near the door stood several lusty young men, dressed in brocade, with their bows and arrows in a shooting posture. Every one present stood with his back to the company; a custom constantly observed in all assemblies in Persia.

Many small tables, filled with fruit and conserves, were first brought in, and two pages were employed in filling wine round to all the company. After some time these were removed, and the like tables, covered with fine painted calico, placed in their stead, to serve the meat upon. About an hour after, the meat being taken away, some other conserves were served up, and these tables being soon removed, great pieces of linen, which were to an-

swer the purpose of table-cloths, were spread upon the floor on the tapestry. At supper the carver came in with a great wooden dish full of pieces of a thin baked paste, three feet in length, and as many in breadth, one of which he gave to each of the company instead of a napkin. The meat was then brought in large pewter dishes, which being set in the middle of the hall, the carver kneeling down cut it into pieces, and divided it into little dishes, one of which was served to every person in company, each of whom had a pot standing by him, to spit in, and to hold bones, parings and cores of fruit.

As the governor's palace was seated upon the ascent of a hill, they had the view of a vast number of lamps, which, in obedience to the khan's orders, were put up in all the houses of the city; and the khan, being desirous of letting the ambassadors see his dexterity in shooting, showed them a lamp, which he struck out twice successively with a musket shot. In short, he at length conducted the ambassadors into a room that had fire in it, where he again entertained them with conserves, wine and brandy, of which last a Persian of quality took so much, that he was the next day found dead in his bed. The company parted about midnight, and the ambassadors, with their retinue, were lodged among the Armenians.

On the 6th of January the ambassadors, at the khan's invitation, went to see the ceremonies used by the Armenians at the consecration of the holy water, or the baptism of the cross. This feast is also celebrated by the Moscovites, and some other Christians. It was performed without the city, mass being first said, with much the same ceremonies as

are used by the Roman Catholics in Europe; after which a sermon was preached by their bishop, at the Armenian chapel, at which the ambassadors were present.

The Armenians having, by the khan's order, brought fifteen horses for the gentlemen of the retinue, they rode to the river side, half a league from the city, while the people, flocking thither from all parts, went in procession with pictures, crosses and banners, under a guard of a strong party of soldiers, to protect them against the insults of the Mahometans. The khan had caused a tent, very richly furnished, to be pitched opposite to the palace, where the ceremony was to be performed; and a collation was ordered to be got ready. On his left hand was the Moscovite envoy, with many other gentlemen; and on his right hand, the ambassadors, and the chief of their retinue, who being seated, the khan ordered the Armenians to begin their ceremonies, which they accordingly did, by reading at the river side, while four men jumped in naked, and swam about for some time, to open the waters, which were a little frozen. A spaniel happening to leap in after them, greatly delighted the Persians, who, considering the dog as an unclean creature, were glad to see these ceremonies thus defiled. After the bishop had continued reading for an hour, and the assembly had given over singing and playing on timbrels, he poured a little consecrated oil in the water; and after having dipped into it a cross, set with precious stones, gave it his benediction, by holding the crozier over it. This was no sooner done, than the Armenians ran to the river side, some of them plunging into it, others drinking, and others sprinkling their faces,

while some of the khan's domestics ridiculed them, by dashing the water among the priests and women, till he commanded them to forbear; though he, at the same time, permitted his jester, and others, to caper about in mockery of the poor Armenians, who danced about their bishop. The khan's physician, who was an Arabian, had the impudence to ask the ambassadors, whether they believed Jesus Christ to be the Son of God? to which he was answered, that they believed him to be the true God; but that it was very uncivil to scoff at their religion, about which they should not dispute with him. The ceremony was concluded with a good collation, at which the khan drank so plentifully, that finding himself unable to bear more, he mounted his horse, and left the company without the least ceremony, and all the rest of the Persians followed his example. It is indeed customary with the Persians to go when they have enough, without making the least excuse; and this freedom is always observed, both by the guests and those who invite them.

During their abode at Scamachie, which was three months, all which time they waited for orders from court, the governor and calenter done every thing in their power to divert them with hunting, and frequent visits and presents. On the 10th of January, the calenter having invited the ambassadors and all their retinue to a great feast, conducted them through all the apartments of his palace, which, both in its buildings and furniture, exceeded that of the khan. The hall, where they dined, was arched, and adorned with a kind of stucco work, wrought into leaves and branches; and from this room there was a prospect over all the gardens: but what appeared most agreeable to our author was, a

fountain, which, issuing out of the gallery on one side of the hall, cast its water very high, and falling into a lower bason, was from thence conveyed to another fountain in the middle of the garden. The khan, with several of his courtiers, and the marshal of the sophi's court, who had lately arrived from Ispahan, were also present at the feast, which lasted till night, when the ambassadors were conducted back to their lodgings with lighted torches.

On the 18th of January the steward, secretary and comptroller, were sent with the ambassadors present to the khan; these consisted of ten ells of scarlet, and five ells of blue satin, a barrel of brandy, a chest containing two dozen of bottles of different sorts of spirits, and some knives with amber hafts.

On the 5th of February, our author by accident went into a great house near the bazar, which, from its structure, and the nobleness of its galleries, resembled a college. This edifice he found to be one of those public schools called mandresa, of which there are many in Persia. While he was taking a view of the buildings, he saw some walking, and others sitting, with books in their hands; one of the maderis, who read public lectures, coming up, and observing upon our author's cane the following words, engraved in Arabic, "In the name of the merciful God, who showeth mercy," a sentence which the Persians generally put at the beginning of their writings, he desired to have it, promising to give him a better the next day; but our author refusing to part with it, he cut out the word Alla, or God, and putting it into a piece of clean paper, told him that the name of God ought not to be put upon a walking-stick.

The next day our author intending to return to

the same college, caused a very handsome celestial globe to be brought along with him; but, by mistake, he happened to go into another, where he was very civilly received by the professors, regents and students, who much admired the globe, and were surprised to find that astronomy, and the mathematics in general, flourished better in Europe than in Persia, where they were still ignorant of the use of the globe, and only made use of an astrolabe, for the instruction of their students; they could, however, name all the signs of the zodiac, and let him know, that they were acquainted with the names of many of the stars.

At another time he had the curiosity to go into a metzid, or school, near his quarters, where they instruct their children. The young scholars sat all around close to the wall; the mollah, or schoolmaster, with some other aged persons, sitting in the midst of the hall, whither they also invited him, as soon as they saw him enter. The mollah permitted him to turn over the koran he had in his hand, which done, he took it back and kissed it, and then offered it to him to kiss, which he declining, and kissing another instead of it, which he held in his hand, the master told him, with a smile, he had done very well. Our author saw here, among the rest, an astrologer of near sixty-five years of age, who was reading Euclid to his disciples. Knowing the book by the figures, and having made some demonstrations, as well as he could express himself, the old man was so pleased with him, that he pulled out his brass astrolabe, and asked him whether he had ever seen such an instrument, or knew the use of it. Our author no sooner answered in the affirmative, and that he had one at his lodgings,

but he was so urgent with him to see it, that he went home to fetch it, and also brought the globe along with him. They were much surprised at the instruments, and much more when they understood that he had made the astrolabe himself; and being desirous of seeing how he could divide the degrees with such exactness, as they had no instruments fit for that purpose, he showed them how this might easily be performed; at which the old man was so well satisfied, that he ever after gave him all possible demonstrations of his friendship, frequently visited him, and gave him the longitude and latitude of the chief cities of Asia, which he afterwards compared with his own observations, and found very exact.

The 7th of February, being the twenty-first day of their principal feast at lent, the Persians celebrated the festival, in memory of their great patron Hali, which was performed in a house built for that purpose without the city. Opposite a gallery, in which were the khan, the calenter, and other principal courtiers, was placed an open chair, eight feet high, under a kind of linen canopy, for the chatib or prelate, who was dressed in blue, the mourning colour of the Persians. He read for two hours in a book of the life and memorable actions of Hali, singing out his words in a loud and doleful, yet intelligible voice, except when he came to some extraordinary passage, or moral sentence, when he only pronounced the first word, the rest being sung by the priests, who surrounded him in great numbers; and, at the end of every such passage, one of them cried out, "God's curse on him who killed Hali," when the whole assembly answered, "Rather more than less." On his coming to a passage where

Hali tells his children that he shall not live long; and prophesies by whom he is to be killed, the Persians began to weep.

When the chatib had ended, the khan sent him a silk garment, and then the procession began, in which three camels carried three coffins covered with black cloth, which represented those of Hali and his two sons. These were followed by two chests covered with blue cloth, full of the religious treatises written by Hali; next appeared two very fine horses, carrying upon their saddles bows, arrows, turbans, and flags. Then came a man carrying, on the top of a long pole, a kind of tower, to which were fastened four scimeters, so covered with ribbons, that they could scarcely be distinguished. In the rear came several men with small boxes on their heads, in which the koran lay open: the boxes were covered with feathers and flowers, and the men came dancing and leaping in cadence to a doleful tune, played on hautboys, timbrels, flageolets, and tabors; while, on the other side, many boys danced and sung together, clapping one another upon the shoulders, and repeating the names of Hali and his two sons, Hassan and Hossein. This festival is celebrated on the same day all over Persia. The day after the fast the khan magnificently entertained the whole court, on which occasion the ambassadors were present.

On the 27th, the messenger sent to Ispahan returned, with orders for the departure of the ambassadors, at which they were greatly rejoiced, and resolved to amuse themselves with hunting before they left Scamachie. As the khan was prevented from going with them by some extraordinary business, he sent them his huntsman, with his hounds

and hawks, and, among the rest, a leopard so well taught, that he would start and take a hare as well as a grey-hound, and was as much at command as a setting-dog.

On the 1st of March the Persians celebrated another festival, called Chummehater, in memory of the day when Hali took possession of the estate of Mahomet. Upon this occasion the khan entertained the ambassadors under a tent, near the river-side, and they had the diversion of several sorts of dancing; in particular, a youth played extremely well upon two small cymbals, dancing to them with great address; and an Arabian Moor leaped and danced between the porcelain dishes, in which the meat was brought up, with such skill, as not to touch one of them. The khan being also disposed to show his skill at the bow, caused one of the rings with which the Persians bend their bows, and which they commonly wear upon their thumbs, to be fastened to a horse's hair, and held by a boy at above six paces distance, when he cut it twice, one after another, with his arrow; and an apple being thrown up into the air, he shot it with a firelock.

On the 20th of March the khan came in company with the calenter, to take leave of the ambassadors, as he was going a journey, and did not expect to return before their departure; but his physician, who pretended to some skill in astrology, having observed, that the sky told him it was no lucky hour to enter into the ambassadors lodgings, they fell to drinking plentifully in the court, when the khan taking particular notice of a very handsome lad, who was one of the ambassador Crusius's pages, asked the physician whether he was not a very fine boy, and said, that he wished he was his son; upon

which the physician began to consult the heavens again, though it was neither night, nor a clear sky, and told the khan, that, if by viewing the boy again he could imprint a strong idea of him in his imagination, and would immediately go and pay a visit to one of his women, he might infallibly get such another boy, which he and his company believing, he viewed the boy once more, and then getting on horseback, immediately departed.

On the 24th the khan of Scamachie sent away the usual new year's gift for the sophi, which consisted of some very fine horses richly harnessed, some camels laden with Russia leather, several rich stuffs, thirty bags filled with swans down, and a great number of handsome boys and girls. The khan, at the same time going his journey, left the management of the ambassadors affairs to the calenter, who immediately after sent to their quarters the sum of sixty tumains, amounting to a thousand crowns, as a reimbursement for the expences they had been at during their stay at Scamachie: but this not amounting to half the sum, the ambassador Brugman sent him word, that he knew not whether the sum was sent from the sophi or khan; but that it should be carried sealed up as it was to Ispahan; and that he could not forbear complaining of the injury done them, in detaining them so long, contrary to the orders of the court, desiring that speedy care might be taken for their departure. To this the calenter replied, that the sum had been sent by his majesty's orders, and that he was much concerned at the delay of their journey, which was occasioned by the largeness of their retinue, and the quantity of their baggage.

Scamachie, the capital city of the province of

Schirwan, is situated in a valley inclosed between two mountains, and lies in 40° 50′ north latitude. It is divided into the north and south city. The walls of the last were pulled down by Shah Abbas; but the former, which is somewhat larger than the other, and contains about nine hundred houses, has its walls still standing, though they are so low, and surrounded by so poor a ditch, that a person may pass into the city at any time. The whole city has five gates; but the streets are very narrow, and the houses, which are mostly built with earth, are very low. The inhabitants are chiefly Armenians and Georgians, who, using different languages, here make use of the Turkish, which is common to both, not only in the province of Schirwan, but all over Persia. Their chief trade consists in raw or wove silk, and calicoes. Most of the shops are in the south city, where the great bazar is, into which many streets enter, all of them covered, for the convenience of the shop-keepers. Near the bazar are also two large store-houses, divided into many galleries and chambers, one for the accommodation of the Moscovite merchants, who there sell Russia leather, furs, coppèr, tin, and other commodities; the other for the Circassian Tartars, who bring scarcely any thing else but horses, women, young lads, and handsome maids, which they steal on the frontiers of Moscovy. The Jews have also a part of this store-house assigned them for their merchandizes, which consist of the best woollen tapestry, silk stuffs, calico, gold and silver brocades, bows, arrows, and scimeters. The city has also three hamans, or public baths, the use of which are as general in Persia as in Moscovy.

Near the city are the ruins of an old strong castle,

upon a high and steep mountain, near which is a valley, watered by a very pleasant brook, and adorned in the spring with an incredible quantity of tulips. Between this fort and the city are also to be seen, upon a mountain that exceeds the last-mentioned in height, two chapels; in the largest of which is a very high sepulchre, hung about with many pieces of cloth, and other rags of different colours, and also several rods of iron, pointed at the end like arrows; in the other are two tombs, adorned much after the same manner. They belonged to some of their saints, and near them the inhabitants frequently perform their devotions. From this last chapel there is an easy descent into a large vault, where is a sepulchre of one of their king's daughters, named Amalek Kanna, who having an aversion to marriage, being betrothed by her father to a certain Tartarian prince, laid violent hands on herself. In the hot season the inhabitants of the city retire to this and the other mountain; the traders and shopkeepers of Scamachie staying there only in the night, while the khan, and other persons of quality, dwell there in tents during the three hottest months of the year.

CHAP. V.

They leave Scamachie and proceed to Ardebil. The manner in which the festivals of Kurban and Ashur are celebrated; a description of Ardebil, and the sepulchres near it. Their arrival at Sulthania. That city, with its mosques, described. They thence proceed to Caswin, to Com, and to Katschan; a description of those cities, and of the scorpions and spiders of Katschan.

ON the 27th of March, sixty waggons, and one

hundred and twenty saddle-horses being brought to the ambassadors for the prosecution of their journey, they sent away their baggage immediately, and followed it the next morning, when the ambassador Brugman, being much dissatisfied with the treatment he had received at Scamachie, ordered them to depart two hours before day, when proceeding on foot, without the least noise, they took horse without the gate. Having travelled about a league and a half, they came to the sepulchre of another Persian saint; and being overtaken by a violent storm of lightning, thunder, wind, rain and snow, they had the misfortune of being obliged to endure the tempest, and to spend the night under the bare heavens for want of their tents; and the next day the ambassador Brugman, finding that some of the cannon had been left behind at Scamachie, for want of camels, exclaimed in very abusive terms against the khan and calenter, in the presence of the mehemander; and had it not been for the want of provisions and lodgings, would have obliged the whole company to stay there until they were brought up. But it being resolved to proceed forwards, they advanced two leagues to a caravansera, and, after travelling two leagues more, came to the top of the mountain of Scamachie, on which they passed through a fine fertile plain, which, both in the spring and winter, is as cold as most parts of Europe. But no sooner were they come to the descent, than they saw before them another plain, that extended above ten leagues, and was covered with a beautiful verdure; and soon after they discovered, at a distance, the confluence of the two celebrated rivers Araxes and Cyrus. After an easy descent, they took up their lodgings in some

Tartarian huts, which the shepherds had set up near their flocks.

On the 30th of March they proceeded four leagues through the plain to the village of Kasilu, and by the way met with a company of Tartars, who had packed up their huts, household goods, and other moveables, with their wives and children, in waggons, or upon horses, cows and asses. They had ever after very fair weather and a serene sky, except when they travelled over the mountains, where it appeared a little overcast in the morning, but these clouds were soon after dispelled by the beams of the sun.

On the 31st they proceeded two leagues, to the village of Tzawat, upon the right side of the river Kur, where the houses were all built of reeds and canes, and covered with earth. The meadow-grounds along this river are full of liquorice, the stalks of which are sometimes thicker than a man's arm, and the juice is incomparably sweeter than that of Europe.

The river Kur, anciently called Cyrus, is a common boundary between the two provinces of Shirwan and Mokan, which are joined by a bridge of boats near Tzawat. They had no sooner passed over the bridge, but another mehemander, sent by the governor of Ardebil, brought them forty fresh camels and three hundred horses, because they could not so conveniently make use of waggons in passing over the mountains, and also furnished them with plenty of provisions. That night they took up their quarters in huts set up for that purpose, at the entrance of a very extensive heath.

The next day they travelled four Persian leagues over the heath, and lodged that night in huts as

before. In passing along they saw a kind of deer, feeding in herds, which resembled harts, but were red; and their horns being without brow-antlers, were smooth, and turned backwards like those of the wild goat. Being the next day forced to leave the heath, which was the nearest way, for want of water, they travelled to the torrent of Balbaru, where they found abundance of tortoises that had laid their eggs in the sand. Some of the people, having the curiosity to cross the current, to see the manner in which the inhabitants lived on the other side, found many of the children entirely naked, and the rest only covered with calico smocks. They received these gentlemen very civilly, and treated them with milk, imagining they were sent for by the sophi, to serve in his wars against the Turks; they therefore wished them all imaginable success, and that they might drive their enemies before them as far as Stambol or Constantinople.

On the 6th of April, travelling across the mountains and rocks, they were unable to advance above two leagues. In their way they saw many fig-trees, produced by the earth without cultivation, and at night came to a village that had been left by its inhabitants. When they had almost unloaded their baggage, they were told, that the country was rendered desolate by the plague. The ambassadors therefore had a tent pitched for them in the field; but some of the retinue took up their lodgings in one of their houses, where they made a large fire, and, to chase away melancholy, drank freely of the wine they had brought along with them. The rest of the people, who did not choose to venture into the village, were forced to be contented, until, by the mehemander's care, some Tartarian huts were

436745

set up for them, which was not done until late at night.

The next day they were obliged to travel ten leagues without halting, in a continual trot, and in cold, windy, and snowy weather, on account of those parts abounding with a poisonous kind of wormwood, which kills all the cattle that eats of it. By the way they met a Persian well mounted, who was to be their mehemander, and conduct them to court. Their lodgings that night made some amends for the fatigues of the day; for they took up their quarters at the village of Tzanlu, which is surrounded with fruit-trees and pleasant gardens.

On the 8th they travelled along the mountain of Tzizetlu, and the next day, being Easter-Sunday, spent it as a day of refreshment, when they were complimented by their new mehemander, who brought them a present of dried fish, fruit, and Schiras wine, which is the best in Persia.

On the 10th of April, being Easter-Monday, they made their entry into Ardebil. First, a troop of horsemen saluted them, and then returned to the city. The calenter of Ardebil, a person in years, afterwards met them near the village of Kelhoran, which, from its many steeples and towers, built of stone of several colours, they took for the city of Ardebil. The calenter, having saluted the ambassadors, rode by their side. They afterwards passed a spacious plain, through a considerable body of horse and foot, which opened to make way for them. Soon after they were met by the governor of Ardebil, at the head of one thousand horse, and, after the first compliments were passed on both sides, he rode between the ambassadors. In the van marched two lads, covered with sheep-skins of

several colours, each of them carrying an orange on the top of a pole, and singing certain verses in praise of Mahomet, Hali, and Shah Sefi. These were followed by others, who, in a most surprising manner, imitated the singing of nightingales and other birds: the timbrels and hautboys played; some of the people danced, others sung, and others expressed their joy at seeing the ambassadors, by flinging up their caps. Near the city the guards were placed in two files, clothed in coats of mail, with feathers in their caps, and bows and arrows in their hands. As they approached the city gates, the crowd of people was so great, that it was necessary to force a way through them with bulls pizzles; and within the city, the house-tops, windows, steeples and trees, were crowded with such as came from all parts to be spectators of their entrance.

The ambassadors, and the gentlemen of their retinue, were conducted by the khan himself through a spacious garden, into a noble summer-house, and treated with a most splendid collation in a very stately gallery, while the rest were entertained below in a tent erected for that purpose. During the collation they had the best music Persia could afford, and a dance performed by archers, who held bows and arrows in their hands. After the collation the ambassadors were conducted to very spacious lodgings, in one of the best parts of the city, which formerly belonged to Sara Chutza, the lord high-chancellor of Persia.

The next day was brought to the ambassadors the thabenick, which are certain dishes of meat for three meals, sent to all persons of quality that come to Ardebil, pursuant to an ancient institution. Thirty-two large dishes, or rather basons, were full

of rice of all colours, upon which the boiled and roasted meat were laid, with some omelets and pastry, according to the Persian fashion. The following day a very plentiful allowance was sent for the kitchen, when the khan paid them a visit, and made them the kindest offers of his service, of which he afterwards gave them real demonstrations. The same day he sent an express to the court, to notify their arrival at Ardebil; but this express did not return till two months after.

On the 25th of April, which is the great Bairam, or festival called Kurban, in remembrance of the sacrifice Abraham was going to make of his son, they kill a sheep or lamb before break of day, each at his own door, which they cut to pieces, and give all to the poor, not even saving the skin. This is done in imitation of Abraham, who, they say, reserved nothing of the ram he sacrificed instead of Isaac.

On the 27th, in the evening, the khan informed the ambassadors of the news he had received, of the meeting of the janizaries at Constantinople, and their killing the grand seignior. This occasioned great rejoicings among the Persians, who made fire-works, and diverted themselves with music. The ambassadors followed their example, causing the trumpets to be sounded, and the drums to beat, and discharged all their great guns six times successively; at which the khan was so pleased, that he sent them two flaggons full of Schiras wine, and a large glass vessel full of candied sugar.

On the 14th of May the ambassadors were visited by Saru Taggi, the chancellor of Persia's son, who, with some other persons of quality, came for that purpose from Ispahan, and were entertained with a

very fine collation, and the discharge of their great guns.

On the 14th of May the Persians celebrated the feast called Ashur, or Ten, from its lasting ten days. It is kept in memory of Hossein, the youngest son of Hali, and is peculiar to the Persians. They say he was killed in the war against the kaliph Jesid, and after receiving seventy-two wounds with arrows, was run through the body with a sword. It lasts ten days, from his being so long pursued by his enemies before they could overtake him, during which the Persians show all the signs of affliction. They appear in mourning, suffer their beards to grow, though at other times they shave every day, and drink only water. Nothing was now to be seen throughout the city of Ardebil, but an awkward kind of devotion; the boys running in troops about the streets, with banners, on the extremity of which were wound snakes of pasteboard; and when they came to the doors of the mosques, they cried, "Ja Hossein, Ja Hossein! O Hossein, O Hossein!" After sun-set, especially on the three last days, they met in tents without the city, with lanterns, torches, and oranges on top of their poles, crying Ja Hossein, for an hour together. They then returned in procession, with banners and torches, through the principal streets of the city; and in the morning of the tenth day, a solemn oration was made in honour of Hossein, in the court of Shah Sefi, where a banner was planted, said to be made by the daughter of Fatima, the daughter of Mahomet; and the Persians positively affirm, that this banner shakes as often as the name of Hossein is mentioned in the oration.

The ambassadors being invited by the khan to

see the conclusion of this feast, they went to his palace, when he, meeting them at the outer gate, assigned them a place in the court, where seats were erected for them and their retinue, covered with rich tapestry; and upon a cloth before them, spread on the ground, were set several vessels of porcelain, filled with sugared and perfumed waters, and several brass candlesticks, four feet high, in which were large wax candles. There were also lamps filled with rags dipped in suet and naphtha. Round the walls of the court were one thousand lamps, which cast so great a light, that the whole palace seemed in a flame, and this was still increased by the light of many paper lanterns, fastened to cords drawn across the court. The principal persons of the five wards, into which the city of Ardebil is divided, appeared each in order, and presented the khan with a serenade, in which were sung verses composed by some of their poets, (of whom there are great numbers in Persia) in praise of Hali and Hossein; in return for which he presented them with some sweet waters, and, before they retired, they wished the ambassadors success in their intended negociation. Meanwhile seven naked boys, who had rubbed their bodies with suet and naphtha, and some with vermillion, to represent the blood of Hossein, danced with little stones in their hands, which they struck against each other, and smote their breasts with them, to express their sorrow for the death of Hossein; after which the khan entertained the ambassadors with some excellent fire-works.

The next day, before sun-rising, the Persians appeared again in procession, to represent the interment of Hossein, carrying many banners, and lead-

ing some fine horses and camels, covered with blue cloth, in which were quilted abundance of arrows, as if they had been shot into it, to represent those shot at Hossein. Upon some of these horses were mounted boys, with empty coffins before them, covered with a little hay or straw. These represented Hossein's children. Others of the horses carried turbans, scimeters, bows and quivers of arrows. Immediately after the sun rose, there appeared in the lower court a great number of men and boys, when the first letting themselves blood in their arms, such a quantity was spilled, that the court seemed as if several oxen had been slaughtered there. Meanwhile the boys slashed themselves above the elbow, and striking their wounds with their hands, made blood spirt all over their bodies. In this manner they ran through all the streets, in commemoration of the effusion of Hossein's blood; fully persuaded that they, by this means, expiated their sins, and that if they died during this feast, they would certainly be saved. They have the same opinion of the feast of Hali, and of their lent.

The city of Ardebil, called Ardvil by the Turks, is situated in the province of Adirbeitzan, the Media Major of the ancients, and is one of the most celebrated cities in the Persian empire. It is seated in the midst of a spacious plain, surrounded on all sides with mountains, like an amphitheatre. These mountains occasion the weather to change continually, from the extremity of heat to that of cold, which renders this city very subject to eipdemical diseases, especially in August, when they begin to be sensible of the inconveniences of autumn; and it is observable, that every day, about noon, when the heat is most excessive, there arises a whirlwind,

that raises a great dust, but does not last above an hour; however, for the rest of the day, and during the night, the weather is generally calm. From this situation, the ground about the city produces neither vines, melons, citrons, oranges and pomegranates, though they have here apples, pears and peaches, in great plenty. But the air is more temperate at the foot of the mountains. The above plain is so fertile, that it maintains above sixty villages round the city, and affords pasture for large flocks, which belong to the Turkish and Arabian shepherds.

Though Ardebil is much larger than Scamachie, it is without walls; but as each house in the city has its garden planted with fruit-trees, it affords a pleasant prospect at a distance. At the village of Scamasbu rises a small river, which soon after dividing into two branches, one passes through the city, and the other encompasses it, and afterwards reuniting their streams, they fall into the river Karasa. But this river is apt to overflow in the spring, when the snow begins to melt so fast upon the adjacent mountains, that if the inhabitants did not take care to divert the current, by making trenches in the plain, the whole city would be drowned.

Ardebil has five capital streets, planted with elm and other trees, which afford a very agreeable shade. The market-place is three hundred paces long, and one hundred broad, having shops on all sides, and each trade its peculiar quarter. Near the market is a mosque, where lies interred Iman Sade, one of the children of the twelve saints, which for a certain time serves as a sanctuary for criminals, whence they retire to the sepulchre of Sefi, their great sanctuary, which stands very near it. On the

side of the market-place is a handsome arched, square building, appointed for the sale of the most precious commodities, as gold and silver brocades, rich silks, and precious stones. This edifice has three gates, each of which leads into a street of well furnished shops, and covered over head. In these streets are also several caravanseras, or storehouses, for the Turks, Tartars, Indians, and other foreign merchants. Among the rest, our author saw there two Chinese, who sold porcelain and japanned works. This city is also well furnished with public baths, and has many metzids or mosques, the chief of which, called Metzid Adine, is built upon a hill, in the middle of the city; it has a very handsome steeple, and at its entrance is a fountain, the water of which a late chancellor of Persia caused to be conveyed thither by pipes, from a mountain at a league distance.

On Whitsun-Monday the khan sent to let the ambassadors know, that if they were desirous of seeing Shah Sefi's sepulchre, he would go with them thither; but that they must abstain from wine all that day, and that their supper should be provided out of Shah Sefi's kitchen. The ambassadors gladly agreed to this proposal; and going thither with all their retinue, were conducted into a spacious court paved with broad stones, and furnished on both sides with shops vaulted over. The gate which leads into this court is very large, and had above it a great silver chain, at which hung another, perpendicularly, in the middle. From hence the khan conducted them to another gate, which had a chain of the same kind, and here they were obliged to deliver their arms; it being a capital crime for a Persian who passes it, to have even a

knife about him. The threshold of this, as well as all the following gates, were round, and of white marble; and as the Persians are used to kiss it, they were desired not to touch it with their feet, but to step over it, with their right foot foremost. The court they now entered was as long, though not so broad as the first, but it was paved in the same manner, and provided with vaulted shops on both sides. At the upper end, to the right hand, was a large vault, hung with tapestry, and paved at the entrance with blue and green stones. In the middle stood two large brass candlesticks, with lights in them, and along the walls sat several priests, cloathed in white, singing with a loud voice, and with a most regular motion, waving all together from one side to the other. They were thence conducted through a third gate, with a silver chain over it, into a court that was less than the former, and paved with small square stones, of several colours. The gate, by which they entered into the palace of the sepulchre, was built like a great tower, adorned with silver plates and rings of the same metal. The pavement at the entrance, which opened into a large edifice, was covered with tapestry, and they were desired to pull off their shoes; which the ambassadors having, with much reluctance, complied with, they passed into a very large gallery, covered with carpets, and hung with tapestry; and then passing through another gate, covered with plates of gold, entered into a magnificent vault, four fathoms square, enlightened by a great number of gold and silver lamps, some of which were three feet in diameter. On the sides sat twelve priests, with parchment books laid before them upon desks, containing, in Arabic characters,

some chapters of the koran, which they sung, with the same waving motion, from side to side, as the others already mentioned. This vault was divided from another only by silver rails, and an ascent of three silver steps. The khan and the ambassador's interpreter having kissed these steps, conducted the ambassadors into it, who only took with them four of their retinue. This vault was much richer than any of the rest: at one end of it was a place raised about a foot from the ground, and fenced in with rails of massy gold, behind which was the sepulchre of Shah Sefi, made, not of gold, as some have endeavoured to persuade the world, but of white marble, covered with crimson velvet, and raised three feet above the ground; it was nine feet in length and four in breadth; and from the roof hung several gold and silver lamps, and on both sides were two very large candlesticks of massy gold, with wax-candles. The ambassadors were very desirous of having the golden rail unlocked; but were told that no laic, nor even the sophi himself, was permitted to enter it. On the left hand of the same apartment they discovered a vault, in which were the tomb of Shah Ismael's, that of Shah Sefi's wife, and those of some other of the queens of Persia; but they were not allowed to look into them: they, however, discovered through the meeting of the curtains, which were drawn at the entrance, that there was nothing remarkable to be seen. As they went along they were followed by a grave old man, who purified all the places through which they passed with incense.

They were then conducted through a gallery arched over, and adorned with gildings; but without any pillars, though it was as spacious as a large

baggage and artillery, but were forced to leave six of their largest pieces behind them, their carriages being broken in passing the mountains.

On the 15th they travelled through a bottom at the foot of Mount Taurus, by the Persians called Perdelis. This is a pleasant valley, stocked with wild almond, cypress and senna-trees. Soon after they came to the ascent of the mountain, which was very steep, and winded to the top, where nothing was to be seen but the most dreadful precipices, that made it necessary for them to lead their horses. To add to their misfortune, they had no sooner surmounted these difficulties, and gotten to the top, than they lost their way, which was occasioned by the mehemander's staying behind. This he afterwards excused, by alleging, that he was unable to bear the opprobrious expressions of the ambassador Brugman; but would take care that they should be supplied with all necessaries, which he punctually performed.

On the 17th they came to the village of Hatzimir, situated among inaccessible rocks, and the next day passing between two very steep hills, they came, about midnight, to a village called Kamahl. A large unfurnished house had been taken for the ambassadors at the entrance of the village; but finding it destitute of conveniences, they refused to lodge there, and having placed two of their guards at each of the avenues which led to the village, to give notice to the rest of the retinue, took up their lodgings; while those who were already arrived, prepared to follow their example. The country people, however, surprised at their unexpected appearance, were unable, so suddenly, to remove their wives and children, and denied them

entrance; but the retinue, half dead with cold and fatigue, entered the houses by force, and took up their quarters in several houses scattered up and down on three hills. They were, however, hardly in bed, when the trumpet sounding to horse, obliged them to rise, and to haste to the ambassadors' lodging, where they were informed, that twenty Persian horsemen had set upon and disarmed the guard at the avenues. A lieutenant, with twenty musketeers, was now ordered out, to clear the highways, and all the retinue were lodged as near the ambassadors as possible. Notwithstanding this, they staid there the next day, when they caused tents to be pitched; and on the 20th, setting out early in the morning, arrived at the city of Senkan, which is situated in a barren and sandy soil.

On the 21st of January they continued their journey by the light of the moon to Sulthania, where they arrived by sun-rising. This city has some magnificent structures, and a great number of steeples. It was built by sultan Mahomet Chodabende, and there still remain the noble ruins of the royal palace, or rather castle, the walls of which are built of freestone, strengthened with many quadrangular towers; but what exceeds all the rest is the mosque, which contains the sepulchre of that prince, and has three large gates, that are of the finest polished steel. The Persians confidently affirm, that the largest of these gates cannot be opened by twenty of the strongest men, unless they pronounce Beask Ali Bukscha, that is, be opened for Ali's sake; and that on pronouncing these words it may be opened by a child. The roof of this mosque, which gradually grows narrow to the top, is formed of white and blue stones, on which are figures and characters well executed.

The tomb of Chodabende, which is at the end of it, is parted from the rest by brass rails, and surrounded with a grate of polished Indian steel of most curious workmanship. Within the brass rails our author observed several books above half an ell square, written in Arabic characters, of the length of a man's finger, with black and gold lines alternately; he even procured some leaves of them, which contain a paraphrase upon the koran, called The Candle of the Heart, which are deposited in the duke of Holstein's library. The tower, belonging to the mosque, was built in the form of an octagon, encompassed with a gallery which had eight lesser towers. At the entrance of the mosque was a square fountain.

Another famous mosque in this city was founded by Shah Ismael. It has a round tower over its gate, and within the court a noble pyramid, surrounded by eight fine marble pillars. The roof is supported by a great number of pillars, with convenient galleries, and a rich pulpit in the midst: near it are the ruins of a triumphal arch of freestone, resting upon two pillars twenty fathoms high.

After staying three days they continued their journey, and came in sight of the city of Caswin or Cashan, in two days time. The daruga, or judge, who commanded there in chief, met them without the city gates, accompanied by five or six hundred persons, horse and foot; they also received the same honour from an Indian prince, who came attended by some of his own countrymen on horseback, and a considerable number of pages and footmen, who followed his chariot, which was drawn by two white oxen. The charioteer, who sat upon the chariot, the wheels of which rested and turned upon an iron bar, crooked in the middle, managed these oxen as dex-

terously as we do our horses, the pole being fastened to their horns by a cord, that was also drawn through their nostrils. Among the rest there appeared in the field fifteen young ladies, magnificently dressed, mounted on very fine horses, and, contrary to the Persian custom, they appeared barefaced; it was soon found that they were some of the most eminent courtezans of the city. They entertained the ambassadors with hautboys and a kind of bagpipes, and accompanied them to their lodgings, though they were quite at the other end of the city.

Caswin, called Arsatia by the ancients, is one of the principal cities of the province of Erak, the ancient Parthia. It is situated in a sandy plain, is about a German league in circumference, and contains 100,000 inhabitants, who speak a dialect as different from the Persian tongue, as the Dutch is from the German. The houses are built of brick. The water is conveyed through pipes from a mountain at a considerable distance. They have vaults, wherein they keep snow and ice to cool their liquors, and to which they retire to shelter themselves from the heat of the summer.

This city was the seat of the Persian kings, until Shah Tamas, or Shah Ismael, transferred it to Tauris. He built a royal palace near the market-place, in a most delightful garden, adorned with fruit trees, and spacious walks of cypress. The horse-market has, on the south side, several magnificent structures. The markets are full of shops and storehouses, where vast quantities of merchandise, and rubies, granates and turquoises, are sold very cheap. This city has also about fifty mosques, several caravanseras for the accommodation of foreign merchants, and many public baths.

6276

On the 2d of July the chief judge entertained the ambassador with an exhibition of vaulting and wrestling in the market-place. These exercises, which were performed with surprising activity, were followed by a battle between two rams, and the fighting of two birds, not much larger than common parrots, who fought with extraordinary animosity; and the show was concluded by their bringing in eight wolves, which, being fastened with ropes, were several times let out among the spectators, who stood in a circle, but were drawn back without their doing any harm.

On the 13th of June they left Caswin; the day after they passed through the village of Membre, the houses of which, at a distance, appeared like ovens, from their being vaulted at the top. Early on the 15th, they came to the village of Araseng, where they refreshed themselves with pomegranates and almonds.

On the 16th they took up their lodgings at a caravansera called Choskera, built of freestone; and on the next day came to the city of Saba, which is seated in a spacious plain, the soil of which is very barren: but though the city is of no great extent, and though the houses are very ruinous, and the walls are only of earth, yet its many towers, and some public structures, give it a fine appearance at a distance. Here, however, the most excellent fruits are found, especially pomegranates and almonds, which the gardens produce in great abundance; and at the foot of the neighbouring mountains there grows such a quantity of cotton and rice, that the inhabitants carry on a considerable trade in these articles.

On the morning of the 19th they came before

the city of Kom, where they were received by the daruga, or chief magistrate, at the head of fifty gentlemen on horseback, with timbrels, hautboys and fifes playing, while several tumblers, who made use of stilts, showed feats of activity. The city of Kom, called by Ptolemy Guriana, is situated near mount Elwend; and the ruins of its walls show it to have been formerly of a much larger extent than it is at present. A small river, which rises from two springs out of the same mountain, that unite their streams near the city, passes through a part of it, and is of a considerable advantage to the trade of the inhabitants, though it frequently occasions great damage; for three years before it had overflowed its banks by the sudden melting of the snow, and the current carried away above 1000 houses. The gardens, of which there are a great number, produce a variety of excellent fruits, and among the rest a kind of melons, of the size of an orange, of an admirable scent, and extremely luscious. There are also cucumbers two feet long, of the thickness of a man's arm, which the Persians pickle with vinegar. The grounds about the city produce all sorts of grain and cotton; but the chief trade of the city consists in sword-blades, which are accounted the best in all Persia, and in earthen-ware, that is greatly esteemed.

They left Kom on the 21st of June after sun-set, and the next day staid at a large village called Kasmabath, where they observed the houses of a whole street built in the manner of one continued arch or vault.

After travelling the two following nights, they came early to Katschan, where they halted till the daruga could get ready to receive them, which he

did without the city, at the head of a company of fifty gentlemen on horseback, with several fine led horses, covered with lion-skins; and, at their entrance into the city, they saw two black Indian oxen, of vast bulk, with bells about their necks, and plumes of feathers on their heads and cruppers.

The city of Katschan lies in 38° 51′ north latitude, and is situated in a large fertile plain. This city may be placed among those of the first rank in Persia, it being not only very populous, but famous for the concourse of foreign merchants, especially of the Indians, who have a peculiar quarter assigned them. The walls and bastions are a kind of potter's clay. Their private houses are generally well built, and their public structures, as their store-houses and caravanseras, excel what is to be seen in most other cities in Persia. The adjacent fields are fruitful in grain, wine and fruit. The greatest want of the inhabitants is fresh water; for they have none but what is muddy and ill-tasted, though they are forced to dig for it very deep. The sophi's garden, which is near the city, has a summer palace in the midst of it, that is said to have a thousand doors and windows, comprehending those that lead into the galleries and balconies; and here his majesty resides when he comes to Katschan.

The country about Katschan abounds more in venomous creatures than any other part of Persia, which has given birth to the Persian curse, "May the scorpion of Katschan pinch thee by the hand." These creatures are very black, of the length of a man's finger, and not unlike a crab-fish; but are somewhat shorter, and walk faster, with their tails always sticking up. Their bite seldom proves mortal. The remedy used against it is only a piece of copper

money, placed upon the wound, which being taken off in twenty-four hours time, they then apply a plaister of honey and vinegar.

They have also a spider, whose body is spotted, and about two inches round. This insect feeds on an herb like our wormwood, except its having larger leaves, and a stronger scent. It does not emit its poison by stinging or biting; but by letting it fall like a drop of water. It occasions an insupportable pain in the part where it fastens, and soon after the patient falls into a lethargy, from which he is scarcely to be awakened without applying one of the same spiders crushed upon the wound. If none of these are to be found, they lay the patient upon his back, and pouring as much milk down his throat as they possibly can, place him on a bier fastened with cords to a beam; then turning the bier till the cords are twisted, they suddenly whirl it back, which occasions a violent agitation, that forces the stomach to discharge itself of the milk, which appears of a greenish colour. But, at the return of the same season of the year, those who are cured in this manner commonly feel some remains of the pain as long as they live. Though this animal is so fatal, sheep are greedy after it, and feed on it without danger.

They left Katschan on the 26th of July at night, and proceeding six leagues, pitched their tents in a garden near a pleasant rivulet. The next night they proceeded through barren grounds, and early the following morning took up their lodgings in a very convenient caravansera, in the little city of Natens, where they observed two high peaked mountains, upon one of which stood a large tower, said to be built by Shah Abbas, in memory of one of his

falcons, who there killed an eagle. Mr. Mandeslo having the curiosity to take a view of it, found it built of brick, of an octagonal form, and eight paces in diameter at the bottom, but grew narrower as it approached the top, where it had many windows on all sides to let in the light. It is surprising how they were able to convey building materials to the top of so high a mountain, which cost Mr. Mandeslo three hours hard labour to ascend, and as many to come down.

CHAP. VI.

The ambassadors enter Ispahan. A quarrel between the servants of the ambassadors and those of the great mogul. Their first audience of the sophi. A description of the marriage of an Armenian, and the baptism of an infant. A Swiss bravely suffers death, rather than become a Mahometan. A curious hunting match. The manner in which the sophi's women travel. The description of Ispahan.

HAVING continued their travels for several days without meeting with any thing extraordinary, on the 3d of August they were met, at about a quarter of a league from Ispahan, by one of the chief officers of the court, at the head of three hundred horsemen, and soon after two considerable Armenian lords, who accompanied the ambassadors to their lodgings, while the streets, and even the tops of the houses were crowded with people, though the dust raised by their horses was so thick, that it was impossible to discern them at a distance. They were lodged in the quarter assigned to the chief Armenians; and were no sooner alighted than provisions were brought them from the sophi's kitchen. The dinner-cloth laid on the floor in the ambassa-

dors room was of fine silk, upon which were set thirty silver dishes full of liquid and dry preserves, and many kinds of fruit, as melons, citrons, quinces, pears, and some others not commonly known in Europe. The cloth being taken away, and another put in its room, the second course was brought in, consisting of fifty silver dishes with rice of all colours, boiled and roasted mutton, tame fowl, fish, eggs, pies, and sallads.

But scarcely had they begun to indulge the joy they had conceived on their arrival at the Persian court, than it was interrupted by a quarrel which arose between a servant belonging to their mehemander, and a domestic of an Indian ambassador sent thither by the Great Mogul, who, with a retinue of three hundred persons, lodged at a small distance from them. One of his domestics standing by while the Germans were unloading their baggage, the mehemander's servant, whose name was Wellichan, told him in jest, that it would show more good nature for him to come and help them, than to stand thus unemployed. To this returning an insolent answer, the Persian struck him with his cane, when the Indian, incensed at the affront, ran to some of his comrades, who were lying under the shade of a tree, and told them his tale, on which instantly rising and throwing stones, Wellichan was wounded in the head; but the ambassadors domestics and soldiers soon charging the Indians, killed one of them, and pursued the rest to their quarters. At this the Indians were so exasperated, that a few days after, when the Germans were removing some of their baggage, in order to send it to another lodging they had provided in the city, some of the Indians set upon a footman belonging

to their steward, killed him, cut off his head, and tied his body to a horse's tail. This no sooner came to the knowledge of the ambassadors, than they ordered their domestics, who lay scattered up and down in the suburbs, to repair to their lodgings; but before they could obey this order, the Indians possessed themselves of all the avenues leading thither, so that the men were forced to fight their way through them, in which attempt several were mortally wounded, though at last they all got to the ambassadors house, which being at the corner of a narrow street, they there galled the Indians with their firelocks. The Indians, however, retreating behind a wall, made holes in it, through which they discharged their arrows: these did great execution among the ambassadors servants and soldiers, who unwarily exposed themselves. One of the German gunners was thus killed while he was levelling a piece of cannon against them; upon which one Murray, a Scotch sergeant, being eager to revenge his death, snatched up a firelock, and fired upon the Indians with such success, that he slew five or six of them, till an arrow being shot into his breast, he plucked it out, and having killed another with his firelock, he fell down dead upon the spot. The number of the Indians increasing, it was thought proper to retreat into the outward court: but the Indians breaking into the adjacent house, so severely galled them from thence, that they were forced to get on the top of the ambassadors house, where they did great execution among the Indians, their leader being killed by Mr. Mandesle with a pistol; but as this loss rather increased than abated their fury, the ambassadors began to grow doubtful of the event, and therefore ordered

some adjoining walls, belonging to the Armenians, to be broke down, in order to secure their retreat. But they no sooner began to retire than the Indians closely pursued them; and though the Armenians, who were spectators of the combat, wished them well, they did not dare to stir in their behalf. At this instant, however, they were happily relieved; for the sophi having received notice of the tumult, immediately sent an officer with a hundred chosen men to their relief, who, being joined by some of the inhabitants, were no sooner discovered by the Indians than they dispersed; and the sophi being informed of the whole affair, would have had the Indian ambassador's hands cut off, had he not been diverted from this design by the chancellor. However, a few days after he was ordered to depart the kingdom. In this engagement, which lasted four hours, the duke of Holstein's ambassadors lost five men, and had ten wounded, while the Indians had twenty-four killed.

The day after the tumult, they resolved to change their lodgings, when the sophi of Persia not only forbid all the Indians, and even the merchants themselves, who amounted to 12,000, to appear that day in the streets, upon pain of death, but also ordered some of his guards to attend them, and allow them to fortify the weakest part of their quarters.

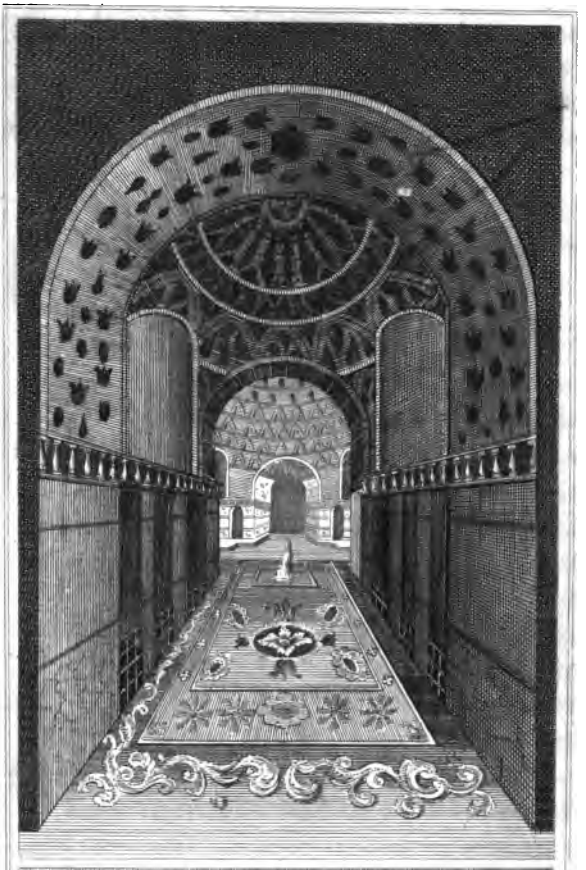
Their daily allowance, during their stay at Ispahan, was, by the sophi's order, 160 sheep, 100 fowls of all sorts, 200 eggs, and 100 batmans of wine, with as much fruit and spice as they were able to consume; but great part of it being disposed of by the ambassador Brugman for other uses, and sometimes upon his women, the people had often not

above one meal a day, and on some days the cloth was not laid at all for the servants.

The 16th of August being appointed for their audience, the ambassadors were invited to dine with the sophi, and forty very fine horses, with rich saddles and harnesses, adorned with large plates of gold, being brought for the use of the ambassadors and the gentlemen of the retinue, they proceeded in the following order: first, three on horseback, two in complete armour, richly adorned with gold flowers, the other only with breast, back, and head-pieces; these were followed by forty persons, each with a case of fine pistols in embroidered holsters. Next came four men, carrying two very rich scimeters, in rich cases, with sheaths of yellow amber, garnished with gold. After these appeared two men with staves, with fine amber heads, amber being esteemed by the Persians more than gold. Then came four men, each with a large candlestick of amber, and two others carrying a cabinet of white and yellow amber, followed by four persons carrying a cabinet of ebony, inlaid with silver, in which were gold boxes, containing several drugs, essences, and other chymical preparations, set on the outside with precious stones. Next followed three sergeants with halberts, at the head of fifteen musketeers. Then the steward at the head of the gentlemen, who marched three abreast. Next came three trumpeters with silver trumpets, followed by the guards, four abreast, immediately before the ambassadors, who had on both sides of them eight halberdiers, and were followed by two interpreters. Then came eight pages on horseback, in rich liveries, followed by the rest of the retinue three abreast. But as the Persians observe no regularity

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.



The Hall in which the Ambassadors are entertained.

Mazuire Sc.

Dublin. Published by J. Christie. 17, Rey's Lane.

in their processions, the ambassadors and their retinue were obliged to march forward, as well as they could, accompanied by a great number of Persian gentlemen on horseback, through the market-place, to the gates of the sophi's palace, where they were received by the master of the ceremonies, and conducted into the hall of justice, where they were desired to rest themselves, till the sophi should be informed of their coming.

After a stay of half an hour, word was brought by several persons of distinction, that the sophi expected them; upon which they were introduced through a large court, inclosed on both sides with a double wall, one of which being much lower than the other, was, at about six paces distance, built close to a row of tzinnar trees, and was on both sides well lined with guards, distinguished by plumes of different colours; at the end of this court was the hall appointed for their audience, which was the place where the sophi keeps his court of justice in person; for this ceremony is performed in Persia, in any place where the sophi is called, either by business or diversions. Under the trees, near this hall, were about fifty young horses, in embroidered housings, and some with rich saddles and harnesses. This hall had a partition in the nature of an alcove, with a red calico curtain before it, which, when drawn up by a silk string, rested upon the capitals of some wooden pillars, finely carved with branch-work, and gilt, as were also the walls, on which were hung some European pictures. In the middle of the hall was a fountain, in the basin of which were flowers, oranges, apples, and other fruits, swimming upon the water; and round its sides a great number of flaggons, and

other vessels of gold and silver. The whole floor of the hall was covered with a carpet, the groundwork of which was also of gold and silver.

The sophi, who was about twenty-seven years of age, sat upon a satin cushion, laid on a carpet behind the fountain, with his back to the wall. He had a graceful aspect, and, like most of the Persians, had a Roman nose. His habit, which was of brocade, was not distinguished from that of the rest, only he had a plume of heron feathers on his head, fastened with a very fine bracelet of diamonds. Over the upper garment hung two sable skins down from his neck, which were also worn by some Persian lords; the scimeter he wore by his side was set with precious stones, and behind him lay his bow and arrows. On his right hand twenty pages attended, who were the sons of his khans, among whom were some eunuchs; one of the handsomest of them was employed in fanning the sophi. At the head of these pages stood the meheter, or groom of the chamber, who was their governor. Before the sophi stood the elschick-agasi-baschi, or lord-chamberlain, with a staff covered with gold, on the top of which was a knob of the same metal. On his left side sat the ethomad-dowlet, or chancellor, and next to him the khans and other lords. At the entrance of the hall, on the left hand, were placed an Arabian ambassador, and the Moscovite envoy, and below them the king's musicians.

The ambassadors were met at the door of the hall by several persons of great distinction, who took them under the arms, and held them so fast, that they had not the use of them. This ceremony, which is looked upon as as a peculiar honour, was probably first introduced by the Persians and Turks,

to secure their sovereigns from any attempts from the ambassadors of foreign princes. As they approached the sophi they made a low bow, which he returned with a smiling countenance, and a small inclination of his head. They were then desired to sit down upon low seats, placed for them near the lords: fifteen of their retinue were placed a little more to the left, upon the ground, while the pages and the rest of the train were entertained in a court below, with thirteen women dancers richly dressed, the handsomest courtezans of Ispahan, who, besides their annual tribute, are obliged to attend the court whenever they are called for.

The ambassadors having rested a short time, the lord-chamberlain asked them, in the sophi's name, by whom they were sent, and the occasion of their embassy; when rising, they approached the sophi to deliver their credentials, with a short compliment, according to the custom of the Persians, who being no admirers of set speeches, would have all who approach their sovereign, show their reverence by the fewness of their words. The chancellor, receiving the credentials, desired the ambassadors to return to their seats, and the secretary of state let them know, that the shah intended to have their credentials translated, and, as soon as that was done, would give them a second audience. The presents were then brought in, and carried close by the sophi into an adjacent room. Those from the ambassador Mr. Crusius, were an arquebuss, stocked with ebony, which cocked itself; a vessel of rock crystal, edged with gold, and adorned with turquoises and rubies; a cabinet of amber, and a small striking clock. Those of Mr. Brugman were, a brass gilt candlestick with thirty branches, having

a striking watch within the body; a pair of very fine pistols gilt, with very rich holsters; a watch in a rich case; a bracelet of diamonds and rubies; and a writing, by which the two pieces of cannon left at Ardebil were presented to the sophi.

Soon after, a calico cloth being spread over the floor, was covered with gold basons, filled with fruit and preserves, and three hundred gold flaggons, were disposed over the hall, by way of ornament. All this plate was smooth, except the flaggons, and the cup out of which the sophi himself drank, which were set with rubies and turquoises. They had also plenty of the best Schiras wine, and were entertained by a juggler, who performed sleight-of-hand with astonishing dexterity. About an hour after, the cloth being removed, and another of gold brocade laid in its place, the meat was brought in by ten men in large golden vessels, and the carver having placed himself on the floor in the midst of them, served the meat into lesser dishes, with rice of all colours, upon which he put mutton roasted and boiled, tame and wild fowl, &c. and sometimes five or six sorts in a dish; the sophi being served first, then the ambassadors, the lords, and all who were present. During this entertainment, a profound silence was observed. After the dinner had lasted about an hour and a half, the cloth was taken away, and water being brought to wash their hands, the lord chamberlain returned thanks with a loud voice in the following manner: "Make us thankful for this repast; prosper the sophi's undertakings, and give to his followers and servants true courage. This we pray thee, O God." To which the rest answered, Alla, Alla, and without speaking a word more, left the room; when

the ambassador's mehemander telling them they might withdraw as soon as they pleased, they paid their reverence to the sophi, and retired.

On the 24th the ambassadors had their first private audience, and on the 28th they were invited by the Augustine friars to the festival of St. Augustine, their patron, which was to be celebrated the next day: and as Christians of the most different opinions live among the Mahometans like brethren, the Moscovite envoy, an Armenian bishop, and several English merchants, were also to be present. There were no more than six monks, all of whom were Spaniards, in the whole monastery, which was a neat edifice, that had a church with two steeples, and a handsome garden belonging to it. The ambassadors being received at the outer gate of the convent, were conducted by the friars into the church, where mass was immediately begun, and their musicians, with the assistance of one of the monks, who played upon the organ, formed a good concert. Mass being over, they were conducted into the garden, near a fountain, which stood under a large tree, whose branches being full of leaves, and twisted within one another, afforded a very agreeable shade. About noon they were carried into the hall, where they were entertained with fruit in porcelain dishes, and every one had his dish of meat set before him, according to the Persian fashion, after which they spent the remaining part of the day under the same tree.

On the first of September the governor of Armenia, accompanied by two of his brothers, paid the ambassadors a visit, in order to contract an intimate acquaintance with them; and in return for the civilities they received, they, on the 18th, in-

vited the ambassadors, with their whole retinue, who went on horseback, and were received by Seferas Beg, governor of Armenia, at the Armenian church in the suburbs, where the patriarch of the place was saying the service, in a cope of cloth of silver, with gold flowers set with pearls, having on his head a mitre, adorned in the same manner. The walls of the church were hung with several pictures, and the floor covered with rich carpets. The service being over, they went to the governor's palace, where, being conducted through a large gallery into a garden, and from thence into an open hall, they were entertained after the Persian manner, with fruits and preserves, and a most delicious liquor, not unlike rosa solis, but incomparably more rich. When the cloth of silver and gold brocade, upon which this was served, was removed, and another of calico was laid in its place, the meat was served up in silver dishes, and among the rest some pork, and several other meats abhorred by the Persians.

They had not long sat at table, before they were conducted through a noble apartment into another hall, whence they had a very agreeable prospect into a garden. The floor was covered with rich carpets, on which were laid cushions of flowered satin, the ground work of which was gold and silver. Round a white marble bason, that belonged to a fountain in the centre of the hall, stood a number of flaggons, and bottles filled with wine; but what they thought most worthy of observation, were pictures on the walls, representing the dresses of women of most nations in the world. While they were eating the delicious fruits and preserves that were brought in, they were diverted with music and dancing; in

the first of which Elias Beg, second brother to the governor, excelled the rest; for he not only gave them several tunes on the Persian lute, but accompanied this music with striking two little sticks against several porcelain cups filled with water, and made them keep time with the lute. Meanwhile Seferas Beg did not forget to make the whole company drink the sophi's health, in crystal glasses full of wine.

Night approaching, the ambassadors took leave of the governor, who, under the pretence of conducting them to the gate, brought them unexpectedly into the gallery on the other side of the garden, where they found a fresh entertainment of meat, fish, pies, fruit and preserves; and the hall, as well as the garden, was illuminated with a vast number of lamps and torches. But as they had been eating almost all the day, they sat down only out of complaisance, considering this collation rather as an effect of their host's generosity and magnificence, than as done with an intention to add to their former entertainment, which was, in all respects, one of the most agreeable they had ever met with, and even exceeded that of the sophi's.

On the 19th of September, the ambassadors had a second private audience of the sophi, which did not last above half an hour, after which they dined at court, as is usual upon such occasions; when, by the sophi's desire, their music, which consisted of a bass-viol, a tenor, and a violin, played before him for half an hour; on which he let them know that he did not dislike the music, but he thought his own as good.

On the 25th of September, the ambassadors and their whole retinue were most magnificently enter-

tained by the English, in the bazar near the market-place, a large structure that has a very fine garden. They were first treated with fruits and preserves, set upon the floor, according to the Persian fashion; from whence they were led into a spacious hall, where they found a table furnished with a variety of provisions, dressed in the English way, and did not forget to drink the healths of most of the kings and princes of Europe.

Dinner being over, they were conducted into another hall, that had a fine prospect into the garden, where they not only found another collation of fruit and preserves, but had the diversion of six Indian dancing-women, some of whom brought their husbands along with them, who sometimes joined in the dance. Their complexion was of an olive colour: but they had good features, a soft skin, and were well shaped. About their necks they wore necklaces of pearls and gold, others of silver, and they had all rings on their fingers, and one upon the thumb; which, instead of a seal, had a piece of steel of the bigness of a crown-piece, so finely polished, that it served instead of a looking-glass. They were all clothed in a kind of stuff, so very thin, that any part of their bodies might be seen through it, except those which were covered with drawers. Some had caps, other tiffany dresses on their heads, and some wore silk scarves, with gold and silver flowers, which coming round their shoulders, hung down on both sides to the ground. Some were barefooted, and others wore shoes of a very odd make. They had all, just above the instep, a string with bells, by which they showed the exactness of their motions, while they, at the same time, played with their castagnets with the utmost dexterity. Their

music consisted of tabors, pipes and Indian timbrels; which last are about two feet long, in the shape of a barrel, and hanging about their necks, they play upon them with their fingers. The motions of these Indian women, especially with their hands and feet, were most surprising; and in the mean time they, with the most graceful and careless air, addressed themselves to some of the spectators.

On the first of October the ambassadors entertained the Moscovite envoy, and three Armenian lords, the principal English and French merchants, the Spanish Austin friars, and some Indian carmelites, with forty dishes in three courses, after the German fashion. The governor of Armenia was so pleased with some of the German pastes, that he spoke of them to the sophi, who was so desirous to see them, their cook was ordered to make some, which being presented to his majesty, he received them very obligingly, and presented them to the ladies at court, who were extremely delighted with them. The feast was concluded with the diversion of running at the ring, at which Mr. Mandeslo got the first, and the ambassador Brugman got the second prize.

The next day the prior of the Austin friars coming to represent to our author, the secretary of the embassy, the debaucheries of some of the ambassadors' retinue, and especially of the ambassador Brugman; he went to that ambassador, in order to complain of the debaucheries of some of his people, and to desire that some reformation might be introduced among them; but he no sooner entered the room, than he found Mr. Brugman with an Armenian woman; and that ambassador, imagining that he came with a design to surprise him, was so

incensed, that he swore he would be revenged. The secretary, who well knew his temper, immediately retired to the convent of the Augustines, with a design of leaving the embassy, and of returning, by way of Babylon and Aleppo, to Germany; but the ambassador Brugman being informed of his resolution, sent to let him know, that he would have him murdered by the way; and the secretary being sensible that this might be easily effected, thought it his safest way to endeavour after a reconciliation, which was at last produced by the mediation of the prior of the Augustines.

Some days after, as the author was going to the suburbs of Tzalfa, he saw an Armenian marching in procession to the church, in order to be married. In the front was the music, after which went a boy about twelve years of age, with a wax candle in his hand, followed by the bridegroom on horseback, who had two men riding on each side of him, and was followed by four men richly dressed; after whom were carried two dishes of meat, two pitchers of wine, and two dishes of apples, all of which were set before the bridegroom and his attendants, as soon as they came to the church; but the bridegroom did not touch them, and after the rest had eat a little, what was left was saved for the priest, except the wine, which was all drank; our author being obliged by the bridegroom, who observed him, to take a share. By this time the bride, with a young maid on her right hand, and on her left a married woman, with their faces covered with a veil of thin lawn, entered the church; and the priest conducting the young people to the altar, blessed them, and held a wooden cross over them, while they joined hands, and the bride laid her hand on

the bridegroom's breast. After mutual promises of fidelity, the priest gave them the communion. The bread of the eucharist, among the Armenians, is not leavened, as in the Moscovite, and other Greek churches; but is an unleavened paste, of the size and thickness of a crown piece. During the communion they sung and played on a kind of large cymbals; it being the constant practice of the Armenians, never to communicate without music. After the communion rose-water was cast upon the new married couple, and all present; and a scarf being tied about the bride's right hand, the bridegroom took hold of it, and drew her after him to the church door, from whence they all went on horseback to the place where the wedding feast was prepared, which always lasts three days, during which the new married couple are not permitted to cohabit together.

Our author afterwards passing along heard a noise in another Armenian church, made by striking a stick upon a board, which is used instead of bells, they not being permitted in Persia; when, going in, he found it to be a christening, but saw nobody in the church besides the priest, the clerk, an aged woman, who brought the child, and a young man, who was to be godfather. The priest, after some prayers, put several questions to the godfather, after which the latter carried the child to the old woman to unswathe it; which done, they went into the sacristy, and going up to the font, which was placed within the wall like a trough, and was half an ell and a quarter broad, the priest consecrated the water, put into it some consecrated oil, and then putting the child naked into the font, baptized him in the name of the Father, the Son and the

Holy Ghost, by thrice pouring water upon his head, and afterwards all over his body, making the sign of the cross in the forehead with consecrated oil. The Armenians do not commonly christen their infants till they are eight days old, unless they are in danger of dying: it being their opinion, that infants who die before baptism cannot be saved; for which reason, they do not allow them to be buried in the church-yard, nor can any in more advanced life be interred there, who have not communicated at least once a year.

On the 3d of October happened an affair, which was attended with melancholy consequences: John Rudolph Stadler, a native of Zurich in Swisserland, was a very ingenious clock-maker, in the service of the sophi: he was about thirty-eight years of age, and had married an Armenian woman, the sister of the ambassador Brugman's favourite mistress; and, by that ambassador's intercession, had, with great difficulty, obtained leave to return into his own country. In the meanwhile a thief breaking into his house, the clock-maker caught him, and after severely beating him, turned him out of doors; which he had no sooner done, than repenting that he had used him no worse, he ran after him, and shot him dead with a pistol. The relations of the deceased immediately complained to the mufti, of the murder committed by an infidel upon one of the faithful, who thereupon caused the clock-maker to be seized the next morning as he was going to court, and put into the palank, a wooden instrument which covers the neck and arms. The ambassadors left no stone unturned to procure his release; but the authority and zeal of the mufti prevailing, he was condemned to die, unless he

would deserve the king's pardon by turning Mahometan. Many of the Persian lords, who esteemed him for his art, endeavoured to persuade him to save his life, by the hopes of great advantages; but this proving ineffectual, he was twice carried to the market-place, to try whether the terror of death would not induce him to alter his sentiments, but in vain, he positively declaring, that nothing should make him violate his religion. The Augustine and Carmelite friars also strove to persuade him to die in the Romish faith, which he also refused, protesting that he would die in the reformed religion, which he accordingly did; for being delivered up to the relations of the deceased, the first who struck at him with his scimeter, missed; the second struck into the palank, but the third severed his head from the body, which lay all day exposed at the place of execution, till in the evening, at the intercession of Mr. Brugman, it was brought to the ambassador's quarters, in order to be interred the next day. But the sophi happening to invite the ambassadors to a hunting match, the interment could not be performed till the 22d, when the governor of Armenia, the Moscovite envoy, and several other Christians, were present at the funeral.

The hunting match beginning on the 17th, horses and camels were brought early in the morning to the ambassador's quarters, by their mehemander, who conducted them to a spacious plain, where the sophi soon after appeared, attended by 300 persons of quality, mounted on a very fine horse; and at his first seeing the ambassadors, he saluted them with great condescension. He was dressed in a silver brocade vest; his turban adorned with herons feathers; and he was followed by four led horses, with

rich saddles, harnesses and cloths embroidered with gold and precious stones, and close to him was an astrologer, who was continually making his observotions. The morning was spent in fowling, and about noon they were entertained by the sophi with a dinner; after which lodgings were assigned them by the mehemander, in a neighbouring village, where they were visited by some of the Persian lords; but the sophi immediately ordered them to take up their lodging in a house adjoining to that where he himself was, and supper was brought them in gold dishes out of the sophi's kitchen.

Early the next morning, the ambassadors went with the sophi to hunt cranes, in which sport they were so successful, that near 800 were taken. In the evening they went to hunt the duck and wild goose, but no birds appearing, they spent the time in drinking several bottles with the sophi.

On the 19th, abundance of hawks and three leopards, bred to hunting, were brought; but having for some time beat the bushes to no purpose, they went to one of the royal parks, which was divided into three partitions. In the first were kept harts, goats, deer, hares and foxes; in the second, a kind of deer, called ahues; and in the third, wild asses. The leopards being let in among the ahues, soon dispatched each of them one. The next diversion was with the wild asses, thirty-two of which were forced into an inclosure, in which a small amphitheatre was erected. At these his majesty discharged some shot, and wounded others with his arrows; after which, the ambassadors and the Persian lords, following his example, the sides of these beasts were soon full of arrows, which afforded a cruel kind of sport to the spectators, especially on their running

so close to each other, as to force the arrows deeper into their sides, which filling them with rage against their companions, they ran at each other with great fierceness. At last these, and thirty more, that were let in, were knocked down, in order to be sent to the sophi's kitchen; the flesh of wild asses being in high esteem among the Persians.

By this time dinner was brought up, when Brugman presented the sophi with the duke of Holstein's picture in a box set with diamonds, and also with a steel mirror, polished on both sides, and embellished with several figures. After dinner the ambassadors retired to take their afternoon's nap, but they were scarcely seated, when the sophi sent them ten ahues, and a fine stag, with word that he was again on horseback. They therefore followed his example, and riding in search of him, found him employed in hawking. But he no sooner got in sight of them, than he left that sport, and retired to a large walk, at the end of which was a decoy for wild ducks; but instead of employing themselves in that diversion, they soon fell to drinking. Mr. Mandeslo had the honour of filling the sophi a glass of wine, and afterwards of kissing his knee; his majesty, at the same time, presented him with an apple, which was considered a particular mark of kindness. Meanwhile Haly Beg, the deputy steward of the household, got so drunk, that his majesty sent a person to bid him withdraw, and this not succeeding, he ordered another to drag him away, and to set him on horseback. But when they were going to execute his majesty's commands, Haly Beg became so outrageous, as to abuse and strike those who endeavoured to force him away; which the sophi perceiving, went to persuade him, but finding himself not

much better treated than the rest, laid his hand upon his scimeter, and threatened to cut off his head; which put the steward into such a fright, that he immediately became sober, and considering that there was no jesting with his majesty when once provoked, he mounted his horse as nimbly as if he had not tasted a drop of wine, which set the sophi a laughing, and he returned in a very merry humour to the ambassadors, but withdrew soon after, and they returned to their lodgings.

On the 20th the ambassadors dined with the sophi in his summer-house; in the afternoon they took a turn in the garden, and in their way caught a white heron.

On the 21st, being sent for to go with the sophi to catch pigeons, they were conducted to the top of a very high tower, within which were 1000 nests; and the whole company being placed on the outside, and the ambassadors trumpets commanded to sound, the pigeons, which flew through the holes in vast numbers, were most of them killed by the sophi and the rest of the company. This put an end to their diversion; but in their return to the city, the sophi took them into one of his gardens called Tzarbach, remarkable for its beauty, where being entertained with another magnificent treat, they returned to their lodgings.

Within a few days after, proclamation was made by the cryer of the city, that the sophi, being to go abroad that way with the ladies of the court, no person should presume to appear that day in the streets. Whenever the sophi's wives or concubines make an excursion, they are carried upon camels in a kind of covered chests, notwithstanding which no one is allowed to appear in the streets, or within

a musket-shot of the field where they take their diversion, under pain of death, because these ladies appear in the field on horseback with hawks in their hands, and also make use of bows and arrows, for which reason none but the sophi and the eunuchs must appear among them; even the lords, who attend the sophi always, leave the town half an hour before the ladies; and, while they are diverting themselves, are obliged to spend their time in hunting, at the distance of half a league.

On the 19th of November the lord chancellor invited the ambassadors to a magnificent entertainment, in a most sumptuous hall, at the entrance of which was a very handsome fountain, and opposite the door several pictures of women, in different dresses, copied after some European originals, below which the walls on all sides were covered with looking-glasses of various sizes. All their meat was served in plate, besides which they had the king's music, and the diversion of the dancing-women, who, not behaving with the same reserve as before the sophi, showed several instances of dexterity. Among the rest, one of them placed a porcelain vessel, two feet high, in the midst of the hall, and in turning about took it up between her legs with such a sleight, that no person could perceive she had any thing there; and, after continuing the dance with the same air, returned it with equal dexterity to the place whence she had taken it, without making one false step.

It must be confessed, that the Persians, whenever they entertain their friends, omit nothing which they imagine may contribute to their diversion; and, as they are extremely fond of women, these never fail to be introduced at their feasts. Ardebil

is the only place throughout all Persia where these dancing-women are not tolerated, Shah Abbas having banished them from thence, on account of the sanctity of the place.

After dinner the music and dancing-women being ordered to withdraw, the ambassadors had a private conference with the chancellor in his garden, relative to the negociation, which was afterwards repeated.

On the 2d of December the sophi sent each of the ambassadors a present of a horse, with saddles and bridles adorned with large gold plates and buckles; also two Persian garments, with a turban and girdle of gold brocade; 205 pieces of fifteen sorts of silk, &c.; and 200 tumains in money, amounting to 1000 pistoles, to be divided between them, towards their expences in their return home. To each of the five principal persons of the retinue he gave a satin vest, and another of taffety with gold and silver flowers, and to each of the other gentlemen a vest of tabby flowered with gold.

On the 3d of December the ambassadors were invited once more to dine with the sophi, when, according to the custom of the country, they wore the best of the garments, presented by his majesty, over their other clothes. They were entertained with the same ceremonies as before, after which the chamberlain conducted the ambassadors to take their leave of the sophi, who delivered to them, with his own hand, his answer to the duke of Holstein's letter, promising, in return, to send him a most solemn embassy. The ambassadors then expressed their acknowledgments for the honours and noble treatment they had received during their abode in his kingdom.

The following day the Moscovite envoy obtained his dismissal, in order to return with them into Moscovy; and a day or two after several of the Persian lords sent their presents to the ambassadors, which consisted of fine horses, mules, and rich silks.

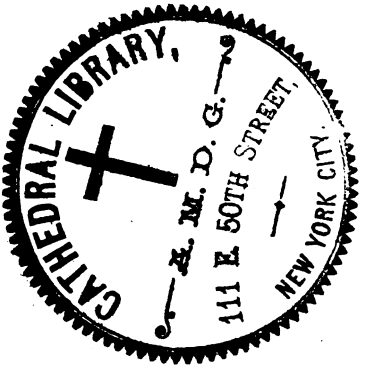
Ispahan, the capital of the province of Erak and of all Persia, is situated in 32° 30′ north latitude, and in 50° east longitude, in a fine plain, almost surrounded with mountains at a few leagues distance. It is of an oval form, and without reckoning the suburbs, is twelve miles in circumference. It has also twelve gates, nine of which are only open, and is computed to have 18,000 houses, and 500,000 inhabitants. The fortifications are mostly of earth, and very inconsiderable; and though the bastions are of brick, they are so miserably flanked, that they are but a slender defence: besides the ditch is so ruined, that a man may, at any time, pass over it dry-shod. It is the chief trading place of all Persia, and is frequented by all the Asiatic nations, particularly by the Indians, whose commodities are extremely valuable; for, not to mention the musk and ambergris, they sell great quantities of pearls and diamonds. Besides these there are considerable numbers of Tartars of different nations, Turks, Jews, Armenians, Georgians, English, Dutch, and French.

The Persians are at a greater expence in their gardens than in their houses, though the former are very different from those in most parts of Europe; for, as nature overspreads their fields with tulips, and a great variety of the finest flowers, so these are not placed in their gardens, but they apply themselves, with all care, to the cultivation of the most excellent fruit-trees, that nature, assisted by

art, can produce in so happy a climate. They are also very curious in their walks, which are planted on both sides with tzinnar-trees, a kind of poplar, unknown in Europe. This tree grows to the height of a pine; the leaves are broad, resembling those of the vine, and it bears a fruit that has some resemblance to the chesnut, though it has no kernel. The wood is a dark brown, and so finely veined, that when rubbed it appears more beautiful than any thing made of the root of the finest walnut-trees; of this wood the Persians commonly make their doors and window-shutters. Fountains are the chief ornament of their gardens. The sophi's garden, called Tzarbach, near the city, is one of the finest in the world, it being an exact square, half a league every way. It is divided by the river Senderuth into a cross, which forms four different gardens; at the south end is a mount, planted with several walks, on both sides of which are steep precipices, made by cutting the rock into several channels, through which the river falls from the top into basons made for that purpose. These cascades are about three feet broad, and so steep, that the water is forced with great violence into the bason. Every walk has its peculiar bason of white marble, where the water spouts forth in various figures. These streams all meet in a large bason in the centre of the garden, where a column of water is thrown to the height of forty feet. At the four corners of the bason are four large pavilions, the apartments of which are adorned with carved work gilt. There are walks from each of these pavilions to the other, planted with tzinnar-trees. There are here likewise innumerable fruit-trees of all sorts, which Shah Abbas caused to be brought thither from Turkey

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.



A View of the great Meidan or Market before the Shah's Palace at Ispahan.

and India. Among the rest, our author saw a kind of grapes, as large as a man's thumb, without any stones, the pulp of which was firm, and of a most delicious taste. Ten master-gardeners are appointed to look after this garden, each of whom has ten other gardeners under him; and they are permitted to admit any person into the garden for four kasbekies, or two pence a piece, and to eat what fruit they please, but they must carry none away.

Most of the Persian lords and rich merchants have a kind of summer-house or galleries in their gardens, inclosed by a row of pillars, on the four corners of which are as many rooms, where they take the benefit of the air and breezes. These summer-houses, both in building and furniture, frequently exceed their ordinary dwelling-houses. Indeed, though persons of quality have very magnificent furniture, the houses in which they usually reside make but an indifferent appearance, being built only of earth, or bricks baked in the sun. These structures are generally square, and commonly four stories high, including the ground-room; but instead of glass, in winter they cover their windows, which are made with lattices, with oiled-paper.

The meidan, or great market-place, is very large, being 700 feet long, and 250 broad. The houses round it are all of brick, of an equal height, and the shops vaulted. The side towards the royal palace contains the goldsmiths, lapidaries and druggists, opposite to which are the woollen-drapers, mercers, and those who sell calicoes, with the taverns and eating-houses. Round the market-place are planted trees, not unlike box, though they grow somewhat higher; they are always green, and being

so cut, that the shops appear between them, add greatly to the beauty of the place; but one of the chief ornaments, as well as conveniences of the market-place is, a rivulet carried at the foot of these trees through a channel of freestone, raised two feet from the ground, and which is discharged into two large basons, and from thence conveyed by pipes to other parts of the city. At the end of a great vaulted-gallery are two balconies opposite to each other, and covered over head, where the city music plays every night at sun-set, or whenever the sophi passes through the market-place; a custom observed in all the cities in Persia that are the residence of a khan.

Before the royal palace are several pieces of cannon without carriages, and over the outer gate is a large square structure, which has windows on all sides. The chief apartments belonging to the palace are a hall, where the sophi treats the principal persons of the court on new-year's-day; and the great hall of justice, where appeals are brought before the sophi, who presides there in person, and there frequently gives audience to foreign ambassadors; but this hall, with the spacious court before it, has been already described. These, and several other halls, have many chambers, closets, galleries, and apartments belonging to them, fit for the entertainment of so great a court, and the sophi's wives and numerous concubines, who all live in the same palace; and, what is more extraordinary, there is not any considerable apartment but has its peculiar garden. There also belongs to the palace, as we have already observed, a place of refuge for all unfortunate persons, whether criminals or debtors.

On the outside of the royal palace is the citadel,

which is fortified with a rampart and several bastions of earth. It is commanded by a governor, who has a strong garrison under him for the defence of the place, and the sophi's treasury, armory, and stores of ammunition, though it has no other artillery but field-pieces.

On the south side of the great market is a fine mosque, which has a large court before it, in which is a very handsome fountain. This mosque is a vast structure; the walls are of white polished marble, the pieces of which are so artfully cemented, that it is impossible to see where they are joined. The city also contains many other mosques, remarkable for their magnificence.

Opposite to the great mosque stand the tippling houses, among which the taverns are esteemed most infamous. Near these are the places where they drink tea, which are in great repute; and here persons in good circumstances spend their time in playing at chess. The coffee-houses, which are separate from these, are frequented by those who love tobacco and coffee: these are also the places where the poets and historians are constantly to be met with, who commonly sit on a high chair, in the middle of the room, where they entertain the company with their satirical stories.

In the centre of the great market-place stands a high pole, on the top of which they sometimes put a melon, an apple, or a trencher, with money upon it, at which they shoot on horseback, in full gallop; the sophi himself, and sometimes the lords of the court, assist at this sport, when great sums are laid; the money that falls from the trencher belongs to the sophi's footmen, and he that obtains the prize is obliged to give an entertainment to the whole

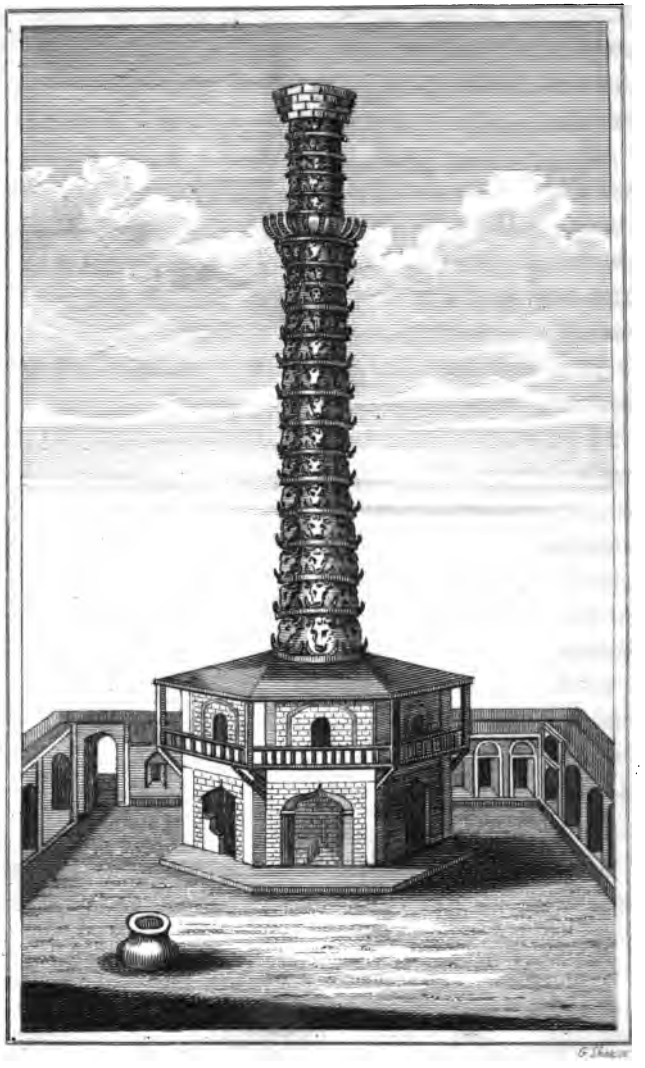
company, and even to his majesty himself, if he has shot among them. They have another game, like cricket, at which they likewise play on horseback, striking the ball when riding in full career. They likewise frequently exercise themselves at throwing the javelin. As the Persians are extremely curious in their horses, they have frequent races run from from one pillar to another in the market-place; and when his majesty is disposed to be a spectator, he places himself in a kind of wooden hut, which, being set on four wheels, may be removed at pleasure.

On turning out of the meidan, or great market-place, to the right, you come to the bazar, or second market-place, in the midst of which is an open cloister, which contains the principal shops, where the richest stuffs and commodities of the kingdom are sold. This market-place is divided into several streets, which are covered over head, and contain a great number of shops, well stored with all sorts of commodities, sold at reasonable rates, every thing being cheap at Ispahan, except fuel and meat, the country round about it being destitute of forests and meadows. For the convenience of trade, there are also at Ispahan, many caravanseras, and square storehouses, surrounded with high walls; they are commonly three stories high, and, besides the vaults below, have all manner of conveniences, as halls, chambers and galleries.

Among the rest of the public structures, the two convents belonging to the Spanish and Italian friars ought not to be omitted; one is the convent of the Augustine friars, already described; and the other, that of the Carmelites, who, when our author was there, amounted to no more than ten in number, though the edifice might vie with any in Europe

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.



The Tower of Horns at Ispahan.

Dublin. Published by J. Christie, 17 Ross Lane.

belonging to that order. Three French Capuchins were also at this time laying the foundation of a convent, in a place they had purchased for that purpose.

Between this and the convent of the Carmelites are the king's stables, where the most remarkable thing is a high tower, built entirely of earth, and the horns of ahues and stags; the origin of which is said to be Shah Tamas's killing, in one hunting match, two thousand of these animals, in memory of which he caused this tower to be erected, and their horns to be employed in the building.

The city of Ispahan is surrounded on all sides with large suburbs, the chief of which is inhabited by Armenian Christians, most of whom are merchants. This quarter contains twelve churches and about three thousand houses, which are not inferior to the best in the city. Another of the suburbs is inhabited by Georgian Christians, most of whom are rich merchants as well as the Armenians; and on the west end of the city are the suburbs, inhabited by the Gebers, said to be the descendants of the ancient Persians.*

CHAP. VII.

Departure of the ambassadors from Ispahan. A description of the pass of Pylas, and a view of the province of Ghilan. They arrive at Scamachie. A description of Derbent, and of the Daghestan Tartars. They arrive at the town of Andre; enter Circassia; arrive at Terki; proceed through a desolate forest to Astrachan; arrive at Moscow, and return to Gottorp.

THE ambassadors left Ispahan on the 21st of December, in the evening, and after being treated

* See an account of these people in Mr. Hanway's Travels into Persia.

with a collation, at the distance of a league from the city, proceeded that night three leagues to the village of Reschman, where they staid all the following day, when the Augustine friars at Ispahan, some French merchants, and Mr. Mandeslo, who had obtained permission from the duke of Holstein to travel into the Indies, took their leave of them; and the latter informed them, that the sophi's ambasador to Holstein was to follow them in a few days, and to carry with him presents for the duke to the value of 25,000 crowns.

They proceeded on their journey without any accident till the 6th of January, 1638, but had scarce left the city of Kom, when the ambassador Brugman having a fall from his horse, put his right arm out of joint, which obliged them to stay all the next day at Seba; but they continued their journey on the 8th. They now found the ground covered half a foot deep with snow, which continued till they reached the mountains of Ghilan.

On the 9th they met with an ambassador from the king of Poland to the sophi, whose train consisted only of twenty-five persons, he having been obliged by the Moscovites to send back the greatest part of his retinue from Smolensko. This ambassador delivered to them a letter from an Armenian bishop they had seen at Astracan, in which they were informed, that a considerable quantity of provisions were laid up in that city for their use. They intended to have lain that night at the village of Araseng, and sent a messenger to prepare their lodgings; but the inhabitants, remembering that the ambassador Brugman had affronted the judge of the village, by throwing in his face both the water and bason, which that magistrate

had brought to Brugman to wash his hands, they refused them entrance; and the villages of Dowlen, Abath and Ketxisan, also following their example, they were forced to proceed three leagues farther, through slippery ways, to the village of Kulluskur; by which their people were forced to travel on foot, and some were left behind, who were sent for after their arrival the next day at Caswin, where they were obliged to stay nine days, till fresh cattle could be provided for their journey.

On the 20th of January they left Caswin, and on the 22d passed seven leagues over mountains of different colours, as yellow, red, green and blue, which afforded a very delightful prospect. Through these mountains runs a brook, that has such a variety of turnings and windings, that they crossed it above thirty times that day; and in the evening passed the river Senderuth, over a bridge that joins two mountains, between which it runs, and at night lodged in a village situated in a pleasant valley.

The next day they proceeded two leagues by the side of a forest of olive-trees, at the extremity of which they found themselves at a place, famous in antiquity under the name of Fauces Hyrcaniæ, but in the times of Alexander the Great, and among the modern Persians, known by that of Pylas. It is a very narrow pass into the province of Ghilan, where two rapid rivers joining, fall with a most dreadful noise from the rocks. The river formed by this confluence is called Isparuth; but before their junction the largest was named Kisilosein, which, running under a stone bridge, passes into the province of Ghilan, and by two channels discharges itself into the Caspian Sea. This bridge has six large arches, each of which contains a good room

and kitchen, besides other conveniences; so that these arches are sufficient to lodge a whole caravan.

No sooner had they passed the bridge, than the road dividing in two, one leads through a fine champaign country to Ardebil, and the other extends straight through the province of Ghilan, over the most dreadful precipices; it being cut out of the rock, and so steep and narrow, that it scarcely affords a passage for one loaded horse or camel; nay, in some places they have been forced to make up the defects of the rock with mason's work. The cliffs reach on the left hand up to the very clouds, while on the other side nothing is to be seen but the most dreadful precipices, rendered more terrible by the noise of the river, which runs with great violence at the bottom. The Persians, as well as the ambassadors retinue, were so astonished at the sight, that they were glad to lead their horses, and even that but loosely, for fear that if they should slip, they would draw their masters after them. The horses, however, proceeded very carefully, and with seeming fear; but the camels made surer steps, putting their feet into places cut in the rock for that purpose.

At the top of the mountain they found a custom-house, the receiver of which made them a present of some fruits. They were now not a little astonished at discovering, that, though they had scarcely got out of the snow on the other side, the valleys were here full of blossoms; and they were more and more convinced of the surprising difference, when they found the descent of the same mountain, the ascent to which had appeared so dreadful, and attended with such trouble and fatigue, change into the most delightful prospect, and attended with all

imaginable ease; the roads passing through groves of olives, cypress, box, citron, and orange-trees; with these, that side of the mountain was entirely covered, and of the last they found such plenty, that they flung oranges at one another for diversion: but what even appeared still more surprising was, that the air, which had sufficiently pinched them the same morning, was before night very hot. They took up their quarters at the village of Pyle-Rubar, upon the banks of the river Isparuth, at the foot of the mountain. The houses were indeed very small, but the inconveniences they suffered in their lodgings were in some measure recompensed by the vast number of gardens, and fruit-trees, planted all around them.

It must be confessed that the province of Ghilan is a terrestrial paradise, abounding in silk, oil, wine, rice, tobacco, and a vast variety of fruit, and particularly vines, which spread their branches up the trees. The Caspian Sea, as well as the rivers, afford the inhabitants a prodigious quantity of fish, their pasture grounds feed vast herds of cattle, and their forests furnish them with venison and wild-fowl. This province stretches along the Caspian Sea, in the form of a crescent, and is encompassed like an amphitheatre, by a continual ridge of high mountains, the extremities of which extend to the sea, and being covered all over with trees, the whole province appears as if surrounded with one entire inclosure of groves; whence it is rendered almost inaccessible, there being only four passes into it, and these so narrow, that not above one loaded camel can pass at a time. Out of the mountains arise several rivers, which water the adjacent plains, and render them very fertile.

they had proceeded two leagues, they came to the Caspian Sea, and having travelled about a league along the shore, they took up their lodgings at a house near the torrent of Nasseru. The next day they continued their journey along the sea side, to the north-west, for six leagues together, and that day passed at least fourteen small rivers, or rather torrents. About noon their calenter left them to the conduct of the calenter of Astara, who received them on the banks of the river Dinatfar, the common boundary between the governments of Kesker and Astara, and conducted them from the high road, through some corn-fields, to the village of Sengar-Hasara, where they lodged that night, and were regaled with five wild boars, of which there are vast numbers in the adjacent forest, because they are seldom hunted by the Persians, who are not permitted to eat them.

On the third day they set out early in the morning, and proceeding four leagues to the east north-east, at night took up their lodgings in a miserable village. The next day being provided with fresh horses, they continued their journey four leagues along the sea coast to the north, and then passed through a forest two leagues in length, in which they crossed no less than twenty-two rivers. About half a league from the village where they were to take up their lodgings, they were met by the khan of Astara, at the head of two hundred horse, who conducted the ambassadors to the village of Choskedehene, situated upon a river of the same name, which runs through it.

They found the vines in these parts as large in bulk as a man's middle. The next day being the conclusion of the Persian lent, the khan enter-

tained the ambassadors at a noble feast, when he put them upon their guard, by informing them of the danger they were in of being attacked by the Cossacks, who had, two years before, plundered the city of Reschd.

On the 7th of February, they proceeded seven leagues along the sea-shore, to the pass which leads into the province of Lengerkunan. This is a narrow bank, raised between the mountains and the fens, and the only passage on this side out of the province of Ghilan. At the end of this causeway is the river Serdane, from whence they proceeded to Lenkeran, where they staid three days for some persons belonging to their train, who had been left behind, and also to refresh their camels, and get fresh horses.

On the 11th they continued their journey five leagues to the Kesilgats, crossing four great rivers. The city is small; it is about half a league from the sea, and situated upon a small river in a fine plain. From thence they had a full view of the mountains of Ghilan, to the west-north-west, sinking by degrees into little hills towards the country of Mokan. At the foot of the mountains were several handsome villages, and a great number of trees, planted in a straight line along a very large tract of pasture ground.

On the 12th of February, they pursued their journey through a champaign country, and took up their quarters at night in the village of Flliesdu, seated at the foot of a very fertile hill. The village being inhabited only by soldiers, maintained out of the king's demesnes in those parts, the houses were very mean, they being made up of laths plaistered with clay.

The ambassador Brugman's groom would have gone into the first house he came to, with one of the led horses, when the kisilibach, or soldier to whom it belonged, told him that house was free from quartering, and that, besides, he had no convenience for horses, and, having a stick in his hand, gave the horse a slight blow on the head. Brugman, who saw the dispute, instantly dismounted, and in a rage rushed into the house, when the soldier, not knowing him, stood upon the defensive, and gave him such a blow on the arm, that he cried out for help. His domestics immediately ran to his assistance, and the poor fellow was so terribly beat in his own house, that he at last, with great difficulty, crawled out of it. Notwithstanding this, the ambassador complained to the mehemander, who answered, that he had no power over the kisilibachs, whose superior officer was not there; and that he who had injured him had received such a chastisement, that he doubted whether he would recover, however, he might take what further satisfaction he thought fit. Presuming on this permission, Brugman immediately sent to plunder the kisilibach's house, and ordered his horse and arms to be brought away. The next day he got together all his retinue, and caused it to be published by sound of drum, that he should depart immediately, and that all who would stay might do it at their peril.

Not one of the company, not even his colleague, knew of his design, but it was soon discovered, when being mounted, he stopped at the ambassador Crusius's lodgings, and there desired the mehemander to bring forth the man who had struck him the day before; but he objected, that he was so dangerously wounded that he was unable to rise.

Yet Brugman ordered him to be brought in a coverlet, and notwithstanding the intreaties of the other Persians in his behalf, commanded an Armenian, who was interpreter for the Turkish language, to beat him with a cudgel. The poor man was soon killed, and then Brugman, turning to the mehemander and the other Persians, told them, that if Shah Sefi did not revenge the affront he had received, he would soon return with a sufficient force to obtain satisfaction. The other soldiers showed that they neither wanted the will nor the courage to cut them all to pieces; and only seemed restrained by the presence of the mehemander, who staid behind to pacify them, and afterwards prevailed on Brugman to return the horse, arms and furniture, to the wife and children of the deceased.

They proceeded the three following days over the heath of Mokan. On the 15th, at night, they came within a mile of the river Aras, anciently called Araxes, and on the 20th reached the city Scamachie, when, by the khan's special order, they were lodged with the same Armenians who had been their landlords at the time of their first passage through that city. On the 22d of February, the khan and the calenter came in person to invite the ambassadors and their retinue to supper. The entertainment was very magnificent; but what was most obliging was, the offers of the khan's friendship and service; and during a stay of five weeks, he took all imaginable opportunities of rendering their abode in that city agreeable.

On the 1st of March the Moscovite envoy celebrated the birth-day of the czar his master, by a great and splendid entertainment, as the khan did the 3d, 6th and 10th, on account of the new year,

when the ambassadors were splendidly entertained at his own palace.

On the 14th of March Areb Khan received the garment, according to the custom of Persia, as a mark of the continuance of the sophi's favour: for after the governors have sent their presents to the sophi, he sends them a messenger to inform them of his favour or displeasure; who, being come near the city where the governor resides, gives them notice of his arrival, when the khan, not being sure that he is very likely to return, takes leave of the whole city, and accompanied by all his friends, goes a league to meet the envoy; who no sooner sees him coming, but he makes a halt, and the governor, after having laid aside his sword, turban and upper garment, alights, and in a submissive posture approaches the envoy, who delivers him, out of a box covered with rich tapestry, a letter of grace and a rich garment, or else demands his head, which is cut off immediately, and put into the box. Areb Khan having, however, received some private assurance of his sovereign's favour, and being willing that the ambassadors should be present at this solemnity, desired their company, to which they consented. He appeared on horseback without arms, with several fine led horses before him, and a guard of fifteen carabineers, besides a retinue of above four hundred gentlemen, and certain persons carrying on the tops of long poles, the heads of some Turks, and the Turkish colours Areb had taken. Being come in this order to the sophi's garden without the city, and seeing the messenger standing at the entrance, with a box in his hand, the khan, on being come within twelve paces of him, laid aside his garment and turban, with a chearful

countenance; but was a little startled when he heard the envoy say nothing, till at last breaking silence, he cried, "Shah Sefi sends thee a garment and a letter of favour, thou art certainly beloved by the sophi." To which the khan briskly replied, "I wish the sophi's wealth to increase for ever, and that every day of his life may be multiplied to a thousand. I am one of his majesty's old servants." Then taking the garment, which was of sea-green satin, a rocket cloth of gold, a girdle and a turban, the messenger assisted him in putting them on, and was presented with some tumains. The ceremony concluded with the casi's or judge's prayer, which ended, the khan's stewards cried aloud, "We pray for the sophi's prosperity, the happy success of his arms, and the khan's health;" to which the people answered, "Alla, Alla, Alla." The khan then returned to the city with the trumpets and timbrels sounding, and the Turks heads and colours carried before him, and on his arrival, invited the ambassadors to dinner; but having that day drank very freely, he was forced to retire before it was over, and the whole company withdrew soon after.

The 22d being Holy Thursday, they saw the Armenians perform the ceremony of washing the feet, which was done at church, when the priest washed the right foot of the men, and the left of the women, and afterwards made upon them the sign of the cross, with consecrated butter. This done, he was set in a chair, and raised up by twelve men, who kept him in the air, with several acclamations, till he had invited them to dinner.

On the 30th, leaving Scamachie, they marched to Pyramaras, and the next day travelled six leagues over the mountains without seeing a single

others two or three, and in some places there are no remains of it left. On the adjacent hills are also the ruins of many ancient castles, two of which remain entire, and have garrisons for their defence, as also several wooden redoubts, built in certain avenues.

On one side of the city are five or six hundred tombs covered with grave stones, which exceed the ordinary stature of men, and have some Arabic inscriptions upon them. It is said that Kassan, king of Media, here engaging the Daghestan Tartars, was routed, and afterwards ordered these tombs to be made for his officers slain in the battle. Near the sea-shore are forty tombs, much larger than the former, encompassed with a very high wall; these are said to be the tombs of some of his lords and holy men, and both the Persians and Tartars perform their devotion in these sepulchres.

The inhabitants of Derbent are all Mahometans, except a few Jews, who are said to be of the tribe of Benjamin. It is a place of no trade, and both the soldiers and inhabitants being an uncivilized people, the mehemander desired the ambassadors to be upon their guard. Therefore, to remove all opportunities of quarrelling, strict orders were given to the retinue not to give the least offence to any of the soldiers or inhabitants, and to be careful not to intermeddle in their quarrels: and though the khan of Tarku, who had paid the ambassadors a visit in their first passage that way, offered to conduct them safely through the Tartars of Daghestan, yet the ambassadors, considering that himself was a Daghestan Tartar, sent him word that they would not give him that trouble, and immediately ordered all the arms to be examined, when they were found

to consist of fifty-two muskets and fuzees, nineteen cases of pistols, two brass guns, and four large pieces of artillery.

At length they got every thing in readiness for their departure, and as there was no probability of their obtaining bread for some time, every man had four days allowance delivered to him; but on the 13th, just as they were ready to set forward, they were informed that the governor had caused the city gates to be shut; and he being asked by the mehemander his reason for so doing, answered, that having received intelligence that one Osmyn, a Tartar prince, near Derbent, intended to attack them in their way, he being accountable for their safety to the sophi, could not suffer them to depart without a convoy, which not being ready, he desired they would defer their departure till the next day. This they were sensible was no more than an excuse; and though they were not desirous of this convoy, they thanked him for his care, only desiring leave to go out of the city, where they would wait for the convoy; which being readily granted, they pitched their tents at about a mile's distance, near a fine vineyard, upon the bank of a small river, that is the common boundary between the Persian dominions and those of the Daghestan Tartars.

They staid the next morning till the sun had risen three hours, for the convoy promised them by the governor; but none appearing, they proceeded on their journey. Their three lieutenants, with the soldiers under their command, marched in the van; after them came the artillery, then the baggage, and the ambassador Crusius; and these were followed by another field-piece, by the ambassador

Brugman, and by the rest of the retinue. In this order they entered the country of Daghestan.

The Daghestan Tartars dwell among the mountains, and in the plains at their foot, which, in some places, are twenty or thirty leagues distance from the Caspian Sea; and these plains extend along the coast to the north as far as Terki, comprehending a tract of forty leagues. The complexion of these Tartars is a dark yellow, inclining to black. They have very disagreeable faces, but have strong limbs, and their black hair falls round their shoulders. Their garments are a grey or black close coat, of coarse cloth, over which they wear a cloak of the same stuff, and sometimes of sheep-skin. They have square caps, patched together with cloth of several colours, and their shoes are of sheep-skins, or horse's-hide, and are made of one piece, sewed together at the instep or at the sides; and they are armed with scimeters, bows, arrows and javelins. They live chiefly upon their cattle, the management of which entirely depends upon the women, the men's profession being to rob and steal; they even attack all they meet, without being afraid either of the Persians or Moscovites, on account of their retreating places among the mountains; so that the caravans, if not strong enough to encounter them, must proceed by sea. They are not governed by one single person, but each city, with its territories, has its peculiar lord, who is not absolute, but shares the government with the other lords. He is called the schemkal, and upon his death the mursas, or lords of the country, meet, and being sat down in a circle, the priest of the place throws down a golden apple into it, and he who is first touched by it, is the schemkal.

Having travelled five leagues through several villages and fertile fields, they fortified themselves with their baggage, and placed sentinels, to prevent being surprised. The next day they travelled six leagues through a hilly country, entered the lordship of Boinack, and fixed their quarters near a village of the same name, on the ascent of a hill, which being inaccessible on the sea side, they took care to guard their quarters with their baggage, placed in the form of a crescent. The lord of this country is not very powerful, but extremely wealthy in cattle. Here the ambassador Brugman, being vexed at the inhabitants standing to stare at them, would have had some firelocks without ball discharged, to make them keep off; and was highly incensed at the men, who had the prudence not to execute his commands. These barbarians, who did not want courage, were highly offended at the marks he showed of dislike, and told the people in plain terms, that they, and not the ambassadors, were masters of the country; that they were in no great fear either of the sophi of Persia, or the czar of Moscovy, and that they could easily make these strangers repent their haughtiness. They even refused to allow them to fetch water, without paying for it; but finding that the well was within reach of the cannon, they did not think fit to dispute that point any longer with them. The schemkal also sent them word the same night, that they should not stir thence till he had visited their baggage; but the ambassadors answering, that they were not merchants but ambassadors, and as such would maintain their prerogative, they heard no more of him.

On the 16th they set out early in the morning,

and saw several small troops of Tartars, sometimes before, and sometimes behind them; but after a journey of seven leagues, they pitched their tents near the city of Tarku, within a league of the sea.

The khan being sick, he sent his brother and three other persons of distinction to compliment them on their arrival; in return for which they sent him their physician, who succeeded so well in the cure, that the khan returned him his thanks for this favour.

Tarku, the metropolis of all Daghestan, is inclosed within the mountains by steep rocks, which are so covered with shells, of the size of a walnut, that they seem at a distance to consist of nothing else; and though the rock is as hard as flint, yet it affords very good pasture on its top, and many fine springs, that furnish the city with fresh water. Tarku is without walls, and contains about one thousand houses, built after the Persian manner, but not so well. The men are here very savage and barbarous, but their married women and maids are pretty well civilized, and do not live under the same restraint as those of Persia.

Though the khan, whose name was Surchou, had almost complimented them into a good opinion of his sincerity, they were soon convinced that they were never in greater danger. They would fain have persuaded their mehemander to have proceeded with them to Terki; but he excused himself, by alleging, that he had express orders to conduct them only to Tarku: and while they were in treaty with the camel drivers to carry their baggage thither, without their knowledge he returned back in the night, and took them with him. The surprise of this sudden departure was not a little

increased by what they were told by two Moscovite women, who had married Tartars, and who informed them, that the people of Osmyn Boinack had sent word to Surchou Khan, that the ambassadors had passed their country, and that instead of paying the duties for their merchandize and baggage, they had the insolence to threaten them; and therefore they were resolved to be revenged, by killing all the old men, and making the rest slaves. Upon hearing this news, and observing that not the least care was taken for their departure, and also, that messengers were constantly passing between these Tartarian chiefs, the ambassadors summoned a council, consisting of all the principal persons of the retinue, to consult what was best to be done in this extremity. At this juncture some could not forbear reflecting on the ambassador Brugman's conduct, in exasperating the people; but, as this afforded them no relief, it was resolved, as there were no hopes of escape, to sell their lives as dear as possible, rather than fall into the hands of these barbarians. Indeed they afterwards found, that these chiefs were actually concerting measures to attack them, which they would have done, had not the schemkal, thinking they had vast treasures along with them, flattered himself with the hope of getting the whole booty himself. For this purpose, he sent to let them know, that he would have them take their way over the bridge of boats, above the city where he resided; and, that if they chose any other way, he must look upon them as enemies. The messenger had no sooner concluded, but he was going away without expecting an answer, when the Moscovite envoy, boldly seizing him by the arm, cried, "Friend, tell the schemkal it is not his

business to direct the way we are to take, which we shall choose at our own pleasure. Perhaps it may not be difficult for him to cut off a handful of men; but let him know, that the czar, my master, whose honour lies at stake, will take a most dreadful revenge!"

This bold answer made the Tartars change their resolutions; even four of their princes now paid the ambassadors a visit in their tent, and staid to dine with them: these were followed by prince Osmyn's brother, and the daruga of Tarku, who frankly told them, that they ought not to rely upon the khan's promises till they had made him their friend, by giving him a present. They accordingly sent him a pair of gold bracelets, a pistol, a fusee, a barrel of powder, two pieces of Persian satin, and some spices, which put him in so good a humour, that he not only promised the ambassadors to let them have for their money whatever they wanted; but invited them, and four of their retinue, to dinner, and entertained them with eight dishes of mutton, curds, whitings, and rice. Their drink was water in glasses, and afterwards brandy in silver cups. After dinner the khan, by his own desire, was entertained three hours with their music, after which meat was brought in again, and one of the carvers having minced it, served it up by handfuls, while they were obliged to show no signs of disgust. They were also invited to several other entertainments.

On the 23d of April, the waggons for their baggage being got ready and loaded, Surchou Khan sent to let them know, that he had received intelligence that the schemkal, Sultan Mahmud, lay in ambush to intercept their passage, and that therefore he could not permit them to depart. The same

evening twenty Tartarian horsemen, well armed, pitched their tents near them; and being asked, what brought them thither, replied, they had been sent by prince Osmyn to the schemkal, to inform him, that the ambassadors being friends to the sophi of Persia and the czar of Moscovy, he had let them pass unmolested, without paying any duties, and desired him to do so too, which the schemkal had promised. These Tartars departed early the next morning, and soon after two messengers came from the schemkal, to know the reason the ambassadors did not proceed on their journey, and to promise them all the assistance in his power, provided they took the way he had directed. These were no sooner gone, than Surchou Khan came in person, to pay the ambassadors a visit, and let them know that every thing was ready for their journey; but that knowing the schemkal better than they did, he would advise them to stay eight days longer, in which time he hoped to see the Persian ambassador there, and he would then provide a sufficient convoy. These insinuations threw them into a greater perplexity than ever, not knowing whom they had to trust. In this extremity they had recourse to the governor of Terki, whom they desired to send them a convoy of strelitzers; but this he absolutely refused. In the meanwhile, some Armenian merchants, who had staid in hopes of going in their company, suddenly retired into the city, upon a rumour that two hundred Tartars intended to attack the ambassadors. To add to their affliction, the continual rains had penetrated through their tents and cloaks, and prevented their making any fires: and they durst not venture themselves into the Tartarian huts, for fear of being seized and made slaves.

These and other circumstances rendered their condition extremely deplorable, not knowing what course they ought to take. At length they sent a messenger to the schemkal, to desire a passage, who returned the next day with four Tartars, and brought them word that the schemkal was much surprised at the character Surchou Khan had unjustly given of him: that he offered them all his interest and service to forward them in their journey; and, as a proof of his sincerity, would send them three of the principal men in his dominions, as hostages for their passing safely through his territories. Upon these assurances they left Tarku on the 12th of May, and travelled two leagues through a plain but barren country, to a rivulet that divides the territories of the prince of Tarku and schemkal Sultan Mahmud, where they were forced to be contented with bread and muddy water for their supper.

On the 24th they proceeded to the river Koisu, which is deep and rapid; near it the town of Andre is situated upon the side of a hill, and is the ordinary residence of the schemkal. Over the river they and all their baggage, carried in seventy waggons, were conveyed by the Tartars in boats, two of which were joined together, and a hurdle laid over them, the expence of the whole being forty crowns. Soon after the schemkal with his brother, and a train of fifty persons on horseback, came to pay them a visit: he was about thirty-six years of age, very robust, and of an agreeable countenance. He had a garment of green satin, over which he wore a cloak of coarse cloth. His arms, as well as those of his company, were a scimeter, bow and arrows. He brought along with him some sheep and lambs, and a large cauldron full of sturgeon,

boiled in salt and water, with fresh butter and sorrel for sauce; a dish, which, in their present circumstances, seemed more agreeable than all the delicacies of Persia. They entertained him with their music, the discharge of their artillery, and with drinking brandy for two hours, when, having got half drunk, he retired, but returned soon after, and the ambassadors presented him with a pair of gold bracelets, a silver cup, a scarlet cloak lined with fur, a case of pistols, a sword, a barrel of powder, some Persian silk stuffs, and some goat skins dressed into leather. He was so pleased with the cloak, that he instantly put it on, and presented his own to the ambassador Brugman, who had the complaisance to flatter him, by saying, that at so great a distance they had but an imperfect idea of these parts, and therefore had not provided themselves with presents suitable to his greatness; but that having now established a free trade with Persia, they would make ample amends for it the next time they came that way, when they would bring full instructions to enter into a perpetual league with him, which, he did not doubt, would turn to their mutual advantage. This flattery had such an effect, that the schemkal got horses and carriages for them at a very reasonable rate; he even conducted them with fifty horse through a thick wood, and afterwards took his leave in a very friendly manner.

On the 18th they entered Circassia, which, though mostly inhabited by pagans and Mahometan Tartars, yet it was no small satisfaction to the ambassadors and their retinue to find themselves in a country under the jurisdiction of a Christian prince. Provisions, however, and particularly meat, were scarce and dear. The next day they pitched their

tents in a plain country full of reeds, near a well, the water of which was so muddy and stinking, that the beasts would not touch it: here they found the ground full of holes made by serpents. The following day they continued their journey to the city of Terki, four leagues over a barren soil, seeing in the way several serpents sporting in the sun, of the thickness of a man's arm, and six feet in length; and near Terki a peculiar kind of field-mice, called by the Arabians jerbuah: they are nearly as large as a squirrel, and not unlike it in shape, except their being of a darker colour, and having heads like rats; they have long ears, and the fore-feet are shorter than those behind, which renders them unfit for running, but they will leap five or six feet high, with their tails laid over their backs, which, like those of other mice, are long and without hair. There are vast numbers of them in Arabia and about Babylon, where they are frequently eaten by the inhabitants.

About a mile from Terki they were met by the brother of prince Mussal, with a colonel sent by the Moscovite waywode, to compliment them on their happy arrival; and while lodgings were preparing for them in the city, they were entertained with a collation of gingerbread, mead and brandy. The following day the ambassadors were treated with four dishes out of the waywode's kitchen. They sent their compliments to the princess Bika, prince Mussal's mother, and a few days after paid her a visit in person, dined with her, and entertained her with their music.

On the 21st of May they began to prepare for their departure, and bargained with the waggoners of Terki, at a crown for every waggon and two

horses, to carry them over the desert, which was seventy leagues, to Astrachan; and as they were now joined by many Persian, Turkish, Greek, and Moscovite merchants, they had above two hundred waggons, each of which carried three or four persons; but their allowance for so long a journey was very slender, for it only consisted of some hard biscuit, a loaf of mouldy brown bread, and half a dried stinking salmon, for each man in the retinue. They did not even provide drink, because the ambassador Brugman would not be at the expence of hiring a waggon to carry it; and though they were not then very solicitous about it, they had soon sufficient reason to repent of this ill-conduct, for in that dreadful desert they travelled eleven days without seeing so much as a city or village, or even a hill, tree or bird, or any river but the Kisilar, and one small brook of fresh water; the whole being a vast sandy plain, which here and there produced a little grass, and some standing pools of salt and stinking water. They were, therefore, greatly afflicted with heat, thirst, gnats, wasps, and other insects. At length, however, they arrived on the banks of the Volga, opposite to Astrachan, where many of the people, prompted by thirst, ran up to their knees in the river to drink. Soon after some of their friends came from Astrachan to welcome them, and fresh provisions being brought them at the same time, they staid all the day near the river, to give leisure to the governor to provide them lodgings.

On the 15th of June they passed the river, and had quarters appointed them in a large storehouse without the city, near the river-side, where they found a large quantity of provisions, sent thither by

the duke of Holstein's factor at Moscow; but the ambassador Brugman having ordered all the baggage to be shut up in one room, some of the retinue were so exasperated, that they forced open the doors, and took away their chests, in spite of the sentinel that stood guard.

The ambassadors, during their residence in this city, sent part of their retinue with some horses to Moscow by land, and then bought two boats sixty feet long and fifteen broad, and hired thirty watermen, to row them to Casan. A few days before their departure, some Moscovite strelitzers brought the ambassadors two girls, one of ten, and the other of seven years of age, in order to sell them. The ambassador Brugman purchased them both, one for twenty-five, and the other for sixteen crowns; and, after his return into Holstein, presented them to the duchess, who had them instructed and baptized.

On the 7th of September the ambassadors divided their retinue, and each of them embarking in his own boat upon the Volga, sailed for Casan, where they staid five weeks, till the ice was ready to bear them. On the 13th of December they proceeded on their journey in sixty sledges.

On the 2d of January, 1639, they made their public entry into Moscow, each of the ambassadors riding in a rich sledge lined with crimson velvet, and adorned with Persian carpets, the chief persons of the retinue being mounted on twelve white horses belonging to the czar. On the 8th the ambassadors had their first private audience, and having, a few days after, obtained their audience of leave from the czar, proceeded towards Germany, and arrived at Gottorp on the 1st of August, which put a period to their travels.

THE TRAVELS

OF

MR. JONAS HANWAY THROUGH RUSSIA INTO PERSIA, AND RETURN THROUGH GERMANY AND HOLLAND.

CHAP. I.

Mr. Hanway sails to Riga, from whence he proceeds by land to Petersburgh. Takes the charge of a caravan of woollen goods for Persia. A description of Valdai and Twere; of the city of Moscow. Manners of the Cossacks. Remarks on the Calmuc Tartars. The author's arrival at Astrachan.

MR. Elton, an English gentleman, having agreed with the court of Persia, about settling a trade through Russia into that empire, and afterwards entering into the service of Nadir Shah, for whom he was to build ships in the European manner; the English factors belonging to the Russia company grew uneasy at the apprehensions of the offence that might be taken by the Russian court. About this time Mr. Hanway, a gentleman equally distinguished by his piety, humanity and good sense, being well acquainted with the nature of that trade, accepted of the offer of becoming partner with a factor at Petersburgh; and being desirous of seeing Persia, a country so famous for great and memorable events, both in ancient and modern history, resolved to endeavour to complete the establishment of a trade, which was the object of the

sanguine hopes of the most considerable of our merchants.

In April, 1743, this gentleman embarked in the river Thames, on board an English ship bound for Riga, and in May entered the Sound. This strait is about two English miles broad, and the castle of Kronenburgh, on the Danish side, guards the entrance, while Ellinburg is on the opposite side, on the Swedish continent. The duty paid to the Danes on entering the Sound, has varied at different periods of time. The castle of Kronenburg, which is mounted with large cannon, projects into the water, and is so far detached from the town of Elsineur, as to enjoy an open and delightful prospect, and by its buildings, extent and verdure within the walls, is rendered an agreeable place. Elsineur is a neat little town, about twenty miles from Copenhagen; it is watered by a spring in the east part of it, and the streets being in some places lined with trees, have an agreeable effect. Here the consuls of England, France, Holland and Sweden reside; and the neighbourhood of the Swedes makes the Danish garrison strict in the examination of all who come into the town. From Elsineur he sailed by Copenhagen, where the royal palace forms a magnificent prospect from the sea. He soon after descried the coast of Courland, which had a sandy and inhospitable appearance; and near the end of May arrived in the bay of Riga. The Baltic, which, on his entrance into it, was extremely cold, and in the middle of May is frequently covered with ice, was now remarkably pleasant.

Mr. Hanway, on his landing, was carried as prisoner to the castle of Dwenamund, where he was kept above an hour, in the company of common

soldiers and under-secretaries; though he had letters of recommendation from the Russian minister at the court at London, to the great chancellor of Russia; but they made great difficulties on the want of a passport, which it is not usual to bring from England; but the master of the ship had no sooner presented the ordinary compliment than they were received by the officer on duty, as the friends of his sovereign, and from thence went by land about half a day's journey to Riga, where our author arrived on the 20th of May, and then found the weather as hot as ever he had felt it, though he had lived many years in Portugal: for the sun leaving the horizon only three or four hours, and its reflection continuing a great part of that time, neither the earth nor the air has time to become temperate.

Mr. Hanway was received at Riga with the greatest kindness by the Britishh factors; but though he produced the most indisputable credentials, he was obliged to wait in that city seventeen days as a state-prisoner; for there being then a war between Russia and Sweden, the governor had received orders, that no person should proceed from thence without express leave from the court then residing at Petersburgh. This time he spent as agreeably as a garrison and its confines would permit; but was not a little incommoded by the extreme heat of the weather.

The city of Riga was built about the year 1190, when this country first received the Christian religion. It is the metropolis of Livonia, and is situated in fifty-seven degrees north latitude, on the north-east side of the Dwena, which runs into the gulf of Riga. It was taken from the Swedes by Peter

the Great, in 1713; but the magistracy preserve the civil power, and their ancient immunities; while the burghers have the sole right of buying of the Polish and Russian merchants; consequently, the English factors, and other foreigners, can only buy of the burghers. There is a provincial court for the affairs of the province, considered as distinct from the city; and besides the corporation of the burghers, which has solely the management of the city affairs, the crown has a court under the Russian laws, which takes cognizance of the assessments for quartering of soldiers, and other affairs relating to the government.

The Dwena is generally frozen about the end of November, and open again near the middle of March: so that it has the advantage of Petersburgh, where the Neva is closed about six weeks longer. When the ice breaks up, it frequently comes down in such large pieces, as to remove points of land, and form banks, that sometimes remain for several years. On this account, no standing bridge can be built over the river; and there is only one of rafts and boards during the summer season; so that people walk even with the surface of the water. The houses are built with steep roofs, for the better carrying off the water, which is very penetrating on the melting of the snow: the cellars are used as warehouses, and the first apartment in most houses is the coach-house, through which you must pass to the parlour and dining-room. The houses are seldom above two stories high, and the streets are narrow. The language of the people of Riga is German; but the peasants in its neighbourhood, and other parts of Livonia, speak High Dutch.

Mr. Hanway having at length procured a pass-

port, he provided himself with a sleeping waggon, which is made of leather, resembling a cradle, and hung upon braces, and in this manner rode post to Petersburgh; in this journey he found the horses bad, but the stages were short, and the inns clean.

Having passed through several inconsiderable places, he arrived at Dorpt, which is about two hundred and thirty wersts from Riga, and stands in a plain watered by the river Embeck, which runs into the lake Peipus. The country, on the side towards Riga, presents a most delightful prospect; and the trade of the town consists mostly in corn and flax. Dorpt resembles a superb heap of ruins, among which are the remains of a castle, which Peter the Great took from the Swedes in 1704, and upon this occasion a great part of the town was destroyed by fire. From hence the country is cleared of wood, and well inhabited.

Mr. Hanway now travelled along the banks of the lake Peipus, which is 120 wersts long, and 60 broad, having a communication with the lake Pscow or Pleskow, the borders of which are famous for producing flax. From thence he proceeded through several places to Narva, the capital of Estonia. This city is not large, but stands on a rising ground, and is clean and well fortified. Its trade consists mostly in flax and timber. Two wersts above the town is a cataract in the river Narva, at which they are obliged to unload the barks. This city is remarkable for the great defeat which the Russians met with in the year 1700, when 100,000 of them fled before a handful of Swedes. From this place he travelled 146 wersts to Petersburgh; the whole distance between Narva and that city being 540 wersts, or 898 miles. On the 10th of June he ar-

rived at Petersburgh, and was extremely pleased to find a city so open, airy, and in many places so regularly built with good houses in the Italian taste.

His partner, and the other factors, were soon alarmed at the complaints of the Russian court against Mr. Elton; and it being resolved that one of them should go into Persia, Mr. Hanway offered his service, which was accepted. Having obtained a passport from the court of Russia, he provided a sleeping waggon, another for his clerk, and a third for his baggage; also a Russian menial servant, a Tartar boy, and a soldier: then receiving such instructions as were necessary from the factors who were interested in this new commerce, he took upon him the charge of a caravan of thirty-seven bales of English cloth, and prepared for his journey.

The caravan of cloth, consisting of twenty loads, set out on the 1st of September, and on the 10th Mr. Hanway followed it. He had an order for nine post horses, and was to pay a farthing each, for every werst; but being resolved to make all possible speed, he hired peasants horses, which are better, and double the expence. In two days he reached the river Volcoff, when the ferryman finding he was a merchant, began to be insolent; for the Russian boors have a contemptible notion of all traders; the delay and impertinence to which he was exposed, obliged his soldier to exercise his cane, which soon brought the fellow to reason, and made him perform his office. On the 13th, the darkness of the night, with the wind and rain, together with the badness of the roads, and one of the carriages being stuck in a bog, obliged our author and his attendants to sleep in their waggons in the open field, and the next day they reached

Baanitz, which is near Novogorod, and is 230 wersts from Petersburgh. The weather was now mild, the road was open and pleasant, and provisions so cheap, that good beef might be bought for the value of three farthings a pound, mutton and pork in proportion, and bread at about one-sixth part of its usual value in England.

On the 15th they arrived at Valdai, where is a considerable monastery. The inhabitants are mostly Poles, brought here as prisoners in former wars: but the distinction is now almost lost. The dress of the women is neater, and their persons handsomer, than the generality of the Russian peasants; but their excessive laughter, and painting their faces, greatly diminish their external charms. The country is hilly, and affords many pleasant prospects; and Mr. Hanway observes, that Venus seems to have made this her particular residence, from the many amorous songs admired by the Russians, in relation to the scenes of delight this place affords; though the more refined parts of love are hardly to be found among the present inhabitants. The next day our author got to Twere, where he came up with his caravan. Great complaints were made by the carriers of the badness of the roads, which increased his fears of not reaching Persia that year; therefore, instead of one horse to each load, he ordered two, and promised the carriers a handsome present, on condition of their exerting themselves to the utmost of their power.

In Russia, carriages for merchandize are nine or ten feet long, and two or three feet broad: they are principally composed of two strong poles, supported by four slight wheels of near an equal size, and about the height of the fore-wheels of our coaches;

many of them have wheels of a single piece of wood, and some are not shod with iron. These carriages are drawn only by one horse. The bales are laid on a bed of thick mats, and over them are usually placed thick mats, two or three times double, and an upper covering of raw cow-hides.

Twere is a very ancient city, situated on the Twersa, which runs into the Volga. This place is a rendezvous for merchants who trade to the towns on the banks of the last-mentioned river: yet during the greatest part of the year the Twersa is not twenty inches deep; but in the months of April and May, it is so swelled by the melting of the snow, that the water rises ten or eleven feet. Large flat-bottomed vessels of 200 tons take this opportunity of passing to and from Astrachan, and other places; the trade to Persia is sometimes carried on by the same channel. There are brought here great quantities of caviar, fish, and rock-salt, and the vessels carry back corn, meal, all kinds of groceries, and bale-goods.

On the 19th Mr. Hanway arrived at Kiln, a very agreeable place, near a small branch of the river Kliazma, and passing through several small villages, the next day arrived at Moscow, the metropolis of the Russian empire.

Moscow is in the latitude of 55° 40′, and is built somewhat after the Eastern manner. It is about sixteen English miles in circumference, the river Moskwa runs through it, and making many windings, adds a very striking beauty to the city; but in summer it is in many places shallow and unnavigable. Several eminences, interspersed with groves, gardens and lawns, form a most delightful prospect. The imperial palace is remarkable for scarce-

any thing but its having thirty chapels, and a very lofty hanging garden; but great part of it appears rather like a prison than a royal palace. The number of churches and chapels in Moscow is hardly credible; they are said to be above eighteen hundred, but many of them are very mean. One of the most remarkable things in this city is the great bell, which is of a stupendous size, and affords a surprising proof of the folly of those who caused it to be made; but the Russians have for time immemorial been extremely fond of great bells; this is 443,772 pounds weight; but the beam on which it hung being burned, it fell, and a large piece was broken out of it.

Moscow being in the heart of the empire, is the residence of those of the nobility who are not obliged to follow the court, and is particularly inhabited by the chief merchants and manufacturers. It would be amazing, that the dreadful fires that have here spread such devastation through that city, have not prevented building with wood, did not the cheapness of that kind of building, and the poverty of many of the inhabitants, render it in a manner necessary.

The Russians preserve a great share of the simplicity of their forefathers: the modern refinements, which in some countries have rendered it unpolite for a son to call his father by that endearing name, is little known among them; and here in the politest correspondences, a man's Christian name, with that of his father's, as Johnthe son of Thomas, is esteemed the most respectful address.

On the 24th of September Mr. Hanway left Moscow, and passed through several villages near the western banks of the Occa. The country is

hilly, but abounds in arable land, and is adorned with a beautiful variety of groves. The next day he arrived at Kolumna, eighty wersts from Moscow, which makes a better appearance than most cities in that part of the world; for it has many stone and brick buildings; it has likewise several turrets of a very irregular figure, but being covered with gilded tin they make a good appearance.

After passing the Occa, he still found the country very pleasant. The horses were now feeding on the rye just sprouting from the earth.

Being advanced on the 26th to Peristawl Riazanskoi, he found himself in another climate; for the harvest was not gathered in. The roads are for the most part very good: the country has little wood, but is delightfully watered; but the people are extremely poor, as appears by the houses of the peasants, that are covered with straw, in a manner that shows even their ignorance of thatching. Their language and dress are different from those of the more northern Russians. Mr. Hanway was surprised to behold so fine a country, at no more than 200 wersts from the metropolis, make such an appearance of indigence; but the lords are such bad economists that they defeat their own designs, and before the peasants feel the sweets of their labour, not only refuse to assist them, but in a great measure obstruct their industry. He was now in an open fertile country, but the people were so indigent, that many of their cottages consisted only of one room, about five or six yards square, which often contained six or eight persons of both sexes; but the inhabitants are neither numerous, nor very reserved with regard to the ordinary consequences of such cohabitations.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

flights of geese and swans were now on the wing, retiring from the approaching severities of the climate, to the warmer regions of Persia.

On the 19th he observed on the shore a house made under ground, the walls were wicker-work, and the light came in from the top. Here was provided a bagnio for bathing, which the Russians use almost as much as the Mahometans. The place was inhabited by some Nogay and Circassian Tartars, who ply on the river with open boats; and here were also some settlements of the Calmucks. From Zaritzen to Astrachan, very little wood appeared on the banks of the Volga; in some parts of the western side, the country is hilly, and the soil is in several places rich.

CHAP. II.

A description of Astrachan, its fisheries and trade. An account of the neighbouring Tartars, of the Calmuck settlements, and of the river Volga; with the method of curing caviare. The author arrives at Langarood-bay, and from thence proceeds to Astrabad. A description of the Persian manner of smoking, and other customs of the inhabitants. A rebellion breaks out; the author in great distress; the city taken, and the caravan designed for Mesched plundered.

MR. Hanway being arrived at Astrachan, was obliged to wait for Captain Woodroofe, in whose ship he intended to embark for Persia, and took this opportunity of obtaining a more full information of the city of Astrachan, and its neighbourhood.

This city is the metropolis of a kingdom of the same name, situated in forty-seven degrees north latitude, within the limits of Asia, in an island called

Having travelled 300 wersts from Kolumna, he arrived at Koslove, a city fortified with a wall of earth, which served to secure it from the incursions of the Tartars. On the first of October he entered the Step. The inhabitants, who are nearest to it, often improve their land by burning the grass; and where it is not burned, they procure provender for their cattle during the winter season, by scraping away the snow, and suffering them to feed on the half perished grass. Here he overtook a caravan of European goods, belonging to Armenian merchants. On the 2d he arrived at Novochoperskaja, the proper boundary of Russia on the river Choper, which falls into the Don. This is the Russian frontier towards the Don Cossacks, and is fortified with palisades, dry moats, and a rampart, on which some small pieces of cannon are mounted: it is almost surrounded by a grove of oaks. The adjacent country is very delightful, and the roads exceeding good. He now passed through several Cossack towns, where he found the people clean and well clothed: the women are gay and comely; they adorn their heads with a cap rising about four inches from their foreheads, with two points in the form of a crescent, and their shifts are ornamented with red crosses: the unmarried women wear their hair plaited behind in the Russian manner.

The Cossacks are a species of Tartars; the name signifies free-booters; but they are here civilized, and being indulged by the Russian government, continue faithful, and are constantly ready to attend the Russian army: each man usually brings with him two horses; and upon these occasions they are well clothed and accoutered, at their own expence. They receive pay only in time of war, when actu-

ally employed, and then only six rubles a year, with provision and plunder; yet being exempt from taxes, they have no provocation to forsake their masters. They are a gallant and sober people, and some of them are said to possess 300 cows, and 1000 sheep.

For three days Mr. Hanway saw little more than land and sky, except some woods and mountains to the eastward, which afforded pleasure in proportion to the absence of other objects. There are prodigious flights of blue pigeons, of which they killed as many as they could consume. At length he and his attendants arrived at Grigoriskoi, which forms a kind of peninsula. Here the inhabitants take great quantities of craw-fish, especially in spring, when the flesh is most esteemed; they then pound and mix it in water, on which the eyes sink to the bottom. Quantities of these eyes are sent to Turkey and other countries, they being used in medicine. The houses, or rather huts of the people, are built of oak plank. They marry very young, and our author talked with a boy of fifteen, who was engaged to a girl of the same age.

On the 9th he arrived under the lines, that are thrown up from the Don, the ancient Tanais, to the Volga, for the distance of about fifty wersts. The ditch is near sixteen feet deep; but not made entirely square, and there is a bank of earth near twenty feet high, with strong timber rails towards the top. At certain distances are placed sentry-boxes, from which the guard can communicate an alarm to the chief garrison at Zaritzen, which terminates the line to the western banks of the Volga. On this spot Peter the Great intended to join the Don and the Volga; and the canal was actually

begun for that purpose. The Kuban Tartars were once very formidable here; but the river Kuma, which discharges itself into the Caspian Sea, now serves as a barrier to these people, who are kept in awe by the Russians. The sun was yet warm, and the weather delightful. On the plains near Zaritzen are fed dromedaries.

Zaritzen is 688 miles from Moscow, on a high bank of the Volga, of which it commands a fine prospect. It is thinly inhabited, and the buildings are mean; but it is defended by a deep ditch, a rampart mounted with cannon, and a strong garrison.

In a deep valley on the south side, is an encampment of Calmuck Tartars, who are in friendship with the Russians, while they awe them by their power. They have the same turn of visage with the Chinese; but are fierce and savage. These are a dispersed tribe of those Mungalians, whom the Chinese long ago received as their conquerors. They are armed with bows and arrows; they feed on the flesh of horses, camels, dromedaries, and other animals, and eat their entrails, even when they die of the foulest distempers. They throw their dead into open fields, to be devoured by the dogs, many of which run wild, and some are kept for that purpose: if these bodies are devoured by any number exceeding six, they think honourably of the deceased, otherwise he is thought a disgrace to his relations.

They worship idols, which are generally small bits of wood, about a palm in length; the upper part is rounded, and adorned with a rude resemblance of human features; these figures are dressed up in a few rags. Their supreme deity is Delli Lama. In prosperous seasons they caress their ragged gods; but treat them very ill when the con-

trary happens. The many acts of violence committed by these barbarians, induced the Russian government to compel them to dwell on the banks of the Volga below Astrachan, where they have but little opportunity for robbery and murder, though here also they transgress.

Mr. Hanway now employed himself in procuring a proper vessel to convey his goods to Astrachan, and found one that had just arrived with 400 sacks of flour. He was extremely shocked at seeing on what slight embarkations his friends were obliged to trust their valuable effects, in the navigation of a river full of shelves and trees, which accidentally falling into the water, sink and become as dangerous as rocks.

This vessel, which was the best he could procure, cost him no more than forty rubles, or £10. The decks were only loose pieces of the bark of trees; it had but few beams, and hardly any pitch or tar had been used about it, instead of which long slips of bark were nailed over the gaping seams, to prevent the loose and bad caulking from falling out; and instead of iron bolts, it had spikes of deal with round heads. The method of keeping these vessels clear of water is, by using a large scoop, suspended by a beam over the well-way, and through a scuttle at a proper height the water is thrown with great facility. Though these vessels appear like so many wrecks, the trade carried on by means of them is very considerable.

Having given the necessary instructions with regard to carrying the goods, he prepared for his own voyage down the Volga, by buying two boats, each to be navigated by five water-men and his own attendants, with the addition of six soldiers, for a

convoy; for though he had assurances of safety, prudence suggested that he could not gain, but might lose considerably, by too much confidence. The Volga is frequently infested with pirates, who make use of row-boats, which carry from twenty to thirty hands, and furnish themselves with fire-arms. Their general practice is, to board immediately; but where they apprehend a brave resistance, they seldom make an attack. Hence few of the Russian merchants transport any cargo of value down this river without a convoy. These robbers appear mostly in the spring, when the banks of the Volga being overflowed, they can the more easily escape a pursuit. The soldiers, who are occasionally sent after them, are ordered to take them alive, from the apprehension, that allowing them to kill might prove fatal to the innocent, through the strong temptations to plunder, with which the soldiers are actuated.

The Armenians generally fight with great bravery and intrepidity in defence of their property; but the Bourlacks, who navigate the Volga, are so intimidated by these robbers, that they no sooner appear, than they behave like men struck with a panic, and even ascribe to them an irresistible power, derived from an infernal spirit. It was formerly their custom, in these cases, to fall on their faces as soon as required by the robbers, and to suffer them to plunder at pleasure, not daring to look up, lest it should cost them their lives. The merchant, or master of the vessel, being thus at their mercy, is happy if he escapes with life; for the robbers have seldom any sentiments of humanity for a man of superior rank; but if he attempts to defend himself, he may be sure, if conquered, of

being barbarously murdered. These robbers are accustomed to observe the same conduct on the Caspian Sea, but much less of late years than formerly.

The punishment of these wretches, when taken, is not less dreadful than the cruelties they commit. A float is built whereon a gallows is erected, on which is fastened a number of iron hooks, and on these they are hung alive by the ribs. The float is then launched into the stream with labels over their heads, signifying their crime; and orders are given to all the towns and villages on the borders of the river, that none, on pain of death, shall afford them relief. Sometimes they are met by their partners in wickedness, who, if they have no hopes of their recovery, put an end to their misery, by shooting them; but if they are caught in these illegal acts of mercy, they are themselves hung up, without the formality of a trial. It is said that one of these miscreants had the good fortune to disengage himself from the hook, and, though naked and trembling with pain and loss of blood, he got ashore, when the first object he saw being a poor shepherd, he had the cruelty to beat out his brains with a stone, and then to take his clothes. These malefactors sometimes hang thus for three, four, and sometimes five days alive. The pain generally produces a raging fever, wherein they utter the most horrid imprecations, and implore the relief of water or liquors.

On the 14th of October, Mr. Hanway put off from shore; the stern part of his boat was covered with mats, so that he could sleep protected from the weather, which now began to be very cold. He took some of the soldiers with him, that, if by accident he should be separated from the goods, he might have some assistance. The next day he saw

several water-fowl much larger than swans, which they resembled in their feet and beaks; and the Russians call them dika baba, which signifies a wild old woman. They have a very large claw, that will contain a whole fish of a considerable size. They fly very near each other, in the form of a semicircle, not far above the water, and having driven the fish, which are their only food, into the shallows, dart down upon them. The fat of this bird is used by the Russians as a cure for aches and bruises.

In the spring, the high waters of the Volga not only undermine its banks, but sweep away large trees, so that some creeks of the river had hardly any passage left. The soldiers fed luxuriously at the fisheries, for nothing more than thanks. The weather was calm, and the current moderate; in many places the banks are high, and in others there is a flat shore, the breadth being from a mile to a quarter of a mile.

On the 17th our author stopped at Chernoyare. This is the first town from Zaritzen, from which it is distant two hundred wersts, and is esteemed half way to Astrachan. It is defended by a ditch, with some cannon and chevaux-de-frize. The inhabitants trade with the Calmuck, Kuban, and other Tartars, in a quarter distinct from the town. The next day, though he was obliged to lie by in the night, he advanced ninety wersts, but not without danger of being drowned; for the boat had no keel, nor any running tackle, and the watermen being extremely unskilful, and not able to let the sail fly, it was a singular providence that they were not all overset. As he proceeded further, several wrecks appeared on the banks of the river. Great

flights of geese and swans were now on the wing, retiring from the approaching severities of the climate, to the warmer regions of Persia.

On the 19th he observed on the shore a house made under ground, the walls were wicker-work, and the light came in from the top. Here was provided a bagnio for bathing, which the Russians use almost as much as the Mahometans. The place was inhabited by some Nogay and Circassian Tartars, who ply on the river with open boats; and here were also some settlements of the Calmucks. From Zaritzen to Astrachan, very little wood appeared on the banks of the Volga; in some parts of the western side, the country is hilly, and the soil is in several places rich.

CHAP. II.

A description of Astrachan, its fisheries and trade. An account of the neighbouring Tartars, of the Calmuck settlements, and of the river Volga; with the method of curing caviare. The author arrives at Langarood-bay, and from thence proceeds to Astrabad. A description of the Persian manner of smoking, and other customs of the inhabitants. A rebellion breaks out; the author in great distress; the city taken, and the caravan designed for Mesched plundered.

MR. Hanway being arrived at Astrachan, was obliged to wait for Captain Woodroofe, in whose ship he intended to embark for Persia, and took this opportunity of obtaining a more full information of the city of Astrachan, and its neighbourhood.

This city is the metropolis of a kingdom of the same name, situated in forty-seven degrees north latitude, within the limits of Asia, in an island called

Dolgoi, sixty English miles from the Caspian sea. It was taken from the Tartars, and contains about seventy thousand inhabitants, among whom are many Armenians and Tartars, of various denominations, with a few Persians and Indians. The manners and customs of all these different people exhibit an epitome of Asia. The city is about two miles and a half round, but including the suburbs, five miles. It is surrounded by an old ruinous brick wall, and defended by a garrison of six regiments of the best Russian troops. The houses are of wood, and most of them very mean; the higher part commands a prospect of the Volga, which is here near three miles broad; but the melting of the snow, which causes floods, and the rising of the water in autumn, are observed to affect the air, and cause diseases. The city is surrounded by gardens and vineyards, that produce all the roots, plants and trees known in England, except potatoes, cauliflowers, and artichokes; and the orchards furnish them with plenty of apples and pears, cherries and water-melons, which in taste and colour resemble those in Portugal. Our author met with no fruit which he thought extraordinary, but these melons; though the court are so fond of the grapes, as to procure them at the expence of land carriage. The wine of Astrachan is very indifferent. As their summers are generally dry, they are obliged to water their gardens: this is done by large wheels, some of which are moved by horses, and others by the wind. These wheels are so high, as to throw the water into the most elevated part of the garden, whence it runs in trenches to the root of every tree and plant; in this manner the gardens and vineyards are generally watered from the middle of May to the middle

of September. The chief game in the neighbouring country is partridges and hares; here are also water and wild fowl, of all sorts, in great abundance, and in summer plenty of quails.

About ten miles below Astrachan, is Bosmakoff, a small island remarkable for its large store-houses of salt, and brought thither by boats, whence it is conveyed in large flat-bottomed vessels up the Volga. With this salt all the country is supplied as far as Moscow and Twere. In this place are likewise large fisheries, to which the neighbourhood of the salt-works is of great advantage. These extend even to the Caspian Sea, reaching south-eastward as far as Yaeik, and also a hundred miles above Zaritzen. From these fisheries all the country is supplied as far as Petersburgh; the vessels are in the spring loaded with salt fish, but in winter, when the fish will keep as long as it is frozen, it is carried by land as far as Moscow and Petersburgh. The principal sorts are sturgeon, starlett, a large white fish called beluga, and assotra, which resembles sturgeon.

From the latter end of July to the beginning of October, the country is frequently infested with locusts, which fly in such prodigious numbers, that they darken the air, and appear, at a distance, like a heavy cloud. The inhabitants say they are generally seen as the cold weather comes on, in their flight from the northward to the southward. Wherever they fall they eat up every thing that is green; all gardeners, therefore, look out for them, and upon their first appearance, endeavour to keep them off, by making as much smoke and as great a noise as possible; but these destructive insects, after flying as long as they are able, sometimes fall

in their gardens, on the tops of houses, and even in the fires. Their bodies, compared with the smallness of their wings, are very large, and generally from two inches to two and a half long, and about three quarters of an inch in diameter; their shape nearly resembles the largest sort of green grasshoppers. Mr. Woodroofe observes in his journal, that, as he was sailing up the Volga to Astrachan, he saw a prodigious cloud coming from the west-north-west. The wind blew very fresh, and nearly from the same point, when the locusts falling down, the water was covered with such vast swarms of them, that in some places they greatly obstructed the motion of the boat for ten or twelve fathoms together. He also says, they live for some time under water, for as they mounted on each other's backs, they formed a cluster of near three feet diameter, which rolled along by the force of the wind, and the rapidity of of the current. In this manner they were driven ashore. Their wings being dried, they got upon the pasture, and very few were drowned. For three days they lay so thick upon the plain, upwards of three miles round, that it was impossible to walk without treading on them, and when they began to fly, they disappeared in less than half an hour, leaving the plain without a blade of grass.

The trade of Astrachan is very considerable. Their foreign trade consists in red leather, linen, woollen cloth, and other European manufactures, the greatest part of which they export to Persia for the Armenians; in return they import Persian manufactures, as silk sashes intermixed with gold, for the use of the Poles; wrought silks, and stuffs mixed with cotton, raw silk, cotton, a small quantity of drugs, and in particular rhubarb; but this

last article is engrossed by the government, and private persons are forbid to deal in it under pain of death. The officers of the admiralty and custom-house of Astrachan have very small salaries, which is the case in all other parts of Russia; so that instead of doing their duty, and dispatching business, they often seek pretences to protract it, in order to obtain the more considerable presents. Upon these occasions French brandy, white wine, hats, stockings and ribbons, are acceptable.

While Mr. Hanway was here, the governor invited him to a feast, at which there were near a hundred dishes; this gave him an opportunity of seeing a singular specimen of Russian intemperance; for above twenty people drank to excess, in goblets filled with a kind of cherry-brandy. This feast was made for the birth of the governor's grand-daughter, on which occasion each of the guests presented an offering according to his rank. This is a civil way of levying a tax from the merchants, and a custom though not elegant, less absurd, in the opinion of our author, than those of some politer countries; for here, without disguise or ceremony, you leave one or two ducats, or some richer present, on the bed of the lady, who sits up with great formality to be saluted.

Mr. Hanway was led by his curiosity to see the devotions of the Indian Pagans, in a little temple they have here. Their priests use beads, incense, prostrations and offerings, small bells, with other music, and raise their voices in singing with the utmost vehemence. The object of their adoration was a pagod, ugly and deformed to a degree of horror. The service being over, they presented Mr. Hanway some of the fruits which had been

offered to the idol, but he thought proper to refuse them; though not without some melancholy reflections on the abject state to which he saw human nature reduced.

The Tartars here have the utmost abhorrence of this pagan worship, and will not even carry money, that has the impression of man, or any living creature, in their temple. Their devotions are performed in silent prostrations, only the priest, at certain times, utters an invocation to the Lord of Nature, through the mediation of Mahomet.

For several miles round the city, where the soil will admit of cultivation, there are settlements of a very civil and industrious people, of the race of the Crim Tartars, who are tributary to the Russians. In the summer they improve their land, the produce of which is a seed called manna, oats, musk and water-melons; but their wives and children, with their sheep, horses and cattle, they reckon their principal treasure. When a daughter becomes marriageable, they cover her tent with white linen, tie a painted cloth on the top, with red strings, and place by the side of the tent a painted waggon, which is to be her marriage portion. This is a signal to those who design to marry, and the girl is generally given to him who offers the father the most valuable present. These people are Mahometans, and, contrary to the practice of the Calmucks, are extremely nice in their burying-places: they dig their graves very deep, line them with brick dried in the sun, white-wash them on the inside, and build a cover over them. They then raise thick walls of mud round the place, and fix over the top one or more flags, according to the characters of the deceased.

On the 8th of November our author left Astrachan, under convoy of the governor's barge, with twelve grenadiers, and at night slept within pistol-shot of a Calmuck settlement, composed of round tents raised with canes, in the form of a cone, and covered with a thick felt of camel's hair, which keeps out the weather extremely well. These tents are about twelve feet high, and from ten to fifteen yards in circumference. The inhabitants make a fire in the centre of the tent, and the smoke issues from the top, at a hole left for that purpose. The people are miserably poor, and subsist on fish, which they take in the Volga, drying in summer the provisions they prepare for the winter. They prefer living on the banks, where the flags and rushes grow to a great height, thinking that they defend them from the severity of the winter's cold. There are seldom more than seven or eight tents in a place, which contains thirty or forty persons, who live in distinct families, and a chief, whom they choose from among themselves. There are other Calmucks, who travel to the south on the approach of winter, and return northward in the heat of summer.

As Mr. Hanway advanced within thirty wersts of the mouth of the Volga, he descried a great number of small islands; the whole scene appearing wild and inhospitable. Being happily arrived at Terki, he embarked in the British ship, the Empress of Russia, and was rejoiced at finding himself in a vessel of good oak, probably the only complete ship which had till that time appeared on the Caspian Sea. It gave him no less pleasure to see the English flag hoisted, and to receive those common marks of esteem, which masters of ships

Calmuck Tartars.

G Shea Sc

Dublin, Published by J Christie, 17, Ross Lane

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

pay to their merchants, when they have any guns.

As we are going to take leave of the Volga, a river so often mentioned, we shall here give a more particular description of it. It was anciently called the Rha, and is justly esteemed, for its extent and depth, one of the noblest rivers in the world. It derives its source from the lake Fernoff in the province of Kerkoff, running, according to general computation, near 4500 wersts, or 3000 English miles, before it empties itself into the Caspian Sea. Into this river fall the Twersa, which comes from Twere, the Moscwa from Moscow, the Occa from Kolumna, the Kama, which divides the Nogay and Kuban Tartary, the Samar and Samora, and many others. It is of the utmost utility to the vast empire of Russia, both with regard to commerce, and as it has been a means of reducing the different tribes of Tartars who frequent its borders. The immense quantities of water that flow into it from other rivers, and from the mountains when the snow melts in the spring, are the cause of its swelling at different times and places. It usually begins to rise in March, and increases in April and May, continuing above its usual mark till the end of June; and then it decreases very fast. It is often raised in September by autumnal rains; but this rising is neither so constant nor so considerable. As there are many different climates in the course of the river, the ice breaks up at different times. The banks are altered almost every year by the force of the current, and by the sands blown into the river from the adjacent countries. The danger arising from these shifting banks is not very great, but it creates delays. The usual course of the stream can hardly be reckoned above a mile an hour. The na-

vigation is difficult for vessels that draw above five feet water, except in times of flood, when the largest flat-bottomed vessels find sufficient water. Our author has seen one afloat in the month of October, said to have 600 tons of salt and fish on board, and in some seasons they have barks of greater burden. The trade carried on in this river is great and extensive; but from no place more considerable than from Yarislaw and Casan.

Besides the great abundance of fish taken in the Volga, and sent either salted or frozen to different parts of the Russian empire, a commerce is carried on in caviar, which is the roe of sturgeon and the fish called beluga, and is thus prepared: they take away the stringy part, then mix it with salt well cleaned, and made into brine; and when drained from the oily parts and pressed, it becomes of such a consistence as to keep two or three years. In the winter it is sent to all parts of the empire, and is much esteemed by the natives as well as foreigners. A large quantity is made for exportation, which is consumed by the Christians of Italy and the Levant. The Armenians have the greatest skill in preparing it, and usually make about 6000 poods, or 100 tons, every year: and in 1749 they brought 20,000 poods to market.

On the 22d of September Mr. Hanway set sail, and on the 3d of December arrived in Langarood-bay; where being informed that Mr. Elton was removed from Reshcd to Langarood, to attend the maritime affairs in which he was engaged, he sent to let that gentleman know of his arrival, upon which he came on board, and conducted our author on shore, where he gave him a polite reception. Mr. Hanway delivered to him a pair of pistols of

exquisite workmanship, mounted in gold, and some other curious things which Mr. Elton had wrote for, at the desire of Ali Kouli Khan, the shah's nephew, with whom he was solicitous of cultivating a good correspondence. Mr. Hanway spent seven hours with this gentleman, during which they talked over the affair of the Caspian trade. Mr. Elton was indeed seriously employed in building ships for the shah, and proved that he was capable of surmounting the greatest difficulties. Mr. Hanway expressed his fears of the consequence of his engagement with Nadir, and pointed out many capital inconveniences he apprehended would follow from it.

One great inducement to open the Caspian trade was, the hopes of establishing a new branch of commerce from Astrabad to Mesched, from whence Mr. Elton thought it practicable to extend it to the northern cities of the Mogul's empire. It now fell to Mr. Hanway's lot to attempt the execution of this design. He had brought with him to the value of £5000 in woollen goods, for which he found there was no market in Ghilan, and therefore his presence there would be of little use. But though Mr. Elton had already secured the shah's express decree, by which it was ordered, that safe conduct should be given to him in all parts of his dominions, he was so alarmed by the vicinity of the Turkuman Tartars to Astrabad, that he did not choose to venture, till, by inquiring, he found, that in case of danger he might there have what guard of soldiers he pleased.

On the 10th of December, having taken leave of Mr. Elton, Mr. Hanway went down to the creek. The ship was at anchor, out of sight of land, and the wind blew very fresh; he had a crazy boat

rowed by Persians, who are, for the most part, equally timorous and unskilful, so that it was with reluctance he ventured to sea; but he soon got sight of the ship, and happily reached her. He directed his course for Astrabad, and was four days in sight of the great mountain Demoan, which is said to be thirty leagues within land; and yet at the distance of four or five leagues from the shore, it might be distinguished very plainly, rising in the form of a pyramid.

On the 18th of December he entered Astrabad-bay, into which runs the river Korgun, after washing the banks of the desert of Turkumania. The sea has here, as well as in other parts of the Caspian, made great inroads; so that in many places trees lie on the shore, and render it as difficult of access as its appearance is wild and inhospitable. The ship having cast anchor, Mr. Hanway dispatched an Armenian servant to know if he might land his goods with safety; but he soon returned without obtaining any information. Many fires were instantly seen in different places, and upon the mountains, to alarm the inhabitants for fear of a surprise; for this was taken for a pirate's ship, and the people on the coast were terrified, on account of their having been often plundered by the pirates. Two days after Mr. Hanway went on shore; but stumps of trees and shallows made it difficult for a long-boat to land nearer than twenty yards. The peasants at length being satisfied that he came in a friendly manner with merchandize, received him and his attendants, and conducted them by many crooked paths through a thick wood to a small village. These people are swarthy, but their features are regular, and somewhat delicate. Mr. Hanway sent

his Armenian interpreter with his compliments to Mahommed Zaman Beg, the governor of Astrabad, and with orders to provide necessaries for the fresh package of the cloth, after which he returned on board.

On the 21st it was observed that the sun had risen about an hour before it was visible to those in the ship, such is the stupendous height of the mountains. The governor sent to assure Mr. Hanway of his protection, and to advise him not to repose any confidence in the peasants near the coast. A few days after he was visited by Nazeer Aga, a Persian officer, who had been recommended to him as a person of great probity: he made him an offer of his house at Astrabad, which Mr. Hanway accepted, and assured him of the sense he had of his own happiness, in meeting with so kind and generous a friend. Nazeer Aga was accompanied by Myrza, a grave old man, who had a great reputation for wisdom.

On the 20th the ship narrowly escaped being burned; for about eighty pounds of raw cotton, intended for the package of the bales, being set on fire in the steerage, by the carelessness of one of the seamen, it was with difficulty extinguished. Mr. Hanway was asleep in the cabin, and almost suffocated with smoke, and the danger was the greater, as the fire was about the powder-chest; but it pleased Providence that no harm was done, except burning the hands and faces of some of the sailors, which were soon cured.

Mr. Hanway soon after prepared to go on shore; but the Armenian interpreter began now to express his fears of the dangers to which they should be exposed, in their intended journey to Mesched,

where he had been robbed of goods to a considerable value; but, being of a timorous disposition, what he said made but little impression; and Myrza Mahommed having received orders from the governor of the province to supply Mr. Hanway with a guard, and to entertain him in his house, he landed the bales without waiting for the governor, who had intimated his design to visit the ship.

On the 2d of January, 1744, Mr. Hanway pitched his tent on the shore, and collected all the people who were to convey the goods to the city. Myrza then sent him an invitation to come to his house; and his son, who delivered the message, assured him, in a complimentary strain, that his father would kill him if he returned without him. Mr. Hanway, however, excused himself till the next day. One of the company then sung an extempore song, consisting mostly of welcomes and fulsome compliments to the strangers, after which they eat their pleo, which they finished in a much shorter time than a table could be laid for a polite entertainment in Europe. At length they made large fires, round which they danced, and appeared very joyful, and in the evening they performed their devotions. During the night, the jackalls in the woods barked and howled to such a degree, that it was very difficult for persons unused to such noise, to receive the refreshment of sleep. In the morning Myrza's brother and his two sons came with several horses, of which Mr. Hanway took one for himself, and another for his interpreter; and in about eight hours they arrived in the city, the carriers making but one stop on the way, which was to perform their devotions.

The next day Nazeer Aga, in whose house he

was lodged, lent him a horse handsomely caparisoned, and insisted on his taking his servants as well as his own to attend him. Mr. Hanway's present to the governor was carried in before him, and consisted of several cuts of fine cloth, and loaves of sugar laid on a tea-board. The governor was attended by several persons of the greatest distinction in the city, who all rose at his coming, and desired him to take his place; when the governor, observing that he could not accommodate himself to their manner of sitting, ordered a chair, bid him welcome to Persia, and told him that the city of Astrabad was now at his disposal. Mr. Hanway returned him thanks for this high-strained compliment, and assured him of the satisfaction he felt at being received into the protection of a person of his character and authority. He then mentioned the favourable decree granted by the shah to the English merchants, and observed, that it depended on the governor to see his majesty's pleasure executed. He afterwards asked, if the passage to Mesched was safe; the governor answered in the affirmative, and that he would send four choice soldiers with him, who should be bound for the safe delivery of his caravan at Mesched. Upon this our author returned him thanks, and retired.

Mr. Hanway now went to pay his respects to Nazeer Aga, of whose humanity and politeness he had received such signal proofs. This old man had been Nadir's companion, when he was only the chief of a party of robbers in the neighbouring mountains. He seemed too honest for Nadir's purpose, and his want of ambition secured him from most of the calamities common to favourites. His white beard gave a venerable air to his person, and

a manly cheerfulness rendered his company perfectly agreeable. The old man received him with great marks of kindness, and sent for some master-carriers, to agree about conveying his caravan to Mesched. Here Mr. Hanway first received a proof of the equivocating disposition of the modern Persians; and finding it was impossible to fix them to any thing, he took his leave for that time.

Mr. Hanway was visited a day or two after by several of the principal men of the place, who made their compliments by putting their hands on their breasts, and bowing the head. Those who are more familiar, press the palm of your hand between both theirs, and then raise them to their forehead, to express the high and cordial respect they have for your person. Most of the visitors had an air of importance, and spoke little, but after sitting and smoaking the caallean for a few minutes, took their leave.

The Persians are extremely fond of tobacco: theirs is yellow, and very mild, when compared with that of America; and they draw the smoke in prodigious quantities. The callean used on this occasion, is a glass vessel, resembling a decanter, filled about three parts with water. The tobacco being prepared, and made into a ball, is put into a silver utensil, not unlike a tea-cup, which has a tube, that reaches almost to the bottom of the water. Another tube is fixed to the neck of the vessel above the water, fastened to a leathern pipe, through which they draw the smoke, and as it passes through the water it is cool and pleasant.

Mr. Hanway entertained some of his guests, according to the custom of the country, with sweetmeats, of which they took a little, and gave the

remainder to their servants: these are often so numerous, that a treat of this kind will cost ten or twelve crowns.

The difficulties and delays made by the carriers, gave Mr. Hanway great vexation; at length, being persuaded by Nazeer Aga, he agreed to let the camel drivers set out with part of the goods, two or three days before him; as they alleged they could not keep pace with the horses. Accordingly, on the 10th, he delivered forty bales, sent an Armenian servant along with them, and appointed a place of rendezvous on the other side of the mountains.

Mr. Hanway then made a visit to the governor, who appeared perplexed and troubled. He said that he was providing horses to send the king's treasure, amounting to 17,000 crowns, to Casbin; and he now let our author know, that he could not spare him above one soldier. He was extremely startled at this, and used many arguments to persuade him to alter his resolution, but without effect. He immediately prepared to follow the first caravan, and got kedgavays, a kind of covered chairs, large enough for one person to sit in, which the Persians hang over camels in the manner of panniers, that he might accommodate any of his company, should they happen to fall sick, and provide for his own security against the extremity of the cold.

While he was giving the necessary orders, Nazeer Aga came and told him, that he must not depart, it was not a lucky hour. Mr. Hanway answered, that as he depended on that good Providence which at all times governs the world, he paid no regard to lucky hours, and would therefore go: but the other replying that he must not set out, he thought proper to submit. A dismal scene began to disclose it-

self: Nazeer Aga had hardly left him, when he heard the hoarse sound of trumpets, to call in the neighbouring inhabitants with their cattle. The shops were ordered to be shut up, and the townsmen to repair to the walls. Nazeer Aga immediately returned, and advised him to send for his ship; for that they were all in the utmost danger, from a rebellion which had broke out in the neighbourhood of the city; but this could not be done, for the vessel had sailed. Mr. Hanway desired him to send for the ten camels load of cloth, that it might return back to the city; but the old man told him, that none were permitted to go out; and that, for fear of an insurrection within the city, a strong guard was ordered to patrole the streets.

The next day the governor sent ten soldiers for the camels; but the enemy were in possession of the avenues, and the goods were actually lodged in a village, that belonged to Mahommed Khan Beg. Nazeer Aga, perfectly sensible of the dangerous situation of Mr. Hanway and his attendants, went to Mahommed Hassan Beg, who had always treated him with respect, in order to dissuade him, and his companions in this desperate enterprise, from persisting in it. The old man made use of all his eloquence, but in vain: they suffered him to return, without his being able to make any impression on them. Hitherto he had appeared undaunted; but he now seemed extremely disturbed, and as much concerned, as if he was that night to render up his accounts for his past life, and for the years that had rendered his beard so venerably hoary.

A besieged city, and a faithless and weak garrison, were things as new to Mr. Hanway as Persia and the Persians; but the dread he had conceived

of the barbarity of the Turkuman Tartars, made a deeper impression on his mind: the only hope that remained was, that it could answer no end to these barbarians to do violence to his person, since it could not conceal the robbery. His attendants would have persuaded him to put on a Persian habit; but he chose to remain without disguise.

The rebel army having advanced near the city, the governor and Nazeer Aga made their escape by night, in the disguise of peasants; the people, as all resistance would have been vain, submitted to the conquerors, and the city was delivered to Mahommed Hassan Beg without tumult.

Sadoc Aga, who was appointed general, with Mahommed Khan Beg, and fourteen persons of distinction, now came to the house where Mr. Hanway dwelt: he had collected his attendants into one room, where he waited to know his fate; from thence he sent a Tartar boy, who understood the Turkish language, to conduct these hostile visitors to him, and tell them that he hoped to be treated with humanity. They immediately entered, and assured him, that they had no intention to hurt him, but would, as soon as the new government was established, pay him for his goods; demanding, at the same time, to be informed where they were lodged, and requiring him to give them up his purse; but when they had counted the money it contained, they delivered it back. Mr. Hanway, however, had the address to conceal a purse of 160 crowns in gold.

It was now apparent to Mr. Hanway on what principles his pretended friend Myrza Mahommed had acted; he was in the secret of the rebellion at the time of his arrival, and had brought him into the city as a sheep to the slaughter: however, as he

had now nothing to lose but his life, he thought it best to dissemble his knowledge of his perfidy, and intreated him to recover for him the money he had advanced to the carriers, and he actually got back 150 crowns.

Baba Sadoc was now governor of the city; and Mr. Hanway secured him in his interest by a present of a piece of rich silk, which he had secreted with the money before-mentioned, and by this means obtained the possession of his chamber, from which he had been forced by the rebels. His purse was again demanded by Mahommed Khan Beg, and Mr. Hanway was obliged to give it to him. Two of the Turkuman chiefs were then brought into the room, whose habits were coarse, and their persons ill-favoured. These said to Mahommed Khan Beg, "You give us the merchandize of the Russians, will you not give us the Russians also? They will serve to keep our sheep." This speech made Mr. Hanway resolve to leave the city at any rate, fearing that if the Turkuman party should continue victorious, he should be carried as a slave into the country of those barbarians.

The Turkuman Tartars soon after quarrelled about the plunder. Fear now took place of tumultuous joy; the gates of the city were ordered to be shut, and no person allowed to pass in or out, without the knowledge of Mahomet Hassan Beg. Mr. Hanway, however, gave to that new governor a regular account of the real value of the goods, and received from him a bill for the amount, which was promised to be paid when the new government was established. The governor also ordered Myrza to provide him and his attendants a guard.

CHAP. III.

Mr. Hanway arrives at Balfrush; joins the shah's forces; retires before the Turkuman Tartars; is kindly received by Mr. Elton, and by Hadgee Zamon. The Persian manner of eating, and the nature of their beds. A description of the city of Casbin. The author's arrival at the Persian camp.

ON the 24th of January Mr. Hanway took leave of Astrabad, under the convoy of Myrza, his brothers, his two sons, and about twenty armed villagers; he carried with him all his baggage, and even his arms, and after a day's journey arrived safe at Koordiemalla, a village belonging to Myrza. The brother, whose character was not the most amiable, would have conducted Mr. Hanway to his house in the adjacent mountain; but he absolutely refused to go, in which resolution he was confirmed by the carriers, who expressed their fears of him, by saying, "God only knows of his secret retirements." Myrza, who imagined Mr. Hanway was still possessed of some things of value, thought it inconsistent with his interest to carry them off. His demure countenance, and strict observance of the letter of the law, served to cover the violation of substantial virtue. He had now got that unhappy gentleman in his power, and made no scruple to declare, that he would not answer for his safety a single mile farther; and that the carriers, who were under his jurisdiction, should not proceed, unless he left his baggage with him. This crafty old man, whose perfidiousness was exceeded by nothing but his hypocrisy, resolved to play a cunning game; if the rebellion succeeded, he would make a prize of

the baggage; and if it did not succeed, he would plead his loyalty by preserving it for Mr. Hanway. That gentleman saw himself entirely at his mercy, and therefore thought it best not to seem to mistrust him; therefore, after having secreted every thing that was portable, he delivered up the rest.

The next day Mr. Hanway advanced with his company about twenty English miles, and that night lay in the open fields. On the 26th, after travelling over ditches, and through pathless woods, he arrived at a ruined cottage, where he passed the night. His greatest concern there was to prevent the jackalls running away with his accoutrements: these animals, with which the woods abound, are extremely fond of leather, and several of them ran over his bed in the night. He was determined to part with his conductors as soon as possible; for they sowed rebellion wherever they came, the people receiving them as their deliverers, complaining aloud that the shah had reduced them to the extremest misery. They afterwards passed by the ruins of the palace at Farabad, once famous for being the residence of the Persian kings.

The carriers had engaged to conduct Mr. Hanway and his servants to Balfrush, the capital of Mazanderan, now about twenty miles distant; but hearing that Mahommed Khan, the admiral of the sea coast, was raising forces to oppose the Astrabad rebels, they would proceed no farther. He was now in a country surrounded by marshes, where no horses, nor any other cattle were to be had, and therefore desired them to conduct him at least to some place where he could procure horses; but this they also refused, alleging, that as he was near the sea, he might go by water. Accordingly, on the 27th, in

the morning, they conducted him to a poor fisherman's hut, on the sea coast, who had a leaky canoe, too small for six persons; besides, it could be navigated only with oars near the shore, where the surf ran so high, that it seemed impossible for such a boat to convey Mr. Hanway and his servants twenty miles. He therefore repeated his intreaties that they would either find him horses, according to their agreement, or conduct him where he might procure them. This demand they treated with contempt, which obliged him to threaten them to use force: upon which two of them, being armed with match-locks, lighted their matches; two had bows and arrows; and all of them, being six in number, had sabres, and put themselves in a posture of defence. Mr. Hanway collected his company, among whom were four muskets, a blunderbuss, and a pair of pistols, but he could scarcely depend on more than two of his servants. In this situation they parleyed for some time, till at length Mr. Hanway wisely submitted, and trusting to Providence, embarked in the canoe, when having gentle breezes from the east, he and his attendants got safe to Meschedizar. The next day he sent an Armenian servant to the admiral Mahommed Khan, to inform him of his arrival, and to beg his protection: on which he received a horse handsomely caparisoned, and four mules for his servants.

On the 30th he came to Balfrush, where he had the satisfaction to learn the opinion of the Persian merchants, that the shah would make good his loss. Mahommed Khan congratulated him on his escape with life, and on his arrival within his jurisdiction. But the next day Sadoc Aga having advanced at the head of a party of Turkumans, within a few

miles of the city, Mr. Hanway waited on the admiral, who now seemed cold to his interest, and complained that he did not know but that the next day might be his last, as he was neither in a condition to fight, nor dared to retire for fear of his master's displeasure. Our author resolved now to depend no longer on the khan's promises; but to hire horses, mules, or even asses, where he could get them: but this he soon found was impossible; for the greatest part of the people had fled with their most valuable effects, and the rest were preparing to follow their example. Under these circumstances he had nothing to do but to prepare for the conquerors a second time, or to walk off by himself unattended. The next day Mahommed Khan sent him a horse miserably poor and distempered: he was in some doubt whether he should accept of him or not; but at length he took his leave of his interpreters and servants, offering them what money they should have occasion for, and giving them the rebel passport, he recommended them to Providence.

The Tartars entered one gate, as he went out of the other. Mr. Hanway fell in with a party, which conducted the baggage of Mahommed Khan, who, with his few forces, soon followed: it was impossible for our author to keep pace with him. The Tartar boy followed him on foot, but soon grew tired, and earnestly intreated him to take him up behind him. However, before they got six miles, the horse's hind-quarters gave way, and he set upon his tail, like a dog, so that they were both obliged to dismount. Mr. Hanway now hardly knew what method to pursue: he had wrapped his body round with soft Persian sashes, to defend him from the weather, which at that season is generally severe

in those parts, so that he was but in a bad condition for walking. He had no guide, and understood but few words of the Tartar language; however, by the assistance of the Tartar boy, who spoke Turkish and Russ, he found his way to the sea-coast, carrying a blunderbuss and a pair of pistols. At length, to his great joy, the khan's company halting, he came up with them, and procured some shelter from the weather, with a matt to lie upon. By this time Mr. Hogg, his clerk, and his Russian menial servant came up with him, having had better fortune than their master, for they had rode on horseback with the khan's retinue.

Early the next day Mr. Hanway sent to the khan, to let him know that it was impossible to proceed on the horse he had sent him: he then ordered others, but he demanded above five times the value. Mr. Hanway knew that the possession of them would be precarious, and finding a person who offered to supply him with better horses for hire, declined the khan's proposal. He now proceeded a short day's journey to a little village on the sea-coast, where he halted, and was again deprived of his horse. The khan there observing the beauty of his pistols, which were mounted with silver, desired the loan of them, alleging that he was going with a party to reconnoitre the rebels. Mr. Hanway begged his acceptance of them, reminding him at the same time, that neither himself nor the three persons who were yet with him, had any carriage but what depended on accident. Upon this he again assured him that he would take care of them. But after a few hours absence, he returned in some confusion, and ordered all the avenues of the woods to be guarded, to prevent a surprise. Mr. Hanway

had not eaten any thing for near forty hours, except a few parched peas, so that he was obliged to beg what he dared not buy.

The men and baggage being collected within the walls of the house where the khan was lodged, Mr. Hanway concluded they either intended a secret flight, or to defend themselves in case of an attack: he therefore joined them, and repeated his intreaties for horses whenever they should march; on which the khan bid him not be uneasy, and promised that he would not leave any of them behind: but when night came on they began their march, and our author had the mortification to find, that every thing, even to the least valuable baggage, was carried off, great part of it on very good horses, while himself, Mr. Hogg, the Russian servant, and little boy, were left behind. He had thought that a present of a pair of pistols of sixty crowns value, would have been sufficient to procure the loan of a few bad horses, for three or four days; but where generosity is a stranger, gratitude has seldom any admittance. Trusting to the goodness of Providence, he resolved to follow the khan, to try if he could yet procure relief. He had not strength to walk far, and was stopped by a deep river. He happily found a ferry, and having passed it, entered into a wood where the road was deep and marshy. It rained hard, and the night was very dark; but the baggage-horses being heavy, and moving slowly, he came up to them, and having kept them company near four miles, was so spent with fatigue, that, finding no other expedient, he resolved to seize the bridle of the horse on which the khan himself was mounted, and to try if the word shah had any magic to bring him to that

sense of his duty, which neither his promise nor the dictates of humanity had yet produced. Having collected some broken words, and taken the shah's decree out of his pocket, he advanced towards the khan, and calling him by his name, he halted. Our author's situation pleaded his cause without the assistance of many words, and the khan ordered his secretary to take him up behind him.

Thus mounted, he went on slowly for some miles, till the khan ordered a horse, loaded with baggage, to be delivered, for which he was to pay fifty crowns, though it was too dark to discover whether it was a horse or any other animal. One of the conductors of the baggage had compassion on the Tartar boy, and took him up, and Mr. Hogg and the Russian servant had hitherto strength to walk; but at length Mr. Hogg complained that he could go no farther, on which Mr. Hanway gave him the horse; but was so little able to walk, that he was soon obliged to desire him to dismount, and left him behind.

The khan's apprehensions of the Turkumans carried him on from seven in the evening till the same hour next morning; when, after a short refreshment, he continued his march till four in the evening. The darkness of the approaching night had been increased by continual rain, while the wind, the beating of the waves on the shore, and the apprehension of a savage enemy, added horror to our author's fatigues.

The next day and night they travelled twenty hours, and at length halted at a village to refresh themselves, where Mr. Hanway hired a barber to shave him, who, being asked if he knew that he was a Christian, and consequently unclean, left him

in the midst of his work. Our author could hardly forbear laughing at the figure he made on this occasion, he was indeed literally unclean, for his clothes were very dirty, they not having been off his back for thirteen days. He was now obliged to forget that tenderness which his condition seemed to require; and to lie on the bare earth, though sometimes he had the fortune to procure a little straw. The inroads of the Caspian Sea, and the torrents from the mountains, had formed many channels of water, some of which were hardly passable. The north wind also made so great a surge on the shore, that many horses belonging to the company were thrown down by its violence, and their riders in danger of being drowned. At length he obtained a discharge from the baggage under which his horse laboured, but he found him so weak, that he chose to trust to his own legs in passing these channels, where he seldom escaped without being wet to the middle.

In the evening they arrived at Espuchin, a little village on the sea-shore, situated in a very marshy wood, abounding in ditches, with the houses scattered in a wild irregular manner. Mr. Hanway having taken a lodging, resolved to pay a visit to the khan; but the night suddenly coming on, he knew not which way to take, so that he wandered a considerable time among the ditches and bogs. After being extremely fatigued and perplexed, he discovered a light, made up to it, and obtained the information he wanted. He would now have gladly cleaned himself, but that was impossible; the khan seemed extremely surprised at seeing him, and Mr. Hanway could not explain to him the reason of so extraordinary a visit, but desired to be conducted to

his own lodgings. The most stupid and ungenerous have their fits of benevolence; our author had the pleasure to see victuals set before him, with water to wash, and a pan of charcoal to warm him. At length he was conducted to his lodgings, where he found his Russian servant, who had supported himself under his fatigue, and, being very faithful, had been in the utmost anxiety on his master's account.

The next day the khan, having made a forced march, thought himself out of danger; for Sadoc Aga, with the Turkumans, had desisted from the pursuit; the khan, therefore, gave his women in charge to Shahverdie Beg, and went to Tuniesbune. Shahverdie Beg, who had before shown Mr. Hanway some instances of his good nature, being now detached from the khan, treated him with greater civility; but having no conveniences of life with him, no more than related to his own person, he could supply him with nothing but provisions. In Persia it is not customary for any man in travelling to approach the women, except their lord or his servants: but the peculiar circumstances they were in, prevented a scrupulous regard to this practice; and Mr. Hanway had the office, which is not the most dignified in that empire, of guarding the women with his blunderbuss. The roads through the woods were still very marshy, while the sand on the shore, and the trees which the sea had washed down, rendered travelling very disagreeable; but the temperate quality of the air was extremely refreshing. Mr. Hanway now first observed the delightful situation of many recesses in the mountains, where they have plenty of fine running streams, with a profusion of vines, orange and lemon-trees.

In twenty-three days since the city of Astrabad

was taken by the rebels, Mr. Hanway had not enjoyed an hour of security or unbroken sleep. He was now drawing near to Langarood, which he had left seven weeks before, and was as desirous of seeing it again as if it had been his home; when Mr. Elton, being informed he was on the road, sent Mr. Loftus, his interpreter, with a servant and one of his best horses to meet him.

Our author, on his arrival at Langarood, was received by Mr. Elton with open arms, and congratulated on his having escaped with liberty and life. His legs and feet were much swelled and bruised, his boots not having been off for sixteen days, and he was obliged to stay some time to provide fresh clothing, he not having saved any part of what he carried to Astrabad.

Mr. Hanway having informed Mr. Elton, where he had left Matteuse, his interpreter, and the other Armenian servants, with Mr. Hogg, his clerk, whose situation, he was afraid, would expose him to some misfortune, Mr. Elton immediately sent servants and horses in quest of him, and after a few days he was brought to Langarood. He had overtaken Mahommed Khan, who had provided him a horse, for which he was to pay a considerable price, though the beast fell under him before he had advanced two miles. Mr. Hogg now seemed like a man expiring in a consumption: he had been two days and three nights exposed to the cold and rain, without any food and shelter; five times robbed, and at last left almost naked, and being often in danger of his life, was at length relieved by the charity of some dervises, whose retreat in the mountains he had the good fortune to discover. But Matteuse, and the other Armenians left at Balfrush, did not

come home till three weeks after, and escaped these severe hardships. At that town they received a passport from Sadoc Aga, under his seal, the pompous style of which, considering his circumstances, may give an idea of the idiom of the oriental languages, as well as of Persian folly. "To the victorious armies be it known, that Matteuse the Armenian is here. Let him not be molested, but live under our shadow."

Mr. Hanway now took leave of Mr. Elton, and set out for Reschd. He soon found that though Ghilan was said to have suffered less than any other province of Persia by the wars and cruelties of Nadir, yet the villages were in a ruinous condition. From Langarood to Lahijan is seven miles. The latter being situated on an eminence, is esteemed the most healthy place in the province; for here the mountains open a passage for the wind. The rains had filled a large spot of ground, and formed a square regular piece of water, in which were abundance of wild fowl. In the centre stood a grove upon a rising ground, that served to beautify the prospect, and render it as delightful as the rudeness of the season would admit. Here he was received by Hadgee Zamon, who was distinguished for his good sense, as well as his authority in that place.

The Hahegee* complained aloud of the shah's cruelty, and of the inhumanity of those employed by him. Supper being brought in, a servant presented a bason of water, and, with a napkin hung over his shoulders, went to every one in the company, and poured water on their hands to wash. A

* This title is given to all who have gone in pilgrimage to Mecca.

large salver, in the form of a tea-board, was set before every person, covered with a plate of pleo, on which was a small quantity of minced meat, mixed up with fruits and spices. There were also plates of comfits, several china basons of sherbets, as sweet and sour, and other waters, with cakes of rice, and others of wheat flour, on which were sprinkled the seed of poppies, and others of the like nature. As they esteem it an abomination to cut any kind of bread or meat, after it is dressed, these cakes are made thin, that they may be easily broken with the hand; and their meat, which is generally mutton or fowl, is so prepared, that they divide it with their fingers. When every thing is set in order before them, they eat fast, and without any ceremony with their fingers, greasing their hands and smearing their beards.

Supper was no sooner over, than warm water was brought to wash, which being done, they resumed their discourse. And it is worthy of remark, that when the oldest man in the company speaks, though he be poor, and sits at the lower end of the room, all the rest pay a strict attention to what he says.

The company retired soon after supper, and beds were taken out of niches made in the wall for that purpose, and laid on the carpets. They consisted of only two thick cotton quilts, one of which was folded double, and served as a mattrass, and the other as a covering, with a large flat pillow for the head. They usually sleep in their under garment and drawers: but the princes and other great men use sheets, and other delicate appurtenances of a bed, though with less parade than is practised in Europe; nor do they crowd their apartments with superfluous furniture.

On the 18th Mr. Hanway set forward for Reschd, well pleased with his last night's entertainment, and the next day arrived at that city, where he was visited by two English gentlemen, who resided there, from whom he received great marks of friendship. He had also a visit from three French missionaries, who were sensible polite men. On the 20th Mr. Hanway paid a visit to Ordo Kouli Beg, governor of the province, who was an old man, and received him with great civility. As the customs of Europe are known in this province, he immediately ordered a chair to be set for him. The apartment was full of people, seated on felts of camel's hair spread round the squares of the floor, the servants and soldiers standing in the area below. After some conversation, in which our author related the misfortunes that had befallen him, he took his leave.

He here provided clothes, bedding, kitchen furniture, tents, mules, horses, as well as sabres and firelocks for his five attendants; upon which occasion he found that large mules are as dear there as they are in Portugal, where one cost him £62. 10s. but they are incomparably the most useful animals in rocky countries, being very sure-footed, and able to carry great burdens for long journeys. In the neighbourhood of Reschd are fields of rice, and plantations of mulberry trees: some of the mountains are covered with cypress-trees, and others are composed of naked rocks piled upon each other to a great height, while the valleys are interspersed with villages, lawns, and arable lands.

On the 26th he pursued his journey, and the next day reached Roodbar, on the banks of the river Kizilizan, where the country is covered with olive, orange and other trees. This place is situated on

the declivity of a hill, from whence runs a stream of water, that is conveyed by channels to the roots of the olive trees, which the peasants here carefully cultivate, and though it was yet February, the heat rendered travelling very fatiguing.

On the 28th he and his company passed the Kizilizan with his baggage in canoes, and they swam over the horses and mules; but the stream was so rapid that it carried some of them near a quarter of a mile. As he ascended the mountains he found the climate much altered, and as the wind blew hard, he and his attendants were obliged to dismount, for fear of being blown down the precipices, the path, in many places, not being two feet wide. The mountain rises steep on one side, and the valley, in which are some branches of the Kizilizan, is on the other. That day he travelled eighteen miles; next day the roads were very bad, and he was obliged to cross the river thirty times in two hours, as the path conducted him; while the rocks, on both sides, rose perpendicular from the water.

On the first of March he travelled three farsangs, or twelve miles, over the mountains, and at length came to the great plain of Casbin, then covered three feet deep with snow, which reflected such brightness from the rays of the sun, as to be extremely painful to the eyes. The little villages on this plain are built so that half the houses are under the surface of the earth, and the tops of them formed into a cone, the better to carry off the snow. He that night took up his lodging in a ruined stable, and the next day set out before sun-rise, to avoid the danger of being blinded, as well as to enjoy the benefit of a firmer road.

On his arrival at Casbin, he paid his compli-

ments to Hahdgee Abdulcrim, the greatest merchant in that place, who provided him a handsome house near his own, and told him that it was impossible, at that time, to proceed on his journey, on account of the snow.

The houses here are generally quite below the surface of the earth, as are many of the gardens below the level of the adjacent lands, in order to enjoy the convenience of water: for instead of bringing water to their houses, as we do, they level their habitations to the water. They, in general, build with bricks dried in the sun, and their cement is a strong lime. Their roofs are flat, and it is not uncommon to sleep on the house-top. These buildings are enclosed with a mud wall: they consist of two divisions; the outer one stands in a large area, and is a spacious room, called the Aviam, one side of which is open, and supported with pillars: they here dispatch their business, and eat, when they do not retire to the womens' apartments. Niches in the wall supply the place of tables: the floors are covered with large carpets; on the sides of the room hang felts about a yard broad, and two or three yards long, made with either wool or camel's hair very soft, and used to sit upon. In the wings of this apartment are small rooms for lodging, and in the yard are the servants' rooms and the stables. Behind these is another building inclosed by a wall: this is the haram or womens' apartments, into which no man enters except the master of the house.

On the 3d of March, Mr. Hanway visited the hahdgee, who entertained him at dinner with milk differently prepared, cheese somewhat like our curds, comfits and cakes of bread. They here make but two meals a day, the most considerable of which is

in the evening. The hahdgee enquired how he liked Persia, and on Mr. Hanway's mentioning the usage he had met with at Astrabad, he assured him that the shah would do him justice; but he complained of the poverty and misery to which the people were reduced, and then added, "Casbin had twelve thousand houses inhabited, and now it has only one thousand one hundred; see from this eminence how this poor city is in ruins! nor is Ispahan much better; that city had formerly an hundred thousand houses, many of them not much inferior in splendour to the royal palace, which is the glory of the world: but I am assured that only five thousand are now inhabited. Alas! sir, you know not to what misery we are reduced." To this Mr. Hanway replied, "I am very sorry to hear your complaints, and to see so much reason for them; for Casbin indeed appears in ruins. When the sovereign has accomplished his designs, surely he will change his system: he can never mean to destroy the people; for that would be in effect to destroy himself."

Mr. Hanway soon after taking his leave, went to see the new palace built by Nadir Shah in that city, adjoining to the old one. Before the entrance is an avenue of lofty trees, three hundred yards long, and fifteen or twenty broad. It is encompassed by a thick and lofty wall, about an English mile and a half in circumference, with only one entrance, which is an arched gate. Within it are four large squares, adorned with lofty trees, fountains, and running water. The apartments are raised about six feet from the ground; the aviam, or open hall, is in the centre, and shuts in with folding doors. The rooms are ornamented in the Indian taste, and the ceilings formed into small squares,

embellished with moral sentences in very legible characters. Most of the windows are of painted glass, in which the figures are drawn in their proper shades, and executed with great art; but many of the floors are only formed of hard earth, and others of a composition of beaten stone: these defects are, however, concealed by the constant use of carpets.

The haram makes a magnificent appearance; it consists of a square within its own wall, which is of brick, about thirty feet high, and two and a half thick; there are four distinct apartments, in some of which are fountains that serve to moderate the heat of summer, by giving the air a refreshing coolness. The rooms are lined with stucco, coloured in the Indian taste, with birds and flowers, painted with the most beautiful colours, and adorned with gilt edgings; but the chimney-pieces are in a mean taste, and some are ornamented with looking-glasses, in small squares, of different dimensions, set into the walls. There are a few rooms under ground, admirably contrived for coolness. Near the haram is the eunuch's apartment, remarkable only for its having but one door, and that a very strong one. Here are likewise some old apartments built by Shah Abbas, in which are some bad paintings, done by European painters: the Persians themselves are as ignorant of shades as the Chinese.

The city of Casbin is inclosed by a wall above a mile in each square, that has a great number of turrets, and port-holes for arrows. It is famous in history for being one of the chief cities of ancient Parthia, the residence of many of the Persian kings, and the burial-place of Hephestion, the favourite of Alexander the Great.

heart a prayer, which, if repeated right in the presence of the shah, would divert his wrath; but if falsely, increase it. He talked of the force of words, and the power of the Almighty; he had also another spell, which was the repetition of ten particular letters of the alphabet, as he entered the royal tent, closing a finger at each, and keeping his fist clenched till he came before the throne; when he was suddenly to open his hands, and by the discharge of his magic artillery to subdue the king's wrath.

It is indeed amazing to see in how many instances the Persians demonstrate the highest superstition. The hands, with the fingers interchanged, and some particular posture of the body, are considered as full of magic power. Sneezing they hold a most happy omen; and they fancy that the meteors that resemble falling stars, are the blows of the angels on the heads of the devils. Cats are held in great esteem, but dogs in abomination, so that they are never permitted to come into any room, though they sometimes use them at their diversions. The Turks are not behind them in their folly. In the reign of Shah Abbas, the grand seignior sent to that prince to desire, that as none but their prophet and his children had been dressed in green, none of his subjects might be permitted to wear that colour, especially in stockings. To this Shah Abbas, who was a man of understanding, made answer, that if the grand seignior would prevent the dogs pissing in the grass in Turkey, he would comply with the request.

On the 17th they arrived about noon at a small village, where an advanced guard of the army was posted to protect the villages, as is customary when

the camp is near. The commander of the forces declared that he could not find quarters for the Persians in Mr. Hanway's company, and insisted on their going directly to the camp; but on their declaring that they had paid for every thing they had upon the road, and that they were also charged with the care of Mr. Hanway, they were suffered to enter the village.

The fears of the Persian convoy increased as they approached nearer the camp, and the next day they took their leave of our author with sorrowful countenances, demanding of their conductor, why he hastened them: "Dost thou know," said one of them, "that to condemned persons every hour of life is of great moment?" Our author now sent his interpreter to the shah's minister, appointed for the reception of strangers, to inquire where he should pitch his tent: but though they were so very near the shah, some of the soldiers in this village did not refrain from calling him rascal in plain terms. On the 20th he set out for the camp, and having entered it, pitched his tent near the royal standard.

CHAP. V.

A description of the Persian camp. Of the shah's women; their manner of travelling. Journey from the Persian camp to Langarood. A description of the country. An account of the Persian couriers; of the Persian women, their marriages and domestic slavery. A description of the province of Ghilan.

OUR author had now the satisfaction of learning, that the rebellion at Astrabad was suppressed; but he had scarcely fixed his tent, when an accident

had like to have deprived him of his life. For his greater security he had caused his fire-arms to be placed on the back part of the tent, and was walking in a pensive manner, when one of the servants moving a piece, it went off, and he narrowly escaped being shot. He was extremely alarmed, lest the report of the musket, so near the royal pavilion, should have given offence; his own, being of cotton, was set on fire, but it was soon extinguished, and this accident was happily attended with no other consequence.

He immediately waited on Mustapha Khan, who received him with great professions of kindness, obliged him to dine with him, and assured him that justice should be done him. In the meanwhile he delivered his petition to the chancery, and was told, that it was believed his majesty would pardon the Persians, in whose company he came to Casbin, merely to do him honour.

The shah passing from his haram to his tent of audience, gave Mr. Hanway an opportunity of seeing him; he was plainly dressed, except in precious stones. Some days after, the royal standard being taken down, as a signal for striking the tents, the army decamped, marching about two leagues and a half north-east, where another tent being prepared for the shah, Mr. Hanway pitched his, in company with the whole camp. In marching, the greatest part of the army kept in a collected, but irregular body: the followers of the camp covered several miles. The elephants and camels were employed only in carrying great burdens: the last are of several kinds, but the most serviceable are those with two bunches on their backs.

Mr. Hanway having delivered the bill he had

received from Mahommed Hassan, the chief of the rebellion at Astrabad, to the amount of his loss, received a decree, by which it was ordered, that he should give the particulars of his loss, in writing, to Behbud Khan, the shah's general in Astrabad, who had orders to deliver to him whatever part of the goods might possibly be found, and to pay the deficiency out of the sequestered estates of the rebels without delay, to the last penny. This was not quite what Mr. Hanway wished for, because it laid him under the necessity of returning to Astrabad.

Being now easy on the subject of his loss, he rode through the Persian camp, attended by his interpreter and another person, and informed himself of every particular relating to it. The tents of the ministers and officers were placed in the front, near that of the shah, that they might be always at hand. The quarter allotted for his tents was very large; before it was an avenue, one side of which consisted of a line of uniform tents, serving for guard-rooms: and on the other were the tents in which the affairs of the chancery, and other public concerns, were transacted. The pavilion, in which the shah usually sat to give audience, was placed about two hundred yards behind this avenue. It was an oblong supported by three poles, adorned at the top with gilt balls. The covering was of brick-coloured cotton cloth, and the lining of clouded silk. It had no appearance of magnificence, and the front was always open, even in the worst weather; but when it was very cold several pots of charcoal were placed in the middle. The floor was covered with carpets, and the shah sat cross-legged, sometimes upon these, and at others on a sofa. The back part of the tent was divided into small apart-

ments, and on each side was a kind of alley, through which the attendants might walk round. At a considerable distance behind were the shah's private tents, to some of which he retired at his meals. Almost contiguous to these were the tents of the shah's ladies, which had several curtains that formed separate apartments, one within another. The boundaries of the shah's quarter were occupied by his eunuchs and female slaves; and almost his whole circuit, especially towards the residence of the women, was surrounded by a strong fence of network, round which patroled the night-guard, who severely punished all intruders.

The camp-market begins at the end of the square fronting the guard-rooms, and is about half a mile long. It consists of tents on each side like a street, supplied with a variety of provisions, apparel, horse-furniture, and other necessaries, which are brought thither for sale. The officer, who has the care of this market, rides up and down to keep order, and when any disputes arise, the contending parties are brought before the superintendant of the market, who acquires a considerable income from rents, fees, presents, and extortions. Many of the shop-keepers are little better than common suttlers. The great dealers are under the protection of some of the courtiers, who are themselves the principal traders in flour and rice. As these great men have several supernumerary servants, camels and mules, they send them to distant provinces for rice, which they bring to the camp for sale, and make vast profits of it. The shop-keepers, who presume to interfere with them in this branch of trade, are generally marked out for destruction.

The regimental colours are a narrow slip of silk

sloped to a point, some red, some white, and some striped. Several hours before the moving of the camp, one of the standards was taken down by way of signal, and carried to the place where the new camp was to be pitched. The bulk of the army often moved an hour or two before the shah; for in removing from one camp to another he sometimes galloped the whole way.

Nadir had about sixty women, and nearly as many eunuchs, who generally rode about his person, and kept pace with him. Before him went his running-footmen, preceded by the chanters; and before them the watch-guard. These spread a mile or two, and gave notice of the shah's approach, by crying out, Yertie, or make way: but when they met with persons in their route, rivers, precipices and rocks were no excuse, they drove at them with their maces, and made all before them fly at their approach. This was only when he travelled with his women; for when he travelled without them, people were permitted to come nearer. His ladies, and indeed other ladies of distinction, when in Nadir's company, rode on white horses, in the same manner as the men; but at other times were carried on camels, seated in machines resembling a covered-waggon, hung like panniers over a pack-saddle, and entirely concealed under a covering of crimson cloth. Women of an inferior rank rode on horses and mules, and mixed among the crowd; they had a linen veil over their faces, and wore great coats like the men, but the veils of the poorest covered their whole bodies. The Usbeck Tartar women were not so scrupulous about hiding their faces as the Persians. The females in the camp, except when on desperate enterprises, are about one to ten males.

Nadir had four complete sets of horse-furniture, one mounted with pearls, another with rubies, a third with emeralds, and a fourth with diamonds of a prodigious size, many of them being as large as a pigeon's egg. Mr. Hanway was equally surprised at their immense value, and the barbarous taste in which they were set. In a visit they made to Mustapha Khan, he mentioned to him the prodigious value of the shah's horse-furniture; and observed, that the jewels in Europe appear incomparably brighter and neater set; and that if his majesty would trust him with one of those bridles, he would procure a complete set of horse-furniture to be made in Europe, which should exceed any thing that had yet appeared in the world: but the khan replied, "My master has not patience enough to wait till it could be finished."

The officers, and even the soldiers of rank, had the bridles of their horses mounted with silver, with a mane-piece of plate, and an ornamental chain; likewise the sword, belts, and leathern accoutrements, were mounted with the same metal. The handles of their battle-axes were generally studded or covered with thin silver plates. In the sashes about their waists they wore a knife, the handle and case of which were covered with silver. Some officers and persons of distinction were obliged to wear gold-cased knives, and some of their great men had silver stirrups. Thus Nadir endeavoured to keep them dependant, by obliging them to expend their money in articles of vanity.

The respect shown Mr. Hanway by Mustapha Khan, who was considered as the most upright man in the Persian court, induced that gentleman to make him a present of a gold repeating watch, with

some fine cloth and rich silk: this he seemed unwilling to receive; but Mr. Hanway insisting on his accepting it as a mark of his gratitude, he presented him some jewels in return, which had once adorned the cap of some unhappy Indian. The principal jewel consisted of a large sapphire set in gold, and encompassed with diamonds; but these last were small, and bored through in the manner in which the Asiatics spoil their precious stones; the reverse of this was enamelled with flowers.

On the 27th of March Mr. Hanway set out from the camp, and besides his other attendants, had two soldiers given him by Mustapha Khan for an escort. Though he now took a different road from that he passed before, he had every where the melancholy prospect of vast tracts of excellent arable land lying waste, in one of the finest climates in the world: the houses of the deserted villages supplied only fuel, and he saw several marauders pulling them down for that purpose. The next day he passed through a ruined village, covered on the opposite side with an inaccessible mountain: here he discovered five persons, who, as he approached, ran to their horses, which were ready saddled, and tied to trees. These fellows took to their arms, as if they meant to attack him, while he prepared for his defence; but his two soldiers seemed to have his preservation so little at heart, that they loitered behind, and entered into a parley with them. This gave Mr. Hanway some uneasiness, and induced him to stop upon an eminence, attended by one servant, to see the issue of their conference, while the rest of his company were gone forward; but his interpreter soon rode back full speed, and blaming him for staying behind, declared, that if they did not

keep together they might all be cut off; for he had discovered that four of those men were gone round the hill, while one kept the soldiers in talk. His fears were not without foundation; for the soldiers, who soon came up, had purchased a stolen horse from these robbers, who acknowledged, that the reputation the Europeans had acquired for their dexterity in the use of fire-arms, had been their greatest security.

On the 29th they ascended the mountain, and had no sooner reached the summit than they found the air so extremely rarefied, and the wind so piercing, that it was with difficulty they drew their breath. In the valley they found a very different climate, and Abar appeared before them in a delightful situation.

This city, however, was much in the same circumstances as the others; and it was not without difficulty they obtained a lodging. The mountains, over which lay their direct road, being still covered with snow, they were under the necessity of going near three leagues about; and in the space of four leagues, the road was so formed, that they were obliged to pass a branch of the Kizilizan sixty-five times; one of the company having the curiosity to count them. This river was about thirty feet wide, and two or three deep; the stream was rapid, and the bottom covered with rocks and stones. After a journey of ten hours, they arrived at a desolate caravansera, where they found nothing but water; they had, however, provided themselves at a village on the road, where the inhabitants entertained them with great hospitality.

On the 31st they travelled near ten hours without finding any provisions; and on their approach-

ing the mountains that cover Ghilan, they found the reflection of the sun so strong, that it was with difficulty they defended themselves from the scorching heat. At length their drooping spirits, almost exhausted with fatigue and hunger, were supported by the sight of Arsevil, a small village; but they had the mortification to find only one narrow path to it, which was fenced up with large fir-trees, and a great bank of earth. This raised a suspicion that the village was in a state of rebellion, and that it might be dangerous to force their way into it: necessity, however, silenced their scruples, and with much difficulty they removed the impediment, when they found that the villagers had made use of this expedient from their fear of the shah's couriers, who without pity take, and without mercy ride, the horses of the poor inhabitants. On Mr. Hanway's entering into the village, he and his attendants were received with kindness; for the peasants knew that they would pay for whatever they wanted: but they had not been in the village two hours before eight couriers arrived, armed with muskets, though they generally wear only sabres.

These couriers wear a white sash, girded from their waists many times round their bodies; they take horses wherever they can find them, which they do not always return to the owners: they even dismount travellers, and often leave them to walk with their baggage. This occasions their being sometimes repulsed and severely treated, though as they are employed in the shah's business, an entire submission is required. Post-masters were supplied, by the shah's orders, with thirty, forty, or fifty horses; but the demand for them is frequently greater than they are able to supply. One of these

post-masters being charged by Nadir with not furnishing his couriers, answered, "That I have not supplied them is most certain, because for every ten horses you provided, you sent me twenty couriers; a man had better die at once than live to serve a rascal:" and immediately stabbed himself. The shah cried out, "He is a brave fellow, save him;" but it was too late.

While Mr. Hanway was at this village, he observed youths of twenty years of age, armed with military authority, giving blows on the heads of those, whose grey beards entitled them to reverence; this was done frequently for very trifling offences, and sometimes for no offence at all: nor could he restrain his own Armenian servants from following their example, till he assured them they should receive ten strokes for one.

Mr. Hanway and his company having refreshed themselves, left the village in the evening, taking their route over a high mountain, whence they descended into a pleasant and fruitful valley, and crossing the Kizilizan, took up their lodgings at two leagues distance from Arsevil. Spring was already advanced to its highest bloom; the brightness of the sky, the water pouring from the rocks, the variegated verdure of the trees on the mountains, with the lawns and corn-fields, filled the mind with the most pleasing ideas. Their eyes were frequently entertained with the most noble and extensive prospects, bounded by stupendous mountains rising gradually on each other; some had their summits covered with snow, while others concealed their heads in the clouds. In the valleys indeed appeared many ruined cities: but the serpentine course of the Kizilizan, with a variety of lawns and

woods, finely diversified the scene. The mind is naturally delighted with the return of spring; but to Mr. Hanway it afforded the more pleasure, as the past winter had been attended with such circumstances of distress. How happy, thought he, might Persia be, did not a general depravity of manners involve her inhabitants in such inextricable confusion; but how much more happy are those countries whose governments are not despotic, and whose people are inspired with sentiments of virtue and true religion, which alone can blunt the edge of those calamities to which human life is subject. The desolate country through which he had travelled for so many days, rendered the beauties of Ghilan the more striking. Arsevil was bordered by olive-trees: the walks in the gardens were inclosed with vines, and the fruit-trees were in blossom: here were few proofs of art; but nature, with a little industry, seemed to furnish all that was necessary or pleasant.

On the 1st of April Mr. Hanway passed through the narrow paths in the mountains that guard the province of Ghilan, in the view of many pleasant valleys, and the next day arrived at Reschd, where he had the pleasure of seeing some of his friends. On the 4th he set out for Langarood, and arriving there the next morning, was kindly received by Mr. Elton and the two French missionaries, who were then with him. The naval preparations carried on there, were conducted by admiral Mahommed Khan, who was extremely ignorant in maritime affairs, and finding that Mr. Hanway was returned with success from the camp, he seemed afraid of his resenting his former conduct, being apprehensive that the value of the pistols he had presented to him

was greater than it really was, and being ignorant how to use the screw-barrels, he offered to return them, to which Mr. Hanway had no objection. Policy did not require the appearance of resentment on his part, and charity seldom warrants the reality of it. A mind superior to the injuries we suffer by the weakness or wickedness of others, seems to be the surest mark of that generosity of spirit, which Christianity requires, and bids fairest to secure that tranquillity, which, in a great measure, constitutes our temporal happiness.

Mr. Hanway was here visited by a mullah, or Persian priest, accompanied by Shahverdie Beg, the person to whom he had been so much obliged. They entertained him with several quotations out of their poets, particularly with regard to the pleasures and miseries of life arising from the society of women, and expressed themselves upon this subject with great delicacy. Among other remarks, the mullah observed, that though their law permitted a man to have four wives, and as many concubines as he pleased, yet they always considered him as the most virtuous man, who confined himself to one wife, without any concubine.

A woman in Persia, before her marriage, is examined, with respect to her person, by the mother, or some other female relation of the man; as the man is by the parents or friends of the woman. A report being made, the woman's parent demands the price, which being paid, the kazzi or judge, or where there is none, the mullah marries them, very often without their having seen each other. The Persians may marry for a month, or any time agreed upon between the parties, and they are at liberty to separate when the time is expired; but the woman

must not marry again immediately, unless she is certain of her not being with child. If she proves pregnant, the man is obliged to support her for a year; and if the child is a male, it is his; if a female, hers. Marriage, however, does not entitle the women to any distinguished privileges; for they are considered as little more than servile creatures, formed for the pleasure of their lords.

The women of Ghilan are very industrious; the common sort are often seen abroad without veils, planting rice, and performing other offices of agriculture: and at home they are employed in spinning, and in different manufactures. Those in this province are fair, and their eyes and hair are black: but there, as in other places, they blacken their eyes by a drug, which leaves a blackness on the eyelids. They have a great esteem for large eyes; their features are small, their stature is low, and they have something delicate in their form: but, in general, the Georgians are most esteemed for their personal charms. Their children are very handsome when young, but the boys soon change their complexion. The girls, who do not labour in the fields, are seldom seen abroad, except in the morning, before sun-rise, and then are covered with veils, which reach down to their feet. When a lady of distinction travels on horseback, she is not only veiled, but has generally a servant, who runs or rides before her, to clear the way; and on such occasions the men always turn their backs till the women are passed; for it is thought the greatest ill manners to look at them.

The Persians are as much governed by outward appearance as any other nation; hence our factors in the south of Persia have, from motives of policy,

carried this affair much farther than those who come from the cold regions of Russia; they have had their gold caalleans, rich sashes, running-footmen, led horses, &c. Shah Sultan Hassein gave them a noble palace and fine gardens; and, at a public entertainment made for that prince, the factors once spread the ground with scarlet cloth, for him to walk on from the royal palace to their own, and afterwards gave it to the soldiers. This conduct was political, among so ostentatious a people as the Persians, and, doubtless, had good effects.

Ghilan is covered on one side by a range of mountains, nearly in the form of a crescent. What greatly adds to its beauty is the abundance of timber, and the romantic scenes it every where affords. At the foot of the mountains, to the eastward, near the bay, is a hot bath, much esteemed for its medicinal virtues; the water of which is of a yellowish colour. All the passes into Ghilan are very difficult; and hence the kings of Persia have hardly ever been able to keep the inhabitants of the southern coasts of the Caspian Sea in subjection.

Reschd, the metropolis of Ghilan, had been surrounded by a thick wood, which rendered it extremely unwholesome: but the Russians no sooner possessed this part of the province, than they cleared the ground for near fifteen miles to the southward; and a prospect is now opened, that is only bounded by the mountains, whose tops rise so high, that they are generally covered with snow throughout the whole year. The air of this province, though admirably adapted to the cultivation of raw silk and rice, of which there is greater plenty here than in any other part of Persia, is far from being healthy; for the numerous marshes, occasioned by the over-

flowing of the Caspian Sea, the fields of rice often laid under water, and the vicinity of the mountains covered with wood, contribute to hurt the air, especially when the heat of the sun is violent, and the exhalations strong. There are here innumerable swarms of frogs, gnats, and spiders; the extraordinary moisture of the earth breeds insects even in the houses, and the air is so productive of rust, that it is difficult even to preserve the work of a watch. The inhabitants observe, that women, mules and poultry enjoy health, when all other animals pine away with sickness; whence it may be inferred, that their confinement contributes to their preservation. Snow sometimes falls in such quantities, as to prevent all communication between the inhabitants, except from the house-tops, which, however, are not very lofty.

The people here enjoy a long spring, during which their lawns and their meadows are strewed with flowers, and the bushes with roses and honeysuckles. The soil, which is exceedingly fertile, produces some hemp and hops, and almost every kind of fruit without culture; for, besides pomegranates, peaches, oranges and lemons, here are abundance of grapes, the vines supporting themselves on the trees, and growing wild on the mountains; so that a great part of the province is a perfect paradise, notwithstanding the many inconveniences that attend it. However, their grapes, for want of cultivation, are not the most excellent, nor will they make tolerable wine without a mixture of raisins from the southern parts of the empire; but these, fermented together, produce very good wine. Their other fruits are reckoned unwholesome, especially to foreigners, and in particular, the peaches and figs

partake much of the pernicious moisture that predominates in the lower part of the province. Ghilan is also remarkable for producing great quantities of box, of which camels are extremely fond, though it is immediate death if they eat it; for which reason, there are few or no camels brought into the province, their caravans consisting of horses, mules and cows, that carry burdens like other animals.

CHAP. V.

Second journey from Langarood to Astrabad. A description of the province of Mazanderan; the cities of Amul and Balfrush; of the causeway built by Shah Abbas, and of the famous palace of Ashereff; pyramids of human heads at the entrance of Astrabad; cruelties exercised on the rebels; Mr. Hanway recovers his money and effects. A description of the Persian paper and ink; of the everlasting fire of the Guebres, and of springs of naphtha.

ON the first of May, in the evening, Mr. Hanway set out for Astrabad. Besides Mr. Loftus, Mr. Elton's interpreter, who had been with him in the camp, he also took Matteuse, the old Armenian, who was with him when the rebellion broke out. There were six persons in company, well armed, and Mahommed Khan had promised to furnish them with a convoy of fifty soldiers, if necessary: for some of the inhabitants of Mazanderan, as well as Astrabad, having been in the rebellion, and knowing that part of the money our author was to receive, would be levied on their relations, there was reason to apprehend that they would obstruct their journey, if they had a favourable opportunity of doing it.

The first evening they were benighted and lost in a wood, though they had successively procured

several guides; but they all ran away, from the fear of being used ill. In this perplexity they advanced towards a house, where they saw a light, but found the entrance barricaded with trees. In vain did they use entreaties to persuade the master of it to conduct them to Radizar; these being ineffectual, they broke into the house, and tying a rope to one of his arms, compelled him to conduct them. Unwarrantable as this conduct may appear, it was agreeable to the practice of Persia, and now seemed absolutely necessary; but having conducted them to Radizar, he was paid handsomely for his trouble, and suffered to return home.

The next day they entered the province of Mazanderan, the weather being extremely delightful. On the fourth, the horses and mules being at pasture, were visited by a wolf of a very extraordinary size; but being driven off by a guard set for such purposes, the animal contented itself with killing a cow. In the morning they set out early, and coming up with a detachment of fifty soldiers, the commander courteously offered his service to guard them.

Mr. Hanway observed, that some of the lower parts of Mazanderan nearly resemble Ghilan; but not being so closely encircled by mountains, the air is more pure and free. This province also abounds with water, many streams of which issue from the springs in the higher ground. The country is as fruitful as Ghilan, and being much healthier, the inhabitants are stronger and more robust. It furnishes great quantities of cotton, and is the only province in the north of Persia that produces sugar.

Mr. Hanway presented the commander of the

fifty men with cloth for a coat, and he being obliged to leave them, gave them ten of his soldiers for a guard; but as they advanced deeper in the province, the peasants grew insolent, and one of them seized the commander of the ten men by his throat. It is very dangerous coming to extremities with these people; for if they beat or distress any one, they are punished so severely, that they think it best to commit murder to prevent a discovery; and if that is found out, they even sometimes hide themselves in their mountains. The house assigned Mr. Hanway for his lodging, being inhabited by women and children, that humane gentleman thought it his duty to comply with their intreaties, and therefore removed and pitched his tent: but night drawing on, he discovered that he was in a very bad neighbourhood; for the villagers had appeared in arms in the late rebellion, and these people, imagining him to be extremely rich, would not be persuaded but that all the brass buttons, worn by those in his company, were of gold: their chief boasted of his great dexterity in the use of firearms; as a specimen of which, before it was dark, he killed a small bird on a lofty tree with a single ball. The villagers, however, being now filled with apprehensions, that this convoy had orders to seize them, took their arms and retired. The inhabitants of the neighbouring mountains were no less disaffected, and several horsemen entered the village in the night; but finding Mr. Hanway and his company on their guard, they turned back.

The dangerous situation our author had been in during the night, made him leave this place with great satisfaction. By seven in the morning, the sun was extremely hot; but he found the Persians

were not so much afraid of the sun as the Portuguese, who seldom travel without a cloak and umbrella, and also use skull-caps of paper, or a cabbage leaf under their hats; but the common people here only secure the crown of the head with a silk quilted skull-cap, and often leave the rest of the head bare. About nine they took shelter in a wood, and pitched their tents, resolving to travel only in the evening or at night. On the 7th they travelled five leagues, and early the next morning struck their tents; but the soldiers, contrary to their engagement, had left them in the night to take care of themselves.

As they approached towards Amul, the country appeared still more pleasant: the city is situated in a plain at the foot of Mount Taurus, and is watered by a river, over which is a fine bridge of twelve arches. The Persians have a tradition, that if any governor or commander passes over it on horseback, he will soon be deprived of his office, if not of his life; and that whoever would not be pursued by ill fortune, ought to walk over it: however, though the stream is rapid and the water foul, the Persians generally ford it. As our author did not chuse to be regarded as a person excluded from the common bounties of Heaven, he thought proper to walk over the bridge, leading his horse. He there found the ruins of an old fortress, which had been built of brick, and had been stronger and more regular than any building of that kind he had seen in Persia. Here is also a palace built with stone, in which the famous Shah Abbas often resided: it commands a pleasant prospect, and is well contrived for coolness and convenience. The garden is remarkable for the size and height of the cypress-trees.

In this city Mr. Hanway met a writer in the service of Mahommed Khan, who received him with great civility, and expressed mueh concern at his being ignorant of his circumstances, when he was in his company retiring before the Turkumans. Having given him an account of the suppression of the rebellion; he invited him to hear his music: one instrument resembled a flute, another a guitar, and a third a kettle-drum, and, at the same time, an old man and two boys sung and danced. The last accomplishment is taught to none but those who hire themselves to divert others; dancing being considered mean and ignoble. The boys moved their heads, legs and arms, in a very extravagant manner. The writer then sent for a priest, remarkable for being a good singer, who raised his voice to an amazing degree; his quavers were mixed with harsh guttural sounds, and the distortions of his visage created horror rather than delight; nor was the instrumental music less disagreeable.

The people of Amul, as in many other parts of this coast, begin in May to retire into the neighbouring mountains, where they live in tents, and enjoy cool breezes, delightful shades, plenty of fruit, the most delicious water, with an extensive prospect of a fine country below them. They have a great deal of rice and wheat, and also printed cottons, in which article they trade with the neighbouring provinces.

On the 9th, in the evening, Mr. Hanway left Amul, and travelled through a delightful country till two in the morning, when, after resting with his company in tents, they departed to Balfrush, the capital of the province. He there learned, that upon the news of the defeat of the rebels, the governor

appointed by Sadoc Aga was seized, and holes being cut in his flesh, lighted candles were fixed in them. In this barbarous manner this unhappy rebel was led naked about the market place, till he expired with loss of blood.

On the 11th Mr. Hanway visited Mahommed Khan, whose house was in a delightful situation, a few miles from the city. It had nothing like grandeur; but the adjacent woods and rivulets gave it an air of simplicity, and rendered it more pleasant than the most magnificent palace, where nothing is to be seen but the most finished strokes of art. In the area before the house, one hundred and fifty men were drawn up under arms, in two double lines. Mr. Hanway alighted at some yards distance, and bowing with his hand on his breast, advanced towards the khan, who was seated in his aviam, and received him with great expressions of kindness, and, as a proof of his regard, released a man who was tied and condemned to be beaten, telling our author that he did it for his sake, and to do him honour. Mr. Hanway made him a present of some fine cloths, and a case of choice drams, of which the khan was immoderately fond. Having prevailed on our author to stay all night, he ordered poultry and sheep to be killed, resolving to show him such favours as would wipe off the stains his reputation had suffered by his ill treatment of him before, for which he now made an apology. After dinner he sent for the dancers and music, who tormented our author the whole of the evening; his nerves being too weak to bear the noise made by eight instruments and singers; but though an European ear cannot be reconciled to their taste in music, yet ours is agreeable to them. When the

dancing men had ended, they presented Mr. Hanway an orange, which was a civil way of desiring payment for their trouble. At length the khan invited him to drink brandy with him, and on his refusal, expressed great surprise, that he, being an European and a Christian, was not fond of spiritous liquors. As soon as he retired, the khan and his companions could not refrain from drinking the strong waters he had presented him: their usual way is for each person to have a plate of sweetmeats before him, and then they drink their liquor in tea-cups till they are drunk, which is soon accomplished.

The next morning Mr. Hanway visited the monument of the khan's favourite wife, who had been lately buried in a wood near his house. It had an epitaph, in which, according to the common sense of mankind, life was compared to a flower, that blossoms in the spring, and in the summer appears in the full lustre of its beauty, but in autumn begins to decline; and when winter comes on, every gust of wind blows it to the ground, where it lies and rots.

Mr. Hanway, having five men for his guard, left Balfrush, and travelled three leagues through a fine country to Alleabad, where is a palace of a mean appearance, but pleasantly situated. The most important monument of antiquity in this country is, the causeway built by Shah Abbas the Great, about the beginning of the last century, from Keskar, in the south-west corner of the Caspian, to Astrabad, and several leagues farther, it being, in all, near three hundred English miles long: it has hardly ever been repaired, but as there are few or no wheel-carriages used in this country, the pavement is in

many places very perfect: it is raised in the middle, with ditches on each side, and in some parts is above twenty yards broad. From Alleabad to Sari, this causeway is, for above a league together, bordered on each side by a delightful wood, whose luxuriant branches afford a delightful shelter to travellers. The prospect is variegated with many avenues, that open into meadows and fields of rice.

The inhabitants of Sari were in a miserable condition, complaining loudly of the shah, and no less of Sadoc Aga and his Turkuman Tartars. Here are four temples of the Guebres, or worshippers of fire, who formerly inhabited all this coast: these edifices are made of the most durable materials, and are rotundas, of about thirty feet in diameter, raised to a point of near one hundred and twenty feet in height.

On the 14th they continued their route through a fine country to Ashreff: the causeway is here much decayed, but Shah Abbas, who was fond of this country, built a lodge every two leagues for his refreshment in travelling. From one of these buildings they had a full view of the great mountain Demoan, on which, the Persians say, the ark rested; while the Armenians ascribe this honour to Mount Ararat, which is also visible in clear weather, on the western coast of the Caspian, if what was shown to our author was the real Ararat.

In the afternoon they arrived at Ashreff, where is a celebrated palace, built by Shah Abbas, which far exceeds any on the Caspian Sea. Over the entrance are the arms of Persia, a lion, with the sun rising behind him, alluding to the strength and glory of the Persian monarchy. Within this gate is a long avenue, on each side of which are thirty apartments, intended for the guards. The next

gate in front opens into a garden, in the midst of which is a channel made with stone, about three feet wide and one deep, through which runs a stream of water, that has four cascades, about an ell high, thirty yards distant from each other, each having a small basin and fountain: on the sides, near the stream, holes are cut to fix candles, at equal distances, to the number of about a thousand, which must have a fine effect. At the head of the stream is a large stone basin, six feet deep. In the adjacent building is a sumptuous aviam, painted with gold flowers, well executed, on a blue ground, and several portraits, that seem to be done by a Dutchman, but no masterly hand. On the sides of the aviam are several small apartments, and behind this building are three other falls of water, that pour down the sides of a steep mountain covered with wood.

The garden chiefly consists of walks bordered with large pines, oranges, and other fruit-trees, disposed in beds, with streams of water flowing between them. From thence they went to another garden, much in the same taste, in which stood the haram; but though nobody was in it, it was considered as sacred, and they were not permitted to enter it. Before this building was a large basin of water, and here were also cascades, as in the other garden. From thence they were conducted to a banquetting-house, dedicated to a grandson of Ali; and out of respect to this place, they were desired to leave their swords at the door. The solemnity with which our author was conducted in, struck him with a kind of awe, which was soon changed to contempt, from his seeing the room adorned with such paintings as could only please a voluptuous

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

Pyramids of Heads at the entrance of Astrabad.

Maguire Sc.

Dublin. Published by J. Christie. 17 Ross Lane.

Mahometan. Here were also portraits of Shah Abbas I. and II., all poorly done, by an European hand. They were now shown a fourth house and garden, in which was a stately dome, whose top was indifferently well painted, and the walls were covered with Dutch tiles as high as the gallery. On an eminence at some distance, was a small building, that seemed intended for an observatory. The whole commands a view of a very fine country, and of the Caspian Sea, which is about five miles distant: the vicinity of the mountains at the rere of the palace, the numerous cascades, and the warbling of the birds, gave our author many pleasing ideas; but the unhappy situation of the people incessantly recurred to his thoughts, and damped the pleasure he would otherwise have enjoyed.

On the 15th they left Ashreff, and upon the road met a courier with a letter from Myrza Mahommed, to beseech Mr. Hanway to hasten his journey, and use his interest to save his life. As they approached Astrabad, they met several armed horsemen, carrying home the peasants whose eyes had been put out, the blood yet running down their faces. Near the entrance of the city, on each side, was a pyramid built of stone, whitened over, and made full of niches; they were about sixteen or twenty feet in diameter at the base, and rising gradually near forty feet; each had a single head at the top, and the greatest part of the niches were filled with human heads, several of which had beards, and being set a little projecting, added to the horror of this shocking sight.

On the 16th of May Mr. Hanway entered Astrabad a second time. He now found it a scene of misery and desolation: for he was informed, that the

execution of that day consisted in putting out the left eyes of thirty men, beheading four, and burning one alive, who had been a captain in the rebel guard: two hundred women were sent out of the city, one hundred and fifty of whom were ordered to be sold to the soldiers as slaves. The next day he passed through several streets, which seemed to have no inhabitants but soldiers, and a few old women. Mr. Hanway sent a present to Bebbud Khan, the king's general, and followed it himself; he found him seated in his aviam, with his soldiers drawn up in a semicircle before him, and was employed in judging and condemning the unhappy wretches, one or two of whom were brought before him at a time.

After the first compliments Mr. Hanway took the shah's decree in both his hands, and lifting it up to his head, delivered it to the general, who stood up to receive it, and raising it up to his forehead, gave it to his secretary to read. On Mr. Hanway's desiring that it might be speedily executed, he promised that it should, and then presented him sweetmeats and large white mulberries, which are a delicious fruit. While he was eating, the prisoners were taken from his presence, and the secretary made a complimental speech on the usefulness of merchants, observing, that they brought wealth into countries, were serviceable to kings, and ought not to be offended by any, but protected by all parties.

After a short repast, a prisoner was severely beaten with sticks, and the soldiers were ordered to spit in his face, and to put out his eyes. When the soldiers were dragging him to execution, he begged with bitter cries that he might rather suffer death; the

general, whose heart seemed made of the same stuff as his sword, refused this cruel mercy; and ordering him to be recalled for further inquiry, snspended the execution.

Sadoc Aga, the rebel general, who had a principal share in taking Mr. Hanway's caravan of cloth, and insulting him by his jests, was then brought before the general. When Mr. Hanway saw him last he was a youth of more than common vivacity, was richly dressed, well armed, and full of mirth. But, alas! how was the scene now altered! His garb was mean, and his eyes were deprived of their sight; he drooped his head, and his voice was changed. The general asked about our author's goods, and told him he must pay for them: to which he answered; "All I know of them is, that they were taken by Mahommed Hassan, and by him distributed to his people. Would to God that Mahommed Hassan and his whole house had been buried deep in the earth ere I had heard of his name! And how can I pay for the goods? I have nothing left but this mean garb you see on my back: indeed this is sufficient: you have already deprived me of my sight, and of what use is life to me?" This he expressed with that emotion natural to a daring spirit, but the general cruelly ordered him to be struck across the mouth, to silence him; which was done with such violence, that the blood issued forth.

Sadoc Aga being removed, Mirza Mohammed was brought, with two large logs of wood fitted to the small of his legs, and rivetted together; a heavy triangular wooden collar was also on his neck, which likewise served as a handcuff to his left wrist. Mr. Hanway might now have said, "How

wise you are!" as he said to him when he saw him last; but he had too much humanity to insult the wretched, and there being no mercy to be found there, he took no notice of his former behaviour, but departed abruptly, having his heart too full of the dreadful objects he had seen.

He then visited Mahommed Hussein Khan, the father of him who was the governor of Astrabad before the rebellion, and had been charged with the murder of Shah Tæhmas, the last lawful sovereign of Persia. He received our author with great politeness, assuring him in the strongest terms, that he would not leave the place until his business was done, agreeably to the shah's order; and among other things said, "I am charged with a particular commission to see the rebels punished: I must do that for which I know I shall be damned; the shah will have it so. Well, to-morrow is a day of blood, and I will make them pay you, though I pull the money out of their throats." Mr. Hanway had too much humanity to thank him for his bloody intentions; for though these unhappy rebels had acted as if they meant to devote themselves to ruin, yet an opposition to such execrable tyranny wanted only more force and wisdom to give it the stamp of glory: nor could our author behold without horror, a man, whom a blind obedience to his prince could induce to shake hands with everlasting perdition.

The next day, in the evening, eight Turkuman Tartars being taken in the road, were brought to that city, upon which the general expressed great satisfaction, observing, that many niches in his pyramid were yet unfilled; one of them being called Sais, and the other having the name Mahommed

Hussein Khan. The execution of a malefactor in Persia is performed with little ceremony; he is taken to a field or open place, near the residence of the military judge, and the executioner causing him to kneel, he pronounces his creed, "There is but one God, Mahommed is his prophet, and Ali his friend:" his head is then taken off with the motion of a sabre, with a thrusting cut, which in drawing back completes the operation.

Mr. Hanway now visited his friend Nazeer Aga, who had received a reward from the shah for the services he had performed during the rebellion. The old man expressed a high satisfaction at seeing him after the great dangers to which they had both been exposed. A few days after Nazeer Aga informed Mr. Hanway by letter, of the arrival of captain Woodroofe in Astrabad-bay; and, as the Turkumans and Ogurtjoys were in arms against the Persians, and possessed a great number of boats, he thought it unsafe for the ship to be in the road. In answer to this letter, Mr. Hanway thanked him for his advice, and told him that he did not fear those barbarians; for if they should come in numbers like a swarm of bees, they would meet their destruction from the great guns. This was proper language in a place where the Turkumans had their spies; and, were it not for the terror of captain Woodroofe's four three-pounders, the sum he was preparing to send on board, might have induced them to attack the ship at anchor; and as some of these boats had twelve or fourteen hands well armed, they might have found it difficult to defend the ship: however, they had provided close-quarters and powder-chests, so that they could not have taken it without a manner of fighting to which they were entire strangers.

On the 21st Myrza Mahommed delivered to Mr. Hanway the greatest part of his baggage, of which he had been so careful as to conceal it in a well, by which it received some damage; and also paid him as much of the money as he said was in his power; though it was evident, that if the rebellion had succeeded, he would have deprived him of the whole: but he hoped that Mr. Hanway would intercede in his favour. The next morning that gentleman went to the two khans, who were together, and had just condemned and ordered twenty-one persons for execution; he informed them that Myrza had delivered his baggage, and that he hoped he would receive the king's mercy. Mahommed Hussein Khan asked, if he desired he should be saved? To this he answered in the affirmative; and that he should consider mercy shown to Myrza as a particular mark of favour. To which the other replied, "For your sake then he shall be saved: his majesty has shown you great honour, and it is my business to do the same." Mr. Hanway having returned him thanks, and Myrza being sent for, was informed that for Mr. Hanway's sake he was pardoned, and immediately his collar and log were cut off.

Mr. Hanway had before received, in single pieces and cuts of cloth, to the amount of 1,600 crowns. A much greater value had been found in the city; but the general converted it to his own use. Some time after he received 3,000 crowns more, and was desired to take a part of the payment in female slaves, which he absolutely refused. At the same time the general being informed that Mr. Hanway was only thirty-two years of age, expressed great astonishment at his hoary locks, till he was told that what he took for his hair was only a wig.

On the 5th of June, Mr. Hanway pressing Mahommed Hussein Khan and the general for the payment of the rest of his money, the former wanted him to take his obligations for it, payable in ten or fifteen days; and the general being obliged to march, cried, "I cannot go hence without the receipt; the king will demand it from me, and if you do not give it, I will kill ten men every day till I get the money." Mr. Hanway answered, "I hope no man will die on my account; but I cannot answer it to the merchants, my principals, to give a receipt for the money in exchange for any obligation whatsoever."

Some days after Mr. Hanway went to Kourdiemalla, guarded by five horse and ten foot soldiers, carrying with him seven bales of cloth, and nine bags of money, with other things to the value of 11,000 crowns, taking care to let no person know when he intended to leave the town till he actually set out. But he had the mortification to be forsaken by his guard, and left in a thick wood, three English miles from the place of embarkation; however, he got safe on board with the money and goods, and the next day returned to Astrabad. On the 29th he went again on board with 5,000 crowns more, leaving Matteuse, his old Armenian clerk, and two servants, to solicit for the remainder due on the shah's decree.

While Mr. Hanway was at Astrabad he received a letter from the shah's nephew, who was governor of Mesched, in answer to one he had wrote to him, in relation to the payment for the pistols inlaid with gold, and other curiosities, which Mr. Elton had provided for him by express commission: but this great man had so little sense of honour, that he re-

turned them on Mr. Elton's hands, though they were utterly unvendable, alleging, that they were too good for him.

The Persian paper, on which they write their letters, is made of cotton and silk rags, and afterwards is glossed over by rubbing it with a smooth stone or shell; but it is so soft and liable to be torn, that they roll it up. Their letters are wrote on small slips of paper, in a few words, and with great exactness; for their characters are rather drawn than written, no interlineations or blots being ever suffered: they are then made up in rolls about six inches long, and a piece of paper being fastened round them with gum, it is sealed with ink, composed of a mixture of burned rice, galls and gum, and answers the double purpose of ink and wax, as it serves not only for writing, but for subscribing with their seal. Their pens are made of reeds brought from the southern parts of Persia; and in their rings they generally wear agates, which serve for a seal, there being frequently engraved on them the wearer's name, with some verse of the koran.

The religion of the Guebres, which is still preserved by some of the posterity of the ancient Indians and Persians, was founded by Zoroaster, who lived about the year of the world 2860. This great philosopher being struck with the demonstrations he observed, of the perfection of that self-existent Being, who is the author of all good, and being at a loss how to account for the introduction of evil into this world, thought there were two principles, or beings, one the cause of all good, whom he imagined resembled the light, the other the author of all evil, whom he represented by darkness. Thus considering light as the most perfect symbol of true wisdom,

and darkness as the representative of whatever is hurtful and destructive, he taught his followers to worship God only under the form of fire; considering the brightness, activity, purity, and incorruptibility of that element, as bearing the most perfect resemblance of the nature of the good Deity. Thus the Persians showed a particular veneration for the sun, as the brightest image of God; they offered up their sacrifices in the open air, and generally on the top of a hill, for they esteemed it injurious to the majesty of the God of heaven, to shut Him up in walls, who fills immensity with his presence.

About six hundred years after the first Zoroaster, another philosopher of the same name arose, who taught, that under the supreme Being there are two angels, the one of light, who is the author of all good, and the other of darkness, who is the author of all evil; that they, by a mixture of light and darkness, made all things, and are in a perpetual struggle with each other: that where the angel of light prevails, there good reigns; and where the angel of darkness, there evil predominates: that this struggle shall last till the end of the world, when the angel of darkness with his followers shall for ever be separated from the light; but those who cherish their spiritual nature, and obey the angel of light, shall go with him into a world where they shall be rewarded amidst everlasting brightness, and triumphant glory. In short, this last Zoroaster caused temples to be built, in which the sacred fire was ordered to be constantly preserved.

These opinions, with a few alterations, are still preserved by the Guebres, or Gaurs, the posterity of the ancient Indians and Persians, who are very zealous in preserving the religion of their ancestors,

particularly with respect to their veneration for fire.

What is commonly called the everlasting fire, is a phenomenon of a very extraordinary nature. This object of their devotion is about ten miles from Baku, a city situated by an excellent haven in the Caspian Sea, on a dry rocky soil, where there are several ancient temples of stone, supposed to have been all dedicated to fire; but most of them were only arched vaults, about ten or fifteen feet high. Among others is a little temple, in which the Indians now perform their devotions. Near the altar is a large hollow cane, from the end of which issues a blue flame, like that of a lamp burning with spirits, but to appearance more pure. This flame, the Indians pretend, has continued ever since the Flood, and they fancy it will last till the end of the world. Here are generally forty or fifty poor devotees, who come on a pilgrimage from their own country, and feed upon a kind of Jerusalem artichokes, wild cellery, and several other herbs and roots. They pretend to make expiation both for their own sins and those of others, and continue longer in proportion to the number of persons for whom they promise to pray. They mark their foreheads with saffron, and have a great veneration for a red cow. They wear but little clothing; and those most distinguished for their piety put one of their arms upon their heads, or some other part of the body, and keep it unalterably fixed in that position.

At a small distance from the temple is a low cleft of a rock, in which is a horizontal gap two feet from the ground, near six long, and about three broad, from which issues a blue flame like that already described: in still weather it burns low, but when the wind blows, it sometimes rises eight feet high,

and yet it is not perceived that the flame makes any impression on the rock. The Indians here also pay their adorations, and say, that if these fires are stopped in one place, they will rise in another. But what appears still more extraordinary is, that the earth for above two miles round this place has this property, that on taking up two or three inches of the surface, and applying a burning coal, the part uncovered immediately takes fire, almost before the coal touches it: the flame heats the soil, but does not consume it, nor does it affect the earth that is near it; but this earth carried to another place does not produce this effect. If a cane, or even a paper tube, be set about two inches in the ground, and closed up with earth below, on touching the top of it with a burning coal, and blowing it, a flame immediately issues, without burning either the cane or the paper, provided the edges be covered with clay; and this method they use for light in their houses, which have no other floor but the earth: three or four of these lighted canes will boil water in a pot, and thus they dress their victuals. The flame may be extinguished in the same manner as that of spirits of wine. The ground is here dry and stony; and the more stony it is, the stronger and clearer the flame: it has a sulphureous smell like naphtha; but it is not very offensive. It burns lime to great perfection.

Near this place brimstone is dug, and springs of naphtha are found. The chief place for the black or dark grey naphtha, is the small island Wetoy, which is now uninhabited, except when they are taking naphtha. The springs boil up highest when the weather is thick and hazy; and the naphtha often takes fire on the surface, and runs in great

quantities, in a flame, into the sea, to an almost incredible distance from the shore. In clear weather the springs do not boil up above two or three feet. This oily substance, in boiling over, becomes of such a consistence, as by degrees almost to close the mouth of the spring: sometimes it is quite closed, and forms hillocks as black as pitch; but when a spring is resisted in one place, it breaks out in another: some, that have not been long open, form a mouth of eight or ten feet diameter. It is unpleasant to the smell, and is mostly used by the poor, among the Persians and the neighbouring people, as we use oil in lamps, or to boil their provisions; but it gives the food a disagreeable taste. It burns best when mixed with a small quantity of ashes; and as there is great plenty of it, every family is well supplied. They keep it in earthen vessels under ground, at a small distance from their houses, on account of its being very liable to take fire.

In the peninsula of Apcheron there is a white naphtha, of a much thinner consistence, which the Russians drink as a cordial and medicine; it is also used externally, and is said to be carried into India, where it makes the most beautiful and lasting varnish yet found.

Mr. Hanway having lived some time in a very friendly manner with Mr. Elton at Langarood, went to Lahijan for the recovery of his health, having been for a considerable time very ill; and from thence he removed to Reschd. Mr. Elton, who had treated him with the greatest kindness, was about this time much offended at the conduct of Mr. Hanway's employers in Europe, for their submission to the Russian court; and being apprehensive of our author's making a just representation of his engage-

ments with the shah, which were absolutely inconsistent with the views of the Russia company, and of carrying on the trade into Persia, he suddenly became our author's most bitter enemy.

CHAP. VI.

Mr. Hanway returns to Russia, arrives at Petersburgh; its revenues, number of inhabitants, climate, persons and dress of the people.

HAVING with much difficulty obtained a recompence for his losses, Mr. Hanway disposed of the cloth at Reschd, and laid out the produce, as well as the money he had received, in raw silk. He left that city on the 13th of September, and arrived at Perrybazar, where he embarked in a flat-bottomed Persian boat; and on the 29th reached Yerkie, where he was visited by a commander of a guard-ship stationed there; by whom he was informed, that if he had any other goods on board but such as were of the province of Ghilan, and did not declare them, the law made it death to the offender, besides burning the ship and cargo. As Mr. Bakcoonin, the Russian consul, had informed the governor of Astrachan that the plague was at Cashan, they were ordered to land on a small uninhabited island, on the east side of the entrance of the Volga, where a fire being made, a surgeon and his attendants took the windward of them, and desired to see their breasts, as is usual in such cases; after he was satisfied that they had no infection, their letters were delivered to them, after being first dipped in vinegar and dried in the smoke. The next

day the commander sent for Mr. Hanway and the captain to come again on shore on the island, where they were a second time interrogated whether they had any Cashan goods on board, and in virtue of an order he had received for that purpose, desired them to declare, in writing, the places they had visited since their leaving Russia.

Having waited here till the 11th of October, in very disagreeable weather, without any fresh provisions, a signal was made by the guard-ship for Mr. Hanway and the captain to come on board; and then they had the mortification of being ordered to perform a quarantine on an uninhabited island, a little to the eastward. But what affected them most was, the news of the loss of all their letters, dispatches and passports, with the lives of twelve soldiers, in one of the empress's boats, which was sent up eleven days before, and had been attacked on the way by the Calmucs, who murdered the whole crew.

At length the governor of Astrachan, imagining that Mr. Hanway might have something to communicate to him, permitted his going to that city, on condition of his remaining a week longer in quarantine, without bringing with him the best part of his clothes or baggage. He, therefore, on the 20th, went up a small branch of the Volga, and landed on the island Carasa, now appointed for quarantine, where he found warehouses and habitations, with thirty soldiers. Here lodgings were appointed for him, in a house detached from the crew and the other passengers. On the 26th the governor of Astrachan sent his barge, rowed by twelve grenadiers, with some of his own clothes; Mr. Hanway was then required to strip himself entirely naked in the open air, and to pass through

the mortifying ceremony of having a large pail of warm water thrown upon him.

Having undergone this disagreeable discipline, he embarked for Astrachan, and on the 27th arrived in that city. He waited on the governor the next day; but found his behaviour very different from what it was a twelve-month before; for he was very reserved upon the article of trade in general, though very inquisitive about Mr. Elton; and though Mr. Hanway did not come empty-handed, he barely met with civility, and passed his time in a very disagreeable manner, separated from his clothes, his servants, and his conveniences of life, in a place that afforded no amusement.

On the 22d of November he obtained leave to set out for Petersburgh; but the Volga being covered with floating ice, he resolved to travel by land, on the western banks of that river; and being informed that the secretary of the salt-office at Astrachan, and several Russian merchants, under the convoy of five Cossacks, were ready to depart, he embraced the opportunity of joining them with two servants, and crossed the Volga.

On the 28th they met a large caravan going to Astrachan, which informed them that four persons were missing in Zaritzen and Chernoyare; and as a bloody shirt had been found on the way, it was concluded that they were murdered. Orders were, therefore, given to the Cossacks, to keep a stricter watch than usual; and some of the company, who had been impatient to proceed forwards, and intended to leave the rest, now thought it improper to separate. On the 2d of December they found a Russian waggon, and the harnesses of several horses, belonging to five persons who were mur-

dered, and the next day they reached Zaritzen.

During Mr. Hanway's stay there, he dined with the secretary, who acted as sub-governor of the town, and presented his wife to the company, who saluted her according to custom. She then presented a salver with small silver cups of brandy, which was repeated after dinner; but she did not sit with them at table: our author was equally amazed at the profusion of the meats, and at the badness of the cookery. The quantity of bad wine, strong and small beer, drank by his companions, was prodigious; it was, however, a feast of friendship, designed to reconcile the Astrachan secretary and one of the principal merchants of the city, who had quarrelled; and their healths being drank, the master of the house obliged them to kiss each other; they were then saluted by all the company in the same manner.

As the snow rendered the road impassable for wheel-carriages, Mr. Hanway caused his waggon to be placed on a sledge, and having taken leave of his Russian friends, set out on the 6th, attended only by two servants. The next day the weather was so cold, that some strong wine froze under his feather bed; he that night reached Cashaliena, situated on the Don: the inhabitants, who are a mixture of Russians and Circassians, are poor, but blessed with liberty. The wind now blew so hard and excessive cold, that the carriers could not face it, and were frequently obliged to halt; the ground was covered with snow, and it often happens, that the passengers, who do not provide a compass to direct them, lose their way and perish.

On the 13th they stopped at Brusano, where the inhabitants informed them, that a band of robbers

had the night before broke into two houses, and, not contented with plundering them, tortured the peasants, by putting fire between their fingers, to oblige them to deliver their money. These robbers were so closely pursued, that Mr. Hanway and his attendants found hams, and other provisions they had dropped in their flight. Upon the road they had frequent opportunities of observing in what manner the peasants render their huts habitable during the severity of the cold weather. Few of these having chimneys, the smoke of the stoves is carried out through the windows; by this means, they are filled with so thick a cloud of smoke, that it is impossible to breathe at above two or three feet from the floor, till the wood is burnt to ashes; and therefore those who would not be suffocated, must crawl in upon their hands and knees.

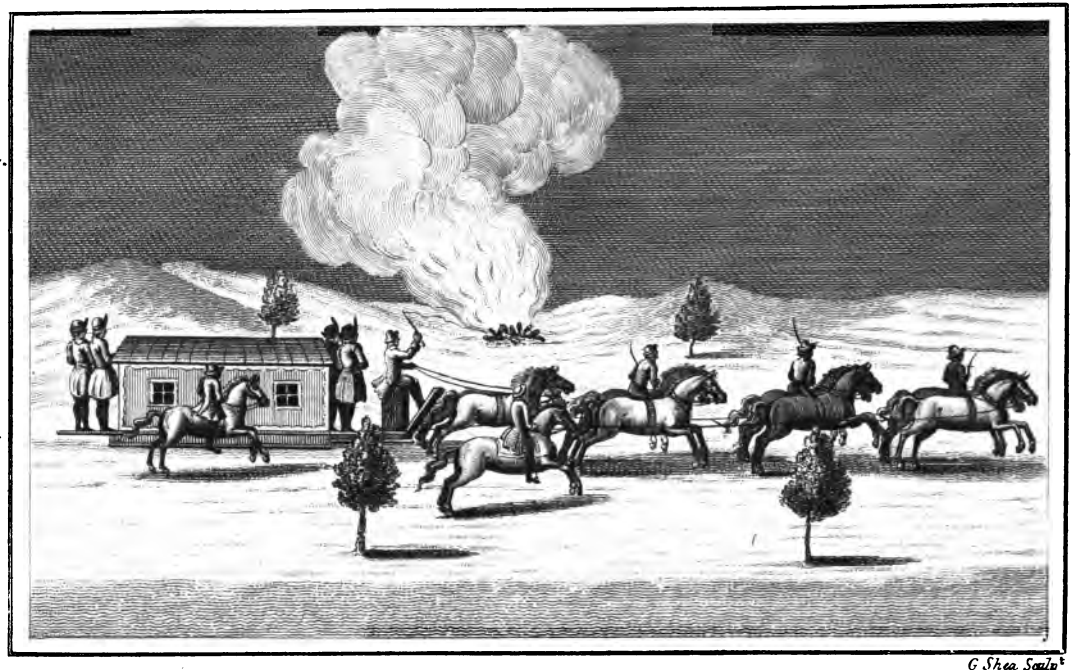
On the 22d Mr. Hanway arrived at Moscow, where he received letters, informing him of the death of a relation, who had left him a considerable fortune. He staid there till the 28th of December, and in the mean while provided a slight sledge, in which he was determined to travel post. Nothing can be more accommodated to ease and dispatch, than travelling in sledges in frosty weather: for in the journey our author now made from Moscow to Petersburgh, he slept without waking while he advanced one hundred wersts, or sixty-six English miles. The whole road between the two cities was marked out in snow by young fir-trees, planted on both sides, at the distance of about twenty yards, which, at a moderate computation, amounted to 128,480 trees. At certain distances were also great piles of wood, to be set on fire to give light to the empress and her court, if they passed by in the night.

On these occasions, her imperial majesty is drawn in a large machine that contains her bed, a table, and other conveniences, where four persons may take a repast. This machine is fixed on a sledge, and drawn by twenty-four post horses, and if any of them fall on the road, others are ready to supply their places. She is generally three days and nights on the way, and has several small palaces, at which she sometimes stops to refresh herself. Though the distance is 488 English miles, Peter the Great once made the journey in forty-six hours; but he did not travel in the same sort of carriage.

Mr. Hanway arrived at Petersburgh on the 1st of January 1745, having performed the journey from Moscow in three days and a half. He had been absent a year and sixteen weeks, in which time he had travelled above four thousand English miles by land.

The court of Petersburgh has enjoyed the reputation of being one of the most brilliant in Europe; for in the reign of the late empress Anne, the countenance foreigners received, added much to its splendid appearance. The Russians are still fond of rich clothes.

By the admiralty, where ships of war are built, is a magnificent palace, situated on the south bank of the Neva, near the centre of the city, and in the eastern part, is the summer palace and gardens, which abound in fine statues and delightful walks, yet being a dead flat it can produce but little variety. Near it is the theatre, where Italian operas and French comedies are acted, at the empress's expence, to which foreigners, who make any appearance, are admitted. Masquerades, balls and concerts, are also frequent at court.



G Shea Sculp^t

The Czarina's manner of travelling in winter.

Dublin Published by J. Christie 17, Ross Lane.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Elizabeth Petrowna, the daughter of Peter the Great, by the empress Catherine, is one of the most accomplished ladies of her rank, nor was her person less amiable; but time, which wears off the charms of youth, has rendered her corpulent; yet she is very active, dances, hunts, and rides on horseback: she seems to delight chiefly in select companies, at the houses of her favourites.

This empress wears the order of St. Andrew, which is a blue ribbon: the number of knights of this order are near sixty; but it is not confined. The order of St. Alexander is inferior to this, and consists of thirty-six knights, who wear a red ribbon: there is also an order of St. Anne of Holstein, which is distinguished by red striped with yellow; and another of St. Catharine, which is red with a silver edge, and is intended only for women.

Petersburgh was founded by Peter the Great, in the beginning of the present century, and may now be considered as the modern polite metropolis. Though it was so lately a morass, it is now an elegant and superb city, very healthy, and abounding in all the necessaries, and many of the superfluities of life. It is ranged on both sides of the Neva, extending near two English miles from east to west. At the upper end of the north side is the citadel, which is more famous for the number of lives it cost in building, than for its strength: it contains a stately church, in which are deposited the remains of its founder, Peter the Great, and his empress Catherine; and it is also a prison for offenders against the state. The city has neither walls nor gates; but the marshy land near it, to the north and south, and the Gulf of Finland to the east, render it difficult of approach for an army. As Peter

the Great took Amsterdam for his model, it is divided by several canals; but from the reluctance with which it was originally begun by his subjects, and from errors in the plan, a part of it still remains unexecuted, and in others the houses are too near the canal; but there are some regular, broad, and well built streets, and several very noble edifices. The empress's fondness for building has contributed to the beauty of the city; for besides the two royal palaces already mentioned, she has built a noble one, said to be intended for the great duke. There is also a nunnery lately erected; and at Czarscho-Zelo, about fifteen English miles distant, is another royal palace. These edifices are mostly of brick, plaistered over, so as to make an elegant appearance; but the work is generally done in a hurry, and the materials are not very durable. An Italian architect being established in Russia, notwithstanding the difference of the climate, the taste of Italy is adopted in almost all their houses; and though the severity of the cold is so great, they abound much more in windows than our houses in England. The number of people in Petersburgh are computed at 250,000, including the garrison, which is numerous; but in reckoning the subjects throughout the whole empire, it is laid down as a rule, that the hundred and seventy-fifth male raises an army of near 50,000 men; and, consequently, supposing an equal number of females, the whole may be reckoned 17,500,000; but the tributary Tartars, the Russian Ukraine, and the conquered provinces, are not included in this account. The revenues of the Russian empire, which were formerly only five millions, are now increased to fifteen millions of rubles, or three millions sterling,

and are yet improveable, without distressing the subject.

As to the climate of Russia, it differs extremely in the several parts of it included in Europe, and still more in their Asiatic dominions. At Petersburgh, February generally brings with it a bright sun and a clear sky, every object seems to glitter with gems, and the nerves become braced by the cold. There is then no small amusement in riding in sledges upon the snow, to those who, from the length of the winter, have forgot the much superior pleasure which nature presents, when clothed in all her verdure.

March is frequently attended with showers, which, with the heat of the sun, penetrate the ice: this is generally three-quarters of a yard thick on the Neva, and in some great rivers to the north-east much thicker. This renders it like a honey-comb, and about the end of that month it usually breaks up.

The month of April is frequently very warm; summer seems to precede the spring; for it is sometimes the first of June before any considerable verdure appears, and then the intense heat brings it on so fast, that the eye can discover its progress from day to day. Till the middle of July it seems to be one continued day, the sun not entirely disappearing above two hours in the twenty-four; but the delight which this season naturally affords, is considerably abated by the extreme heat of the weather; however, a week seldom passes without the air being refreshed by southerly and westerly winds, which often bring gentle showers. Sometimes they experience a delightful autumn to the end of September; but this rarely happens. Au-

gust closes the scene, so that there are hardly above three months of summer.

September generally brings rain and frost; the severity of both is increased in October, and in November the Neva is always frozen. Then comes on the season for the easy and speedy conveyance on the snow, which brings fresh provisions to market a thousand English miles by land, and the beef of Archangel is often eaten at Petersburgh. In December and January the cold is so very intense, that the poor, who are overtaken by liquor, or exposed to the air in open places, are frequently frozen to death. But the abundance of birch and alders with which the Russians are supplied, and the commodiousness of their stoves, enable them to introduce any degree of heat into their houses.

The Russians are for the most part of a middle stature, though many of them are tall and comely. The common people are fond of their ancient customs, and though the majority of them submit to modern improvements, many choose to suffer great inconveniences, and to pay additional taxes, rather than cut off their beards, and conform to some regulations with respect to religion. Women, in general, are not so amiable in Russia as in many other countries: indeed they daub themselves so much with paint, as to conceal the graces which nature may be presumed to have bestowed on them; for they generally profess, that if they have sufficient plumpness, they can procure themselves beauty.

The common people are clothed with long coats made of dressed sheep-skin, with the wool towards their bodies: their legs and feet are swaddled with a coarse cloth, secured by a cord of reeds, and their sandals are of the same materials. Their caps are

lined with fur, and cover the ears and neck, as well as the head: they wear sashes round their waist, and double gloves, one of woollen and the other of leather, which take in the hand without any distinction, except the thumb, and these are an essential part of their clothing. However, people of any rank generally dress as we do in England, except wearing a full great coat, lined with fur, with a deep quilted or fur-lined cap, when they go abroad. The women of the lower class, besides their petticoats, wear sheep-skins like the men; but those who move in a higher sphere, wear flowered silk cloaks, lined with furs, of which the most common sort is white hares. Ladies of great distinction have them lined with rich furs, and almost constantly wear them.

CHAP. VII.

Mr. Hanway leaves Petersburgh. A description of Cronstadt, Revel and Dantzic. His travels through Pomerania to Berlin, which is described. A description of Wirtemberg, and Dresden. Of the porcelain manufacture at Meissen, and of the hunting palace of St. Hubertsburg.

ON the 9th of July, 1750, Mr. Hanway left Petersburgh, and travelling along the banks of the Neva, came to the palace of Strelna Musa, which is about twenty wersts from Petersburgh. It is situated on an eminence, and commands an extensive view of the Gulf of Finland. It was intended to be a more grand and elegant building than Peterhoff, and the gardens were laid out in a fine taste; but the death of Peter the Great, together with the badness of the foundation, put a stop to the prosecution of

the design. The present empress has caused many of her courtiers to build country-houses on the south of the road between this palace and that of Peterhoff; most of these are built of wood, and little expence is bestowed on the gardens.

Peter the Great left Peterhoff a mean building; but it has been greatly enlarged and beautified by the present empress. The water works are compared to those of Versailles, with this difference in their favour, that the waters of Peterhoff are more sweet. This palace is situated on an eminence, on the south side of the Gulf of Finland, of which it commands an extensive prospect, as well as of the island of Cronstadt. The forest of masts, that appears from the basons of that island during the summer-season, gives the idea of a flourishing commerce; but the gardens of Peterhoff, though they afford a great variety of scenes, yet lying mostly on a dead flat, and being of sand, they fall incomparably short of those belonginging to the seats of many noblemen in England.

Mr. Hanway, passing the gulf, arrived at Cronstadt, where he had an opportunity of examining the dry dock contrived by Peter the Great, which is one of the greatest curiosities in the world of its kind. It extends about seven thousand fathoms, is sixty feet broad at the bottom, eighty feet at the top, and is forty feet deep, having flood-gates in different parts. It is intended to receive fourteen ships of the line of battle. There is a grand reservoir, which was almost eighteen feet lower than the docks, and is, consequently, near sixty feet deep: it is about six hundred long, and three hundred broad. The island of Cronstadt is near fifteen miles in circumference; but very barren:

the town is supposed to have near 25,000 inhabitants.

On the 15th, Mr. Hanway embarked in a small yacht belonging to Dantzic, and on the 18th landed at Revel, when he was conducted to the commander of the port, of whom it was necessary to ask permission to enter the town. This place is the capital of Estonia, and is fifty leagues distant from Petersburgh; it submitted to Peter the Great in 1710, and is only taxed with the support of a garrison of five thousand soldiers, with quarters, and three thousand seamen with not only quarters, but fire and candle. Within the walls are about six hundred houses, containing near eight thousand souls, and the suburbs are large and well inhabited. The people seem to be formal and reserved; but are extremely industrious, and live in such security, that they might sleep with their doors open. The houses, which are of the most durable materials, seem all prepared for the reception of merchandize. The country abounds in corn, of which they have generally great magazines. This was formerly a free town, and one of the greatest ports in the Baltic, Narva being its only competitor.

Great part of the city stands upon an eminence, and is defended by out-works, a moat, and a wall about six feet thick, and forty in height. The streets are neither broad nor regular, but the houses are lofty, and have steep roofs to carry off the snow. The town-house is an ancient building, and contains nothing remarkable, but some fine paintings, which are in great esteem. Here are four Lutheran churches for the citizens, and one for the peasants of the adjoining country; also two Greek churches for the use of the Russians.

On the 19th Mr. Hanway re-embarked, and the next day reached the height of Gothland, an island about seventy miles long, and twenty broad in the middle, diminishing at each end almost to a point. It belongs to the Swedes, and has eighteen towns and villages; but though it was formerly very rich, it has been so often plundered in time of war, that the inhabitants are not in the most flourishing situation.

On the 24th in the morning, our author entered the Vistula, which has two branches up to the Dantzic, the deepest of which is formed into a canal. This city is about three English miles in circumference, and well fortified. The houses are generally five stories high, which make the streets appear the narrower, especially as the entrance into the houses is by four or five stone steps, and a balcony, both which make a projection ten or twelve feet: they are kept clean, after the manner of the Dutch, though with less nicety. Many of the streets are planted with wild chesnut-trees, which afford an agreeable shelter; but the inhabitants are more agreeable than their houses or trees. The women resemble the English in their stature, countenance and air; but the bad ones make a market of their beauty in the neighbouring countries, where they are remarkably eminent in a profession that is apt to convert beauty into deformity, and health into disease. The women of distinction affect the manners of the Poles, and the most respectable way of saluting a lady is to kiss her hand, if one does not choose to stoop so low as the hem of her petticoat, as is commonly practised by the Poles.

The most considerable branch of the trade of

Dantzic is that of corn; they also export bees'-wax, narrow linens, sacking, pot-ash, pearl-ash, pipe-staves and oak plank.

Mr. Hanway having spent a week very agreeably at Dantzic, took leave of his friends, and passed through a small tract of Polish Prussia, where the inhabitants are miserably poor.

At Dunemorse, which is five German miles* from Dantzic, he entered Prussian Pomerania, where the face of things began to change much for the better. He then proceeded to Stolpe, a small city, surrounded with corn and meadow-lands, where the inhabitants seem to wear their chains with great chearfulness. The common people have a smattering of the French language. On entering and departing, he was examined from whence he came, and where he was travelling: this is practised on all travellers, in every town throughout the Prussian dominions, and, being performed in a very regular manner, it serves to preserve the idea of watchfulness and military discipline.

He proceeded three German miles to Schlave, over an open pleasant country of arable lands, pretty well inhabited, though the soil is sandy. He from thence went to Coeslin, which had, some years before, been burnt down, but is rebuilt, with regularity and elegance, though with great parsimony, which the circumstances of the inhabitants rendered absolutely necessary. In the market-place is a stone statue of the late king of Prussia. He then proceeded to Stargard, the metropolis of Prussian Pomerania, where is a cathedral church of great antiquity, and three reformed churches, in one of

* A German mile is in some places four, and in others five English miles.

which the service was performed in French. At three miles distance is a town called Pyritz, which is surrounded by an ancient fortification, and has a very large church built with brick.

He next arrived at Koeninsburg, a small town on the Oder, and from thence travelled three miles to Angermund, passing over the Oder on a bridge of timber. On the north bank is a fine palace and garden belonging to the margrave of Schwedt, with a very neat town of the same name adjacent. The avenue to the bridge and town is thrown up between meadow lands; it is planted on each side with willows, as the other side of the town is with wild chesnuts, which intercept the view of the corn and tobacco fields. Near this place Mr. Hanway saw the bodies of two malefactors, who had been broken upon the wheel; and near every town a gallows is erected on an eminence, though the good government of this country renders executions very rare.

The palace of the margrave makes a striking figure, as it is the only object that has the appearance of grandeur or state, on the road quite from Dantzic. The men of family and fortune in this country all flock to court; and agriculture, from which they derive their support, receives no improvement from their personal attendance.

From hence he proceeded to Berlin, and the nearer he approached to that city, the more he found the face of things to improve; but here are no inclosures to beautify the prospect, nor richness of soil to exhibit that perpetual verdure which England enjoys. From Dantzic to Berne is fifty-seven German miles, which are computed to be equal to two hundred and fifty English miles. The

entrance into Berlin is airy and elegant: the streets are regular and clean, and the houses uniform. In going towards the palace on the Pont-Neuf, or New-Bridge, which is of stone, over the Spree, is an equestrian statue of William the Great, which is esteemed a piece of exquisite workmanship: it was erected by Frederic I. king of Prussia, who also built the palace, which is very magnificent.

This city was full of busy, pleasant countenances, and there were several persons at the court famous in the literary world. The first object that strikes a stranger is the king's palace, called the castle: but one side of the interior square of this building is no ways equal to the rest, it being the old apartment once inhabited by the present king's grandfather, and has not yet been rebuilt. The walls of the grand front are seven or eight feet thick, which makes the rooms dark.

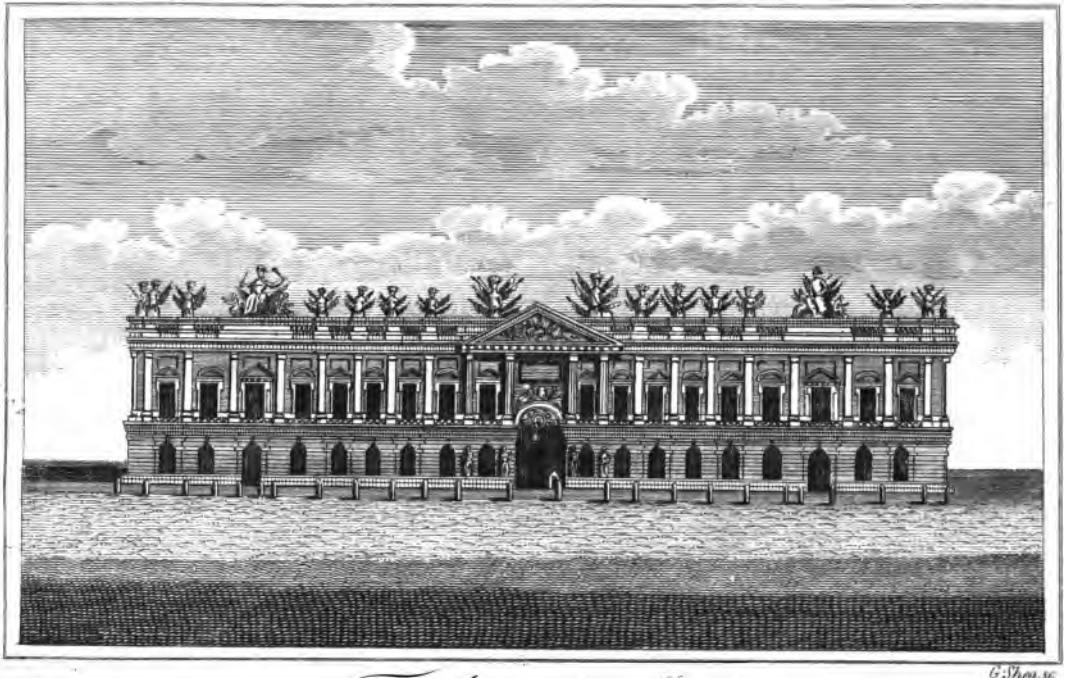
Here are the pictures of Charles V. and his empress, the frames of which are of silver, each weighing six centners, or six hundred and sixty pounds; and there is a grand crown lustre of seventeen centners. There are also pieces of three, four or five, centners, and a grand music gallery, finely ornamented, all of silver: one end of a large apartment, for about twenty feet high, and as many broad, is richly furnished with gilt plate: all this is merely parade, the court having other services of plate for use.

The king's particular apartments are elegant, but have nothing extraordinary; the prevailing taste is white stucco and gilding. Several of the private apartments have tables, with pens, ink, and loose papers, which indicate the hurry and dispatch of business, more than the regularity and elegance one

naturally expects to find in a royal palace. The hall has several good paintings, and the grand saloon is adorned with four pieces of tapestry, representing our Saviour driving out the money-changers, his washing the disciples feet, the miraculous draught of fishes, and his last supper. The throne in the audience chamber is of velvet, embroidered with gold in a grand taste, but not loaded with ornaments. There is nothing extraordinary in the old quarter of the palace, except a bed of crimson velvet, which has above two hundred cyphers, with electoral crowns, all set with pearls, and the chairs in this room are in the same taste. It is usual for persons of the blood-royal to lie in this bed on the first night of their marriage.

The arsenal forms one side of the palace, and is said to be well furnished with arms; but as the visiting it is attended with some disagreeable ceremonies, our author declined it. This is a very elegant structure, but has rather too great a profusion of ornaments; these are, however, extremely well adapted to the nature of the building: but of this noble edifice the reader may form a more perfect idea from the plate we have here given.

From the palace he went to the library, which would be a mean apartment for a common school. But all who appear like gentlemen, have the liberty of reading here from ten in the morning till two in the afternoon. Here are five hundred bibles of different languages and editions, and one kept as a kind of relic, said to be that which Charles I., king of England, used when he was beheaded. It was presented by Dr. Juxon to the elector of Brandenburg. Here is also the koran in manuscript in a small octagon; the character is so minute, and the paper so



G. Shea sc.

The Arsenal at Berlin.

Dublin. Published by J. Christie, 17 Ross Lane.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

G. Shee sc.

The Theatre at Berlin.

Dublin. Published by J. Christie. 17 Rose Lane.

thin, as to be only one inch and a half in bulk: there are likewise several manuscripts on religion, morals, and politics, said to be wrote by cardinal Mazarin.

The opera-house is an elegant modern edifice; the scenes are splendid, and in an exquisite taste. It has three galleries, and will contain about two thousand persons. The columns that support the roof are calculated to throw the whole into a grand saloon, but are apt to obstruct the movement of the scenes. The orchestra consists of about fifty musicians, who are paid a very moderate price for their labour. This amusement is entirely supported at the king's expence, and rendered in some degree subservient to the ends of government. In the upper-galleries, on each side of the stage, six trumpeters are seated, who salute the queen-consort when she enters the house or retires; but the king forbids this salutation to his own person.

Mon Bijou was the residence of the queen-mother, who was sister to George I., king of Great Britain. This is a small but elegant palace. Here is a pretty gallery of blue and white porcelain, and in another apartment there are several rich pieces of Saxon porcelain. The gardens are small, and proportioned to the size of the building.

The city of Berlin has a regular fortification, though it is not very formidable. Strangers remark, that Berlin is a little Paris, the French language being generally as well understood as the German. The city abounds in elegant structures and regular streets; it is near one third as large as London, but does not contain more than an eighth part of the inhabitants: whence it is obvious why grass is found growing in the principal streets. The people here make woollen cloth sufficient for the army, and great

part of their home consumption. They are supplied with linen from Silesia. Many thousand French manufacturers having found protection in this country, gold and silver lace, and wrought silks, are hardly to be bought in any other place so cheap. It was with surprise Mr. Hanway learned, that the environs of Berlin produced four hundred pounds weight of raw silk.

Before Mr. Hanway took his final leave of Berlin, his curiosity carried him to the palace of Charlottenburg, which is about a German mile distant from that city. There is a range of about ten apartments well disposed, adorned with white stucco and gilding. The ball-room is worthy of the king, who is said to have designed it. It has ten windows on each side, and besides the stucco and gilding, which are here richer than in the other rooms, it is adorned with busts, statues, and large pier-glasses. The gardens are laid out with taste, and the statues well disposed.

Potsdam is agreeably situated on a branch of the Spree; it is of a considerable extent, and the buildings neat and regular; but it seems to be entirely occupied by soldiers. The palace, which has not been long built, is small but elegant, particularly the king's writing-chamber and study: the last is partitioned off by balustrades of silver. The frames of the looking-glasses, and embellishments of the tables, are also of the same metal. The officers dine every day in a large apartment at the king's expence. The throne in the audience-chamber is richly embroidered with the arms of the house of Brandenburg, supported by two Herculeses. In one of the apartments are curious figures in copper, representing a Chinese man sitting, and a woman of

the same country holding an umbrella over him. These figures, which are richly gilt, stand in an oval niche laid with marble, and form a very convenient stove. In the gardens are many large and elegant statues, particularly a Neptune and Amphitrite seated in a sea-car, in a large bason, opposite the east front of the palace. The stables, which are contiguous, are furnished with good English hunters.

In Potsdam are quartered the king's guards, who are about two thousand men, of great stature and comeliness, well clothed, and distinguished by silver-laced hats and black cockades. The Prussian soldiers in general are remarkable for the shortness of their coats, which at first view seems to proceed from a ridiculous frugality, but is most plainly calculated for wise ends. Their clothes sit extremely close to their bodies, and are strengthened at the elbows with leather, in the form of a heart, which prevents the necessity of patching an old garment. A Prussian soldier is never seen in rags; but all appear as gentlemen, with respect to the cleanliness of their persons. The king's guards, and some other regiments, have new clothes every year; but, in general, the army has new regimentals only twice in three years.

As Sans Souci, or Without Care, is in the neighbourhood of Potsdam, Mr. Hanway indulged his curiosity in going to see that retreat, before he took his leave of the electorate of Brandenburg. The building seems intended as a summer-house and library to the palace of Potsdam, from which it is about an English mile distant. It is situated upon an eminence, and commands a fine view of the town, and a small branch of the Spree, which runs by the

side of the gardens. The apartments are mostly on the ground-floor, and are elegantly finished. From the house to the lower part of the garden is a descent of about a hundred and twenty yards, by six several ranges of stone steps, and as many terraces, the sides of which are all planted with vines; these are covered with glass, to shelter them from the cold, and standing full to the south and south-east sun, the fruit is well ripened. The garden below has several fine statues, particularly a Venus drawing a net, and a Diana with game, the pedestals of which are finely adorned with relievo. This garden is not half an English mile in length, and the east end of it is terminated by an Egyptian pyramid, embellished with hieroglyphics. The garden, however, has but little turf, and no gravel, and the sandy walks rob it of half its beauty.

On the 23d of August Mr. Hanway proceeded through woods and sandy plains to Britzen, which is the Prussian frontier. He then entered the electorate of Saxony, where the beauty of the verdure, and the richness of the soil, intermixed with groves, and covered with herds of cattle, gave an idea of plenty, superior to what is found in Brandenburg; yet the economy and happiness of the Prussians compensate so greatly for this inequality, that many of the Saxons have taken refuge in Brandenburg; and, for the sake of the government, choose the sandy soil of that country. Hence the towns, built by the king of Prussia on his own frontiers, are almost entirely peopled by Saxons.

Mr. Hanway at length arrived at Wittenburg, a fortified town situated near the Elbe, famous for the manufacture of coarse cloth: the wool in this country is remarkably good. Cloths are sent hither from all

parts to be dyed; and the blues and greens, commonly called Saxon, are best dyed here. In this place is an academy, which contains about seven hundred students; and the Sokoloff church, a building of about three hundred years standing, where Martin Luther first preached the doctrine that occasioned his leaving the Romish religion. In this church that great reformer is also interred; but has no other monument than a brass plate with an inscription, except his original portrait at length, painted on wood, and well preserved since the year 1540. The people here have a strong tincture of superstition; among other instances of which, the credulous say, that the devil visited Luther in the library which now belongs to the academy, but that the reformer was so unpolite as to throw his ink-stand at him.

In passing through this electorate Mr. Hanway observed, that the richness of the soil did not seem to diminish the poverty of the inhabitants. The country about Grossehagen abounds with large storks with black tails, and wings tipped with the same colour. On the 25th he passed by Molsberg, a hunting-palace belonging to the king of Poland, elector of Saxony, situated on an eminence near the village of Isingberg, about eight English miles from Dresden. The avenue which leads to it is very long, and planted on each side with wild chesnut-trees: it has a good garden, and is encompassed with woods, where the elector takes such delight in hunting the wild-boar, that he sometimes remains there three months together. Hunting, indeed, is the favourite diversion of the Saxon court; but by this diversion the industrious inhabitants are more distressed than the brutes. Above 30,000 head of deer are said to

range in the open lands and forests; and though they break into the corn-fields of the farmer, he dare not kill one, under the penalty of being condemned to the galley. These, with the wild-boars, are so great a nuisance, that the Saxons would gladly compound to support a body of 8,000 soldiers extraordinary, on condition of having these animals reduced to half their present number. In every town of any note, fifty of the inhabitants keep watch, five every night, by rotation, with bells to frighten the deer, and defend their corn from these devouring enemies.

The peasants of this country carry provisions a great distance to market on wheel-barrows, which are well adapted for that purpose, both in height and other dimensions. The wheel is bound with iron, and is both larger and lighter than those used in England.

Dresden, the metropolis of this electorate, is situated in the midst of a plain, surrounded by lofty hills about two leagues distant, the nearest of which are converted into vineyards. The city stands on both sides the Elbe, which are joined by a stone bridge five hundred and forty feet long, and thirty-six broad, containing eighteen arches: but the passage over it being horizontal, takes off from that grand effect which a curve produces in those structures. Upon it is a brazen crucifix of curious workmanship. In this city are several squares, and lofty stone buildings six or seven stories high, which make an elegant appearance, but are inferior in beauty to those of Berlin; besides, many of the streets are narrow. Near the entrance of the new city is an equestrian statue of king Augustus II., erected on a lofty pedestal, said to be made by a

common smith, and as such may be admired, though it has many capital defects, particularly in the horse's head.

The trade of Dresden is very inconsiderable; the most important article is the silver brought in ingots every fifteen days from the mines near Fridburg, to the amount of about 20,000 dollars, or £3,500. This silver is immediately coined into florins of sixteen grosch, which, with respect to the current money of bats, driers, &c. is worth seven per cent. advance; and is, therefore, so speedily conveyed into the neighbouring territories, to be coined again, that it is next to impossible to obtain change in this money for a single louis-d'or in the ordinary commerce of the people.

Among the other calamities under which this country labours, the jealousy arising from religion is none of the least. The established Lutheran clergy oppress the Calvinists, who are obliged to have not only all their marriages and burials, but even their christenings performed by Lutherans; while both think themselves extremely injured by the countenance given at court to the Roman Catholics; and they think it a gross absurdity for a protestant people to be governed by a Romish prince: for, according to the established constitution of Saxony, the Roman Catholics cannot have a church in Dresden.

Mr. Hanway visited the Grune-Gewolbe, a part of the royal palace consisting of several rooms filled with curiosities collected at an immense expence.

The first chamber contains a hundred small but curious statues, the greatest part in brass, particularly an equestrian statue of Augustus II., king of Poland, Frederic William the Great, after the

famous statue in Berlin, Lewis XIV., Mercurius, centaurs, &c.

The second chamber contains a variety of figures in ivory, and among others one of Abraham offering up his son Isaac, with the angel descending, all of exquisite workmanship; a fine crucifix, and a ship completely rigged, the ropes represented with gold wire.

The third contains a variety of figures in silver, particularly a large fountain and four vases of great size.

The fourth contains vessels of pure gold and silver gilt. The pannels of the room are of looking-glass.

The fifth is a spacious room, in which are many precious stones wrought with great art; a cup of lapis-nephriticus; a statue of Charles II. of England; a ball of crystal six inches in diameter, without blemish; a large goblet set round with the most curious and costly antiques; several fine tables of mosaic; the angel Michael vanquishing the devil, admirably performed in wood, and cost in England, where it was made, £2,500, with a multitude of cups, crystals, mother-of-pearl, &c.

The sixth chamber is of precious stones, with a great variety of pearls, set in a multiplicity of forms; as the royal crown, sceptres, balls, &c. of the king and queen, which are of false stones, the precious ones being taken out, and deposited in the next chamber; his present majesty of Poland curiously cut in onyx; a fine piece, made of precious stones, representing Jonas thrown into the sea.

The seventh and eighth chambers, containing jewels of immense value, are surrounded with glass-cases. Besides the jewels of the regalia, and several dozen of coat and waistcoat diamond buttons, there

is a brilliant as large as a moderate sized walnut, a green brilliant above an inch long; an oynx of seven inches, valued at 70,000 crowns; a gold cup representing Diana in a bath; but the greatest curiosity is, an exact representation of the throne of the Great Mogul, in silver figures, enamelled in colours, and adorned with precious stones. There is a view of potentates bringing presents, and falling prostrate at the throne, with elephants, servants, soldiers, and attendants.

Mr. Hanway having gratified his curiosity by the sight of this expensive collection, went to take a view of the Kunstkammer, or Cabinet of Curiosities.

The first chamber contains a collection of prints from the commencement of the art of engraving to the present time.

The second is the mineral-gallery, in which are earths of different countries, and ores of every denomination.

The third contains petrifactions, particularly of wood, animals, &c. In the fourth chamber, which is a very large one, are different kinds of wood and vegetables; in particular there is a cabinet with three hundred and fifty squares, as big as the palm of a large hand, of so many different kinds of wood. In this apartment are also the pictures of a man and his wife, who lived near Tameswar; the man was 185 years of age, and his wife 172.

In the first chamber is a small cabinet of skeletons, and other anatomical curiosities. The sixth contains the skins of a variety of animals stuffed. The seventh has the skins of fishes stuffed. The eighth has a great quantity of different kinds of shells. In the ninth is a cabinet, of about six feet high, and four broad, every drawer of which has

some natural curiosity in amber. In the tenth is a grotto, with springs of water. In the eleventh are many curiosities in coral. The twelfth contains the skeletons of lions, bears, &c. of a prodigious size; and the stuffed skins of some extraordinary beasts, particularly a horse, whose mane is said to be three ells and a half long, and his tail twelve and a half. Mr. Hanway did not measure either, but was satisfied with the greatness of the curiosity, from the apparent length of them.

From these apartments Mr. Hanway was conducted to another at some distance, to see a model of Solomon's temple, cut in cedar, as described in the Old Testament, with all its furniture. This piece cost 12,000 crowns.

Our author next took a view of the gallery of pictures, which is one of the finest in the world; part of the collection consists of a hundred capital pieces, which are said to be all originals, and to have cost half a million of crowns. The whole collection consists of above two thousand pieces, the capital works of Raphael, Rubens, Corregio, and all the great masters. They are valued at between two and three millions of crowns, or near £500,000.

Mr. Hanway next visited the Chinese palace, so called from the taste of the building, and the furniture. It stands on the Elbe, and commands a view of the bridge, and the Romish chapel. The ornaments of the architecture, and the relievo of the frontispiece, are in the Chinese taste; but this is far from being an elegant structure. It has fourteen rooms, in which are a great number of leopards, wolves, bears, monkeys, squirrels, &c., some as big as the life, with elephants and rhinoceroses of the size of a dog; a prodigious quantity of birds and

fowl, with a curious collection of different flowers, all of Dresden porcelain. The apostles, near three feet high, are in white porcelain. There is a representation of the crucifixion, four or five feet high, with many other curious pieces. A clock is preparing for the gallery in this palace, the bells whereof are of China, but the hammers must be of wood. But what is most wonderful; here are forty-eight China vases, which appear to be of no use, nor anywise extraordinary, except for their great size; and yet the present elector's father was so charmed with them, that he purchased them of the late king of Prussia, at the price of a whole regiment of dragoons.

The king's gardens, though agreeable, want the natural beauties afforded by an inequality of ground. The palace situated in them is small; but the approach to it is by a grand avenue, of a considerable length. A field for tournaments is in the front, and behind it is a fine piece of water. The gardens are on the sides, and are adorned with a profusion of marble statues, many of them bigger than the life. They show the genius of the late king, who, being entirely devoted to his amours, left them to after ages as monuments of his lasciviousness. The orangery, which is in another part of the town, has four hundred orange-trees, of a very large size, and many exotics.

The palace of count Bruhl has been built at several times, and the apartments are elegant and richly furnished. They are adorned with lustres of porcelain, in beautiful figures; the tables have a variety of tea equipages, and the figures of men and women, birds and beasts, of porcelain. The drawing-room is pannelled with looking-glass, and

the cabinet furnished with enamels and crayons. The house, and gardens belonging to it, are situated on the Elbe, near the bridge, and command a pleasant prospect. His library, which is in the garden, is two hundred and twenty feet long, and well furnished with books: but what is most striking is the gallery of pictures, which though it does not contain a fourth part so many as the royal gallery, is incomparably more magnificent. It is one hundred and fifty-six ells long, and the paintings are shown to great advantage, by being ranged only on one side, and fronted by lofty windows, that afforded sufficient light to show the minutest beauties of this excellent collection. The pannels between the windows are of looking-glass, against which are placed statues and busts, that have a grand effect.

It is pretended that there are 30,000 towns and villages in Saxony, of which sixty are to be seen from some eminences near Dresden. They also reckon that the whole electorate has four millions of people. The people are burdened with heavy taxes.

On the 30th of August Mr. Hanway left Dresden, and travelled towards Meissen. He was delighted with the rural beauties of the country; the corn-fields, gardens, meadow-lands and pasture, produced a charming effect: the banks of the Elbe were adorned with a great number of vineyards; and the industry of the people made them form the steepest hills into a number of terraces, covered with vines. On approaching Meissen the valley grows narrow, and part of the houses of the banks of the Elbe are built on rocks, which rise perpendicular from the river, and form a very agreeable and romantic scene. The castle of Meissen, in which

is the porcelain manufactory, is situated on the western bank of the Elbe, three German miles from Dresden, and is a large building, capable of some defence. The secrecy with which this manufactory is conducted is remarkable, for there is no admittance into the works without an order from the governor of Dresden; nor are the workmen ever seen without the gates; for they are all confined as prisoners, and subject to be arrested, if they go without the walls: for this reason a chapel, and every thing necessary is provided within. The workmen amount to about seven hundred, most of whom have not above ten German crowns a month, and the highest wages are forty; so that the annual expence is not estimated at above 80,000 crowns.

After passing the Elbe, Mr. Hanway entered a plain country, where the soil is rich and well cultivated; towns, woods, and pasture lands, are agreeably intermixed, and unite to give an idea of riches and pleasure; yet the inhabitants are poor, for the taxes fall heavy on the labourers.

Mr. Hanway at length arrived at St. Hubertsburg, another of the hunting palaces belonging to the king. The adjacent country is proper for the sport, and the king's dogs and horses are kept in order by being exercised twice a week.

CHAP. VIII.

An account of Leipsic, and a succinct view of the little sovereignties of Anhalt Koethen, Anhalt Dessau, Binburg, and Zerbst; a description of the cities of Magdeburgh, Wolfenbuttel, and Brunswick; of the city of Hanover, and palace of Herenhausen.

ON the 31st of August Mr. Hanway left St.

Hubertsburg, and proceeding along a pretty good road, passed by several towns and villages to Leipsic, one of the greatest towns in Germany, though it has no river of consequence near it. Magdeburg, which is seated on the Elbe, is fourteen German miles and a half distant, and merchandize is brought from Hamburgh by that channel. Here are three fairs, viz. on New Year's-day, Easter, and Michaelmas; but that of Easter is the most considerable. To these fairs resort the Poles, Hungarians, Bohemians, Prussians, people from all parts of Germany, the French, Italians, and even Russians, who all bring the produce of their respective countries. But what has distinguished Leipsic is, the liberty of conscience granted to all people. Hence the inhabitants have been industrious in the cultivation of knowledge and moral improvement; and here is an university, which is still very considerable. The inhabitants amount to about 40,000 within the gates, and the suburbs are very populous. There are six churches for the Lutherans, theirs being the established religion, one for the Calvinists, and a chapel for the Roman Catholics, which is in the castle. The fortifications seem rather calculated for the use of the inhabitants to walk on, than for defence. The city is of small extent; but the houses are very lofty, and have elegant fronts. The streets are clean, commodious, and agreeable, and there are two large squares, which are used as markets.

On the 2d of September Mr. Hanway departed for Landsperg, where he re-entered the Prussian dominions, the passage from one sovereignty to another being, in these parts, very frequent; and from thence proceeded to the city of Koethen, in the petty sovereignty of the prince of Anhalt

Koethen. They have three churches, and the principal manufactory of gold and silver-lace in all Germany. The people of the little independent sovereignties of Koethen, Dessau, Binburg and Zerbst, in the opinion of the Saxons, live in the land of milk and honey. The security with which a person travels in this part of the world is very extraordinary: the people are sober, and the duties of morality and religion are taught not only by their pastors but by their parents; whence thefts and robberies in time of peace are hardly known among the Germans.

On the 3d Mr. Hanway arrived at Magdeburg, which contains eight German Lutheran, and two Calvinist churches. The fortifications of this city are very remarkable, and famed all over Europe. It belongs to the king of Prussia, and is also famous for its great magazines of merchandize. These goods are brought from Hamburgh on the Elbe, in flat-bottomed boats, and from hence sent by land to Leipsic, and other parts.

Mr. Hanway was yet in the Prussian dominions, when his postilion attempting to pass by a particular way, to avoid paying the duty demanded on the road, an officer, posted at an avenue to prevent this practice, rode up, stopped his chariot, and seized one of the horses as a trespass: nor would he desist, till our author alighting with a pistol in his hand, let him know, that whatever fault the postilion had committed, it could not possibly reach him, as he had paid for the horses, according to the laws, and was travelling under the protection of those laws; and therefore if he would detain him, he would resist him as a robber: upon which the officer thought proper to let him pass. The German postilions

wear the liveries of the countries to which they belong; in Brandenburg they are blue, in Saxony, yellow. They use small French horns, and some of them play in no disagreeable manner, but the majority make a shocking noise.

He next came to Helmstet, which belongs to the duke of Brunswick, and is surrounded with an old fortification. From thence he departed for Wolfenbuttel, which is four long German miles farther: the road is good, but the country hilly, and the valleys abound in cattle. The inhabitants have the appearance of great health and easy circumstances.

Mr. Hanway arrived at Wolfenbuttel after the gates were shut, but procured admission. The fortifications are neat and regular, but not calculated for an extraordinary defence. The houses are low, but the streets clean. The next day he travelled along a pleasant road to Brunswick, the walls of which are lofty. Here are several churches: one of them is a very ancient Gothic structure; the ceiling is ornamented with twenty large paintings, representing the prophets of the Old Testament in the clouds of heaven, which give the edifice a very solemn air. The high altar is of marble, adorned with the statues of the four evangelists, and supported below by Moses and Aaron.

The palace of Saltzdahlen is situated above a German mile from Brunswick, in a very mean village; but is worthy of being seen. The greatest part of the edifice is of timber, and the rooms are mostly lined with painted cloth, which gives them an air of grandeur at a small expence. The garden is in no bad taste; but the statues are very mean. The gallery of pictures is a noble apartment, and

contains many capital pieces done by the greatest masters.

The duchy of Brunswick carries on a trade of some consequence with Bohemia. The country abounds in hops, that are esteemed the best in Germany; and has also great plenty of turnips, of the seed of which they make good oil.

On Mr. Hanway's approaching the city of Hanover, it appeared at the distance of a long German mile, as if it stood in the midst of a wood.

Hanover is, in many respects, a pleasant city, and though it does not equal Berlin and Dresden, may be esteemed elegant. It is watered by the Leina, which is a branch of the Aller, that runs into the Weser, and has consequently a communication with Bremen; but it has no trade worth mentioning. The fortifications are not very formidable, but the walks round them are very agreeable.

The palace is situated on the banks of the Leina, and having suffered greatly by a fire, a considerable part of it had been rebuilt. It had several courts, and the rooms are grand and commodious: this palace is most distinguished by many of the rooms being hung with very rich tapestry. The opera house, and the theatre for the French commedians, are both within the palace, and though ancient, are commodious. The whole is rather rich, decent and elegant, than very splendid.

The king's forces in the electorate in time of peace are said to be twenty-four thousand, and the revenues of the electorate are about four millions of dollars, or £700,000, a considerable part of which arises from the silver mines. The number of inhabitants in the city of Hanover hardly exceeds 50,000.

But nothing excites the curiosity of travellers like the palace of Herenhausen, situated about two English miles north of the city. The way is through an agreeable avenue of trees, but the road is sandy. However, Mr. Hanway observes, that he does not know whether he was more mortified or suprised to find that the building fell vastly short of his expectations.

CHAP. IX.

Our author proceeds to Zell, and from thence to Hamburgh and Bremen, which is described. He arrives at Amsterdam: a description of that city, and of the manners of the Dutch: and also of Haerlem, Leyden, the Hague, Dort, Rotterdam, and Helvoet, where Mr. Hanway embarks for England, and lands at Harwich.

ON the 15th of September Mr. Hanway left Hanover and proceeded to Zell. The chief production of the country near the road is turf, which serves as fuel for the neighbouring inhabitants. In several places he observed, about three feet from the surface of the earth, the remains of ancient buildings, which the common people foolishly think remained there ever since the deluge.

Zell, which is subject to the house of Hanover, is a considerable fortified place. The palace is also fortified by a wall and a moat; and, being situated on an eminence, commands an extensive prospect. Here are four Lutheran churches, one French, one Dutch reformed church, and one for the Roman Catholics. The houses are mostly mean, and built of wood. The town has a small trade with Bremen, by means of the river Aller.

From thence our author travelled four German miles to see Weissendorf, the greatest part of the way appearing like a desert, with only three or four mean villages; but there are flocks of sheep, and a little corn. This electorate supplies the greatest part of Germany with mutton, as Brandenburg and Westphalia produces hogs, and Hungary beef; but as each of these countries produces corn enough for its own consumption, the trade in that article of commerce is very small. On the 17th he reached Hamburgh. The banks of the Elbe below that city are in some places very high, and exhibit a delightful view of several small islands in the middle of the river, which is five or six English miles over. It is very unlucky for travellers, who are disposed to entertain a good opinion of the electorate of Hanover, that the road from the metropolis across the country to the Elbe, in the way to Hamburgh, has so barren and desolate an appearance. The districts of Zell and Lunenburgh are by no means scenes of pleasure; but at some distance from the road in Hanover, it is said the lands are fertile and well-peopled.

Hamburgh is a Hanse-town of the greatest importance of any in Europe; for its situation for trade, and the reputation of its laws, have long furnished it with opulent inhabitants. It stands in the duchy of Holstein, on the north side of the Elbe, where that river forms many islands; and some part of the town is so low, that the inhabitants are much incommoded by the overflowing of the water when there are high tides, and north-west winds. The houses are strong and lofty, and many of them extremely neat; but most of the streets are so narrow, as hardly to suffer wheel-carriages to pass each

other: their coachmen are, however, remarkably dexterous. This place is, with respect to Germany, what Amsterdam is to Europe, a magazine of the different produce and merchandize of the trading world. Many of the houses are built on the very edge of the canals, so that ships may unload into their warehouses. The British factory there is possessed of as distinguished privileges as any body of foreigners enjoy in any part of the commercial world.

The fortifications of the town on the land side are considered as very strong. The walks round the ramparts extend about four English miles, and in most parts are very pleasant. On the east side is a large sheet of water, within the walls, formed by a small river called the Alster, on which the town's people amuse themselves in summer, by rowing about in boats, attended by music. The citizens have also several gardens on the banks of the Elbe and the Alster, some of which are agreeable; but being mostly in the Dutch taste, they are very small, but kept in excellent order, so as to appear rather like a puppet-show than a rural scene.

The city is divided into five parishes, in which are five capital churches. The Lutheran is the established religion; but there is not a toleration as in London and Amsterdam: the Roman Catholics are objects of great jealousy; but the Jews, who support themselves by commerce and brokerage, are indulged.

The government of the city is composed of four burgomasters, twenty-four senators, fourteen of whom are chosen from among the merchants, and ten bred to the study of the law: there are also four sindics or lawyers, who act as secretaries of state, and

under these are four sub-secretaries: besides these, each of the parishes has three officers, in the nature of the tribunes of the people among the ancient Romans, and nothing of moment is resolved on by the senate without their concurrence. The number of inhabitants may be reckoned at 180,000, and the suburbs and adjacent villages contain as many more. The manufactures of this place, except baking sugar, and printing calicoes, are very inconsiderable.

The better sort of people are extremely affable, but the women are very reserved; they generally go veiled with black silk, but when they have reason to entertain a favourable opinion of their own beauty, they wear them so as not to hide their faces. There is here no appearance of state and grandeur, their chief pursuit being trade. As there are no marks of regal authority, to create a due subordination, the easy circumstances of the greatest part of the inhabitants have introduced a species of insolence, peculiar to a republican state, and the common people tread close upon the heels of those of higher rank.

On the 30th of September Mr. Hanway left Hamburgh and arrived at Blankeness, which is two short German miles from that city, through a delightful road on the banks of the Elbe, which gives a fine and extensive view of part of the Hanoverian dominions on the west, and of the Danish territories in Holstein, on the east of that river. There is no stage for post-horses. The ferry is very small for a wheel-carriage, and the rusticity of the Danish boors is apt to create vexations; they very frequently staying on shore to decide, by a certain game, who shall attend the passenger. The breadth of the river here is about an English mile; and near the same

distance up a creek is Crantz, a mean village in the Hanoverian dominions. There being no post at this place, the peasants are obliged to find horses for passengers at a certain rate. Crantz is but a mean place, though it extends above two English miles. It is built on the top of a high bank, intended to resist the overflowing of the Elbe, which sometimes happens. The country abounds in meadow and corn lands.

On the 1st of October Mr. Hanway pursued his journey to Closter-seven through an indifferent road. The country is but thinly inhabited. From thence to Ottersburg is three German miles, through a sandy country; but as he approached towards Bremen he found it much improved. Within an English mile of Bremen he took notice of three stones, on which were the arms of the British crown; these serve to mark out the boundaries of the Hanoverian dominions.

Bremen is situated in a plain, on both sides the river Weser, over which it has a bridge. The duchy in which it stands formerly belonged to the Swedes; but being conquered by the Danes, they sold it to the elector of Hanover in 1716; yet only a small quarter of the town, in which stands a church called the Dome, is subject to that electorate: the rest, with its territories, is free, and under its own laws and magistrates; these are four burgomasters, and twenty-four senators, chosen out of the citizens who profess Calvinism, which is the established religion; and they have five churches for the citizens of that persuasion. The inhabitants are supposed to amount to 30,000; and one would imagine that they are extremely pious, Soli Deo gloria, or Glory to God alone, being in large characters over their doors and windows, both within and without.

Most of the streets are narrow; but many houses make a good appearance, and the shops are well stocked with merchandize. The city has a town-house, an exchange, and water-works, by which it is supplied from the river. In the market-place is the figure of a giant, fourteen feet high, clothed in armour, said to represent a general named Rowland, or Royland, who, they say, saved the city when it was in the utmost danger from the Swedes. But what is most remarkable is the church, called the Great Dome, belonging to the Lutherans, the people of that persuasion being almost as numerous as those of the established religion. It is an ancient gothic structure, reputed to be about six hundred years old; and under it is a vault, in which are the bodies of several persons, said to be deposited in it a hundred and thirty years before Mr. Hanway was there, and had been discovered forty years before that time to be entire. The linen, in which they are dressed, is as light as tinder; their skins look black and parched, but their features are distinguishable; they are extremely light, and the cohesion of the parts are entire. The vault, which is about six feet below the surface of the earth, and vaulted eight or nine feet high, appears to have nothing extraordinary, except that the air seems temperate, and the walls perfectly dry. A dead cat, that was accidentally thrown in through the window, was preserved as well as the human bodies. The vault is not suffered to be cleaned, from the idle opinion that it may lose its virtue. Several persons have offered considerable sums, to have their bodies deposited there, to which the priests object, alleging the sentence of God, 'That man shall return to dust.' However, it is probable that the magistrates do not

choose to indulge these persons, as the Lutheran is not the established church.

From Bremen is a long causeway, the country being often covered with water. About a mile from the town, Mr. Hanway re-entered the Hanoverian dominions, and, after a journey of three long German miles, he arrived at Wildeshausen, a principal town, and the residence of the great bailiff of the district, of which there are twenty-five in the Hanoverian territories.

From thence he travelled to Hasselune, a pretty agreeable town belonging to the elector of Cologn. He then came to Lingen in the circle of Westphalia. This town is subject to the king of Prussia, and has a small fortification. The breadth of the streets, and regularity of the houses, give the traveller a striking idea of that good order for which the Prussians are so much distinguished. This town formerly belonged to William III., king of England, and on his death devolved to the house of Brandenburg.

On the 4th of October, our author approaching the dominions of the United Provinces, arrived at Northorn, where the women appeared to be almost blinded with the smoke arising from the turf, which they have here in great abundance, this part of the country producing scarce any thing else. The heaths preserved for the production of this fuel, are larger than is generally imagined, considering the small extent of the dominions of the estates; but except these, the hand of industry appears in a very remarkable degree: the inclosure of meadows, corn land, and kitchen-gardens, plantations of trees, and banks which are thrown up for roads, demonstrate the labour of the peasant, and at the same time af-

ford an agreeable prospect. Their cows are red, and constitute their principal riches, by the great quantity of butter and cheese they produce. The little towns now began to exhibit that cleanliness, for which the Hollanders are so much distinguished. The marriages of this country are performed with a humorous solemnity; pillars and festoons of verdure, adorned with garlands and flowers, are prepared for the decorations of a nuptial feast, at the houses of the parties.

From Northorn he came to Deventer, a large city in the province of Overyssel, formerly a Hanse-town, but now subject to the States. It stands on the river Yssel, over which is a large wooden bridge, which subjects the passenger to a heavy toll. This river runs into the Zuyder Sea. The town is well fortified; the streets and houses are neat, and the shops well supplied with manufactures, and other necessaries. It has a good inland trade, but no manufactories.

From hence is a regular post four German miles to Voorthusen. The soil of the country is various. Near the midway is Loo, a famous seat of the prince of Orange. Voorthusen is a mean village, and the country has no agreeable aspect. He thence proceeded to Amersfort, two German miles; the first of which is through a sandy country, where there is but little cultivated land, or appearances of rich inhabitants; but towards Ovelach the country appears worthy of the reputation it has in the world: here are large plantations of tobacco, for the produce of which the land is thrown up in ridges two feet high.

Amersfort is an ancient and considerable town, in the province of Utrecht, on the small river Eems,

which runs into the river Zuyder Sea. Here is a very large church, that has an excellent set of chimes. The houses and streets are remarkably clean; but the manners of the people are far from being equally delicate. They show their rusticity in an apparent contempt of strangers. This town is supported by husbandry, and has a considerable trade in tobacco of its own growth. Many of the people wear wooden shoes, which are most convenient for their brick floors and incessant washing.

From Amersfort Mr. Hanway departed for Naarden, which is about two German miles distant. Here turnpikes are very numerous, and passengers are made to pay regularly in many places where there is no fence. About two English miles from Amersfort is Soesdyke, a palace belonging to the prince of Orange, that has a park said to be eight English miles in circumference. Being impatient to reach Amsterdam, he declined visiting Utrecht, remarkable for a treaty that has blotted the annals of England; but it is said to be one of the most agreeable places, and as worthy the attention of a traveller as any in the United Provinces.

The road to Naarden passes through regular plantations of trees, and the country is well cultivated and inhabited. This is the boundary of the province of Holland, and situated near the Zyder Sea. The fortifications are considerable. From hence to Amsterdam is reckoned two German miles: the whole country consists of pastures and gardens, that appear below the surface of the sea, if one may judge from the hulls of ships on the water. The road on the banks of the canals is made with great cost; and in the avenue to Amsterdam is a causeway, which has small villages and gardens belonging to

the citizens on each side, that greatly beautify the face of this artificial country.

The wonderful city of Amsterdam, as well as many other towns of the Netherlands, is a work of art and labour, not inferior to the greatest monuments of human industry in past ages. It is situated about 220 English miles from London, and derives its name from the river Amstel; it being formerly called Amsteldam, or the dam of the Amstel, which is the name generally given to it in authentic records. It is now reckoned about 400 years from its first beginning, and 270 from its being inclosed with walls. In 1570 the Dutch began to lay the foundation of their wealth and naval strength. About twenty years before that time, they embraced the doctrines of Calvin, and soon after shook off the Spanish yoke. The Spaniards exerted themselves upon this occasion, from religious as well as political motives; but they were unable to render that confederacy abortive, which at length united the Seven Provinces, and formed a powerful republic.

About the year 1600 the love of liberty and gain caused such a conflux of people thither, that the walls were extended; and since that time they have been farther enlarged, so that they are now about three leagues in circumference. The city is generally esteemed near one third as populous as London and Paris. Within the walls are reckoned 26,500 houses, and about 240,000 inhabitants, besides those in the suburbs, which are small. The greatest strength of the place is in the difficulty of access, both by sea and land; but the numerous shoals, that render the entrance of the Texel difficult, have not obstructed the progress of commerce. One remarkable proof of economy is obvious in the forti-

fications of the city; for the bastions, which are very numerous, have each a windmill.

Of all the buildings in Amsterdam, the town-house is the most distinguished. It is 282 feet in front, 232 deep, and 116 high, exclusive of the cupola. It cost three millions of guilders, or three hundred thousand pounds sterling, when money was more valuable than it is now; which will be less surprising, if we consider that it is founded upon thirteen thousand large piles. This is a very grand and useful building, and yet is neither elegant nor agreeable. It contains the offices and tribunals for the execution of the laws in the several branches of the military as well as civil government.

The exchange is two hundred and fifty feet long, and one hundred and forty broad; but it is much inferior in architecture and embellishment to that of London. It is supported by forty-six pillars, which are marked with numbers, and the merchants take their stands near particular pillars, to be more easily found. The city is guarded by a militia of the burghers.

The established religion is that of Calvinism, for which there are eleven churches for the Dutch, one for the English, two for the Germans, and two for the French; but the Roman Catholics are said to have near thirty places of worship. Besides these there are Lutherans and Baptists. The Jews are also numerous, and have their synagogues, as in London; but none of these religions, except the Calvinists, are allowed the use of bells; and the States invalidate all marriages not performed according to the rites of the established church, unless the parties first engage themselves in form before the civil magistrate, and then they may perform

G. Shea sc.

The Stadthouse at Amsterdam.

Published by J. Christie, 17 Ross Lane, Dublin.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

the ceremony according to their respective religions.

Mr. Hanway passing over the Y, which is also called the Ya, to Sardam, had an opportunity of observing the immense labour saved by windmills. Here they saw timber at a very easy rate; and he observed in one of these a tree, eight or nine inches in diameter, sawed into thirty-six boards, with great exactness. They here grind woods and other materials for dyeing, and make gunpowder and paper, of which here are the best manufactories in Holland. These mills are likewise employed in many other uses. This work is performed by very few hands, and the women are employed as well as the men; which gives a lively idea of that industry and economy from which the United Provinces have derived their wealth. Many of these windmills are erected at a great expence, from their being built on ground that is little better than a marsh.

With respect to their dykes, the Dutch have lately made great improvements: they now line many of their shores with large stones. The dyke to the Zuyder Sea is raised about sixteen feet perpendicular, and goes off upon an easy slope. The stones are here regularly laid, and form an excellent defence against the water: but the dykes toward the North Sea are said to be more lofty, and not to be supported but with piles, at a great expence.

The neighbourhood of a dreadful volcano cannot render the situation of the inhabitants more precarious than that of the Dutch is, from the nature of their country. In spite of their great skill and industry, the ocean has often passed its bounds, and

exhibited a lively picture of the general deluge. In 1530 a great part of Zealand was overflowed. In the same century seventy-two villages on the coasts of Holland and Friezland were swallowed up, and near 20,000 people perished; and in 1665 an inundation broke down the dyke of Muydenburg, and laid the whole country round Naarden, and many places in the province of Utrecht, under water. The dyke between Amsterdam and Haerlem, and many others, were also broke: but the calamity was no sooner over, than the inhabitants, in a great measure, repaired the damage.

Amsterdam is a prodigious magazine of corn, wine, timber, and many other commodities imported from abroad; while the inhabitants excel in sugar-baking, dyeing, bleaching of linen and wax, manufacturing of paper, sail-cloth, and no inconsiderable quantity of silk and wool. The herring and whale-fisheries produce immense riches, and their East-India trade is of the highest importance to them both in Europe and Asia.

Though there are many Hollanders who think judiciously, and, in some respects, live elegantly, the common people are extremely boorish. Our author observes, that he has seen a boatman in a great city, strut up and down a room with his hat on, his hands on his hips, and, with a careless air of insolence, spit at the feet of a gentleman who was treating him with civility, and giving him an opportunity of getting a guinea for an inconsiderable service. This they mistake for liberty, while their knowledge is confined to the common means of gain, and the gratifications of the calls of nature. Cheese, beer, geneva, brandy and tobacco, are the joys that seem to crown the labours of the common

people; but in their cups they are apt to mix cruelty with their rusticity.

Constant employment, coldness of complexion, and perhaps the nature of their food, may contribute to their being but little addicted to love. The women who are not of high rank, adorn their heads with gold lace, and other of the like ornaments, but with more frugality than is generally practised in Germany. Except a few court ladies, they have not much taste or delicacy in their manners. Some have good complexions, but there are few beautiful: their teeth are in general bad, and most of their children are sickly till the age of eight or ten. The women in this country seldom breed after they are thirty; and as the men are remarkable for wearing many breeches, the women, in cold weather, use pots, with live coals of wood or turf set in boxes, bored full of holes, and put under the petticoats: this is not only apt to make them old from the waist downwards, before the time ordained by nature, but the smell of the coals is offensive. Thus there is a proverbial saying, that "the dirtiest piece of furniture in the house of a Dutchman is his wife."

The revenues of Amsterdam are reputed to be one-fourth of what is paid by the Seven Provinces: they generally calculate two millions of people in the United Provinces, and two millions sterling, at the lowest computation, are annually paid in taxes.

On the 16th of October, Mr. Hanway took his leave of Amsterdam, and embarking at Haerlem-gate, took the roof or cabin of the treckscoot: these are stage-boats, extremely commodious, which set out at stated hours, and perform their passage at a certain time, almost to a minute. The Haerlem

canal is bounded by meadow lands, stocked with horned cattle; but there are not many houses near the banks. In two hours and a half he reached Haerlem, a considerable town, remarkable for its cleanness: its fortifications are, in some parts, only a brick wall. Here are twelve churches, of which only four are of the established religion. A little to the south of this city is Haerlem Meer, which is a large lake; but abounding in shallows, and being much exposed to the wind, the canal is much preferable for the commerce with Amsterdam.

Mr. Hanway having made a short stay at Haerlem, he embarked for Leyden. The banks of the canal to the last-mentioned city are higher than those of Haerlem. Here the cows are covered with body-clothes, from the opinion, that by keeping their backs warm, they give a greater quantity of milk; and the scene is diversified by several country-houses, plantations of trees, and agreeable walks. The distance to Leyden is fifteen English miles; he was exactly four hours on the way. This place is well known for its university, which has students from all parts of Europe. The city is neat and agreeable, and the gardens about it extremely fruitful; but as most other places in the United Provinces have too much water, this has not enough; nor has it such a communication with the sea as to afford a proper motion by tides to keep the water sweet.

From Leyden our author went, in three hours, to the Hague, which, having no inclosure, is called a village. The streets are broad; several of them are without canals, and the houses for the most part are extremely well built. The number of coaches belonging to the noblemen and gentlemen,

and the gay appearance in point of dress, give a very different idea of life from that of the trading cities. People here are more polite and easy in their behaviour, than in other parts of Holland; the most considerable persons in Europe meeting there, as well as the assembly of the States-General, which also draws thither the greatest part of the people of the first distinction in the United Provinces. Indeed the Hague may be considered either as a great city, or as a rural scene; the environs with which it is immediately inclosed being extremely delightful, while, as is customary in great cities, they have plays and other amusements, and at some distance a garden, in imitation of Vauxhall. There are, however, only two churches of any consequence.

On the 22d of October Mr. Hanway left the Hague and went to Delft, a very ancient and pleasant town, surrounded by flat meadow-lands, of considerable extent. This town, which is well known for its earthen-ware, is well peopled, the inhabitants being computed at above 20,000.

Our author went from thence to Rotterdam, which is hardly seven English miles distant, and may justly be esteemed the next in rank to Amsterdam. Indeed it has several advantages above that city, particularly with respect to the southern trade of Europe: besides, the navigation of the Maese is more safe and commodious than that of the Texel, and the air and water are better. The canals here being broad and deep, exhibit the view of a flourishing trade, by conveying ships of burden into the heart of that city. Among other public buildings is a very good exchange, for the use of the merchants: but the most remarkable edifice is, the

great church of St. Lawrence, in which are the monuments of several persons of distinction, particularly of their most celebrated sea-officers: on the great bridge is a statue of Erasmus. There are in this city great magazines of East-India goods, this place having a share of that trade. The British factory is very considerable, and is mostly composed of North-Britons, of the kirk of Scotland, who have a church here. During the war in Flanders, under the great duke of Marlborough, an episcopal church was built by contribution of the English officers, merchants and mariners, and is said to be the only regular episcopal church countenanced and established, belonging to British subjects, out of the dominions of Great-Britain.

On the 27th Mr. Hanway went down the Maese, in a yacht, to Helvoet-Sluys, the port from whence the Harwich packet sets out, on Wednesdays and Sundays. Though this is one of the best harbours in the United Provinces, yet the town is very inconsiderable, it having only three small streets, and a quay which is of considerable extent, and borders a great part of the harbour. From this place may be seen the island of Goree to the south, and Zealand to the north.

Mr. Hanway had here the pleasure to find a small squadron, with four yachts, belonging to the crown of Great-Britain, under the command of lord Anson, his Britannic majesty being expected to embark in his return from Hanover, in a few days: a sight which gave him the more pleasure, as he had not seen a British ship of war for near eight years before. He embarked on board the packet soon after his arrival, and landed at Harwich on the 28th, after a passage of twenty-four hours.

THE TRAVELS

OF

SIR JOHN CHARDIN THROUGH MINGRELIA AND GEORGIA INTO PERSIA.

CHAP. I.

He sails through the Thracian Bosphorus into the Euxine or Black Sea: touches at Caffa, Donslow, and Cape Cuodos; a description of the country of the Circassian Tartars; manners, customs, and religion of the Mingrelians; of the prinipality of Curiel, and the kingdom of Imeretta.

I LEFT Paris on the 17th of August 1671, to return to Persia, where the late king had, by letters patent, made me his merchant, and ordered me to procure many jewels of value, his majesty having drawn with his own hand, the models by which he would have them set. Mr. Raisin, a gentleman of great integrity, who had been my companion in my former travels, engaged again in this trade. We spent fourteen months in the richest countries of Europe, in search of the largest stones, and the finest wrought corals. We caused to be made the richest goldsmith's work, watches and curious clocks, and besides took with us 12,000 ducats in gold.

We travelled by the way of Milan, Venice and Florence, and arriving at Leghorn, embarked in a ship under a Dutch convoy; and sailed to Smyrna, which we reached on the 2d of March 1672,

Europe. The inhabitants also furnish Constantinople and several other places, with corn, butter and salt; for the Caffa butter is the best in all Turkey.

On the 30th of August we left Caffa, in a ship bound for Mingrelia, and the next day arrived at Donslow, on the salt-pits, which are situated on the shore, fifty miles from Caffa. Here are great quantities of salt made by letting in the sea-water, and suffering it to congeal by the heat of the sun. The people say that two hundred vessels are annually laden with this salt, paying only two shillings a day to those who load it. About a mile from the shore is a village of the Tartars, where there is not above ten or twelve houses, with a little mosque, and round about it a great number of tents, with several waggons close covered, which serve them instead of houses. Some of these tents are handsome enough, being made of round poles, with others crossing them, covered on the outside with large felts drawn tight over them. They have a door of the same, and above a little window, to admit the light, and to let out the smoke. The inside is hung with tapestry, and the floor also covered with it. Every family has not only one of these tents, but two others, covered with a large coarse woollen cloth, one for the servants and kitchen, in which is a pit five feet deep, to make a fire in for dressing their meat; the other tent is for their horses and cattle. Their corn and forage they store in magazines under ground, which they cover so exactly that none can find them but themselves. They can remove their tents with little trouble, and in a very short time; on which occasion they carry them away in carts drawn by horses

and oxen, of which they breed a great number: they profess the Mahometan religion; but intermix it with ridiculous opinions of divination.

From Donslow we sailed along the channel to Cape Cuodos, the Corocondama of Ptolomy, where the coasts that bound the lake Mœotis, which are very mountainous, are seen at thirty miles distance. From Caffa to the straits that open into this lake, is one hundred and twenty miles. The country on both sides is subject to the Turks, and thinly inhabited by the Tartars, almost all the coast being desert. From the strait to Mingrelia is reckoned six hundred miles along the shore, which consists of pleasant woods, thinly inhabited by the Circassian* Tartars, who are neither subject nor tributary to the Porte. The vessels that come from Constantinople to Mingrelia trade with this people, but do it with their arms in their hands, and by hostages; for they are remarkable for their infidelity and perfidiousness, and seldom fail to steal wherever they find an opportunity. The trade with them is carried on by exchange; the Circassians bring down slaves of all ages and sexes, honey, wax, leather, jackals, and the skins of some beasts, for such commodities as they want.

Circassia is a pleasant and fertile country, that produces great plenty of all sorts of fruit without labour, as apples, pears, cherries, walnuts; but the chief wealth of the inhabitants consists in cattle, as sheep, whose wool is as fine as that of Spain, deer, goats, and well-shaped horses, so swift and strong, that they will tire the wild beasts, and overtake

* The Turks call them Cherks; but they were named by the ancients Zagæans, or Mountaineers, and Pomponius Mela calls them Sargacians.

them in the chase. They sow no grain but millet for their bread, and barley for their horses, and their women till and manure the ground. Their drink is boza, which is a liquor made of millet, as intoxicating as wine. They live in wooden huts, and go almost naked: their beds are made of sheep-skins sowed together, and stuffed with millet leaves beaten in the thrashing as small as oat-chaff. They were formerly Christians; but now of no religion, except observing some superstitious ceremonies borrowed from the Christians and Mahometans; and they are all sworn enemies to those who live in the provinces round about them.

The Abcas border upon the Circassians, and possess about one hundred miles on the coast between Mingrelia and Circassia. They are not so savage as the Circassians, but are as much inclined to robbery; so that the merchants are obliged to take as much precautions in trading with them. They, like their neighbours, are in want of all the conveniences of life, and have nothing to exhange for them but human creatures, furs, the skins of deer and tygers, box-wood, wax and honey.

On the 10th of September we arrived at Isgaour, a port in Mingrelia, where all the vessels lie that trade thither. It is a desert place, without any houses; the traders, therefore, build themselves huts and booths of boughs for the time of their stay, which is usually as long as they find themselves safe from the Abcas.

Colchis or Mingrelia, is situated at the end of the Black Sea. It is bounded on the east by the little kingdom of Imeretta, on the south by the Black Sea, and on the north by Mount Caucasus,

The rivers Codours and Rione* part it, the first from Abcas, and the other from Imeretta. Its length is about one hundred and ten miles, and its breadth sixty. It was once fortified against the Abcas by a wall of sixty miles in length, which has been long since demolished.

The inhabitants of Caucasus, who border upon Colchis, are the Alanes, Suanes, Gugues, Caracioles, or Cara-cherks, that is, Black Circassians, so called by the Turks, not from their complexion, for they are esteemed the fairest people upon earth; but from their country, which is always darkened with clouds and fogs. They were anciently Christians, but now live by robbery and rapine, and profess no religion, having little besides speech that can entitle them to humanity. They are very tall and portly, and their very looks and speech show their savage dispositions, they being the most resolute assassins, and daring robbers in the world.

The ancient kingdom of Colchis was much larger than Mingrelia is at present, extending on one side to the lake Mœotis, and to Iberia on the other. Its capital city, named Colchos, was at the mouth of the Phasis, a river to the west. The country is uneven, full of hills and mountains, valleys and plains: it is almost covered with woods, except the manured lands, which are but few, and those preserved by grubbing up the roots that are continually spreading into them. The air is temperate with respect to heat and cold, but as it rains almost continually, the wetness and warmth of the climate breed in summer the pestilence, and several other diseases. It abounds with rivers, which descend

* Two famous rivers in ancient history, called the Corax and Phasis.

from Mount Caucasus, and fall into the Black Sea. The soil is very bad, and produces little corn or pulse, and the fruits are without taste, and unwholesome, except their vines, which thrive well, and produce most excellent wine. Did the inhabitants know how to prepare it in a proper manner, it would be the best wine in the world. The vines encompass the trunks of trees, and rise to their very tops. In the seed-time the earth is so moist, that they sow their wheat and barley without plowing; for they say, that should they plow it, the land would be so soft as not to be able to support the stalk. For their other corn they plow their lands with plow-shares of wood, which, in this moist soil, makes as good furrows as iron. Their common grain is gomm, which is as small as coriander seed, and resembles millet. Of this they make a paste, which they use for bread, and prefer it to wheat: this is not to be wondered at, for it is very agreeable to the palate, and conducive to health, it being cooling and laxative. They have also great plenty of millet, some rice, with wheat and barley, which are very scarce. The people of quality eat wheaten bread as a rarity, but the meaner sort seldom or never taste it.

The ordinary food of the country is beef and pork, of which last they have great plenty, and the best in the world: they have also goats flesh, but it is lean and ill-tasted. Their venison is, the hart, stag, and fallow deer: they have also wild boars and hares, all which are excellent food. They have partridges, pheasants and quails, in abundance, with some river-fowl, and wild pigeons, which are good meat, and as big as crammed chickens: these pigeons they take in nets, and thus catch great numbers in summer.

Their nobility spend their whole time in the field, using hobbies, goshawks, &c. for their sports, to catch water-fowl and pheasants; but the pastime in which they most delight is, flying the falcon at the heron, which they catch only for the sake of the tuft upon his crown, in order to put it on their bonnets, for they let him go again, when they have cut it off, that it may grow up afresh.

Mount Caucasus produces a great number of wild beasts, as lions, tigers, leopards, jackals and wolves; which last make great havoc among their cattle and horses, and frequently disturb the inhabitants in their houses, with their dreadful howlings. They have great numbers of very good horses, almost every man keeping several of them; for they cost little or nothing, as they neither shoe them nor feed them with corn. They have no cities nor towns, except two, by the sea-side: but their houses are so scattered up the country, that you can hardly travel a mile without seeing three or four of them. There are nine or ten castles in the country, the chief of which, where the prince keeps his court, is called Rues. This castle has a stone wall, but it is so small, and so ill-built, that it might be battered down by a small piece of artillery: it has, however, some cannon, which the other castles have not. They are made in the following manner: in the midst of a thick wood the people build a stone tower, thirty or forty feet high, capable of containing fifty or sixty persons. This tower is the place of strength, where they shut up all the riches of the prince. Near this tower are five or six others, of wood, which serve as magazines for provisions, and as places of retreat for their wives and children, in case of an attack. There are also seve-

ral huts made of wood, others of branches of trees, and others of canes and reeds. The area in which they are inclosed is surrounded by a close hedge, and by a wood, which is every where so thick, that it is impossible to find these retreats, but by the way cut to them, which is stopped up by trees, whenever they apprehend the approach of an enemy.

The houses of the Mingrelians are built with timber, which they have in great plenty; but the poorer sort never raise them above one story, nor the rich above two. The lower rooms are always furnished with beds and couches, to lie down or sit upon, on account of the moisture of the earth; but they are inconvenient, from their having neither windows nor chimneys, and but one room for the whole family; so that they all lie together, and at night have also their cattle along with them.

The men are well shaped, and the women so handsome, that they seem born to inspire love; yet they all paint their faces, and particularly their eyebrows. They dress themselves in as ornamental a manner as they can, wearing a Persian habit, and curling the hair. They are witty, civil, and full of compliments; but, on the other hand, are proud, deceitful, cruel and libidinous. The men have also many mischievous qualities; but that which they most practise is theft, and this they make their employment and glory. They justify the lawfulness of having many wives, by saying, that they bring them many children, which they can sell for ready money, or exchange for necessary conveniences; yet when they have not the means of supporting them, they hold it a piece of charity to murder new-born infants, and such persons as are sick and past recovery, because by this

means they free them from misery. Adultery and incest are scarce considered as crimes in Mingrelia: when a man catches another enjoying the embraces of his wife, he has a right to oblige him to pay a hog; he seldom takes any other method of revenge, and they all three commonly sit down to feast upon it. It is common for them to have two or three wives at a time.

As the gentry have full power over the lives and estates of their tenants, they sell or dispose of their wives and children as they think fit; besides, every husbandman is bound to furnish his lord with as much corn, wine, cattle, and other provisions, as is in his power. Thus his riches consist in the number of his peasants. The lords decide the quarrels of their vassals: but when they themselves are at variance, they determine the dispute by arms; and therefore all go armed with a lance, bow and sword.

Their dress is very singular. All the men, except the ecclesiastics, suffer but little of their beard to grow. They shave the top of the head, leaving only a little hair over the forehead, and down to their ears; and even that is clipped short. They wear a bonnet of fine felt, which, in winter, is lined with fur; but they are in general so poor, that, to prevent its being spoiled, they put it in their pocket when it rains, and go bare-headed. Those in mean circumstances go almost naked, and have in general only a covering of a triangular form, at one end of which is a hole, through which they put the head; this covering, which is of strong felt, they turn to the side from whence comes the wind or the rain. They wear shirts which reach to their knees, and tuck into a straight pair of breeches; but they never have above one shirt and one pair of breeches,

which last them a year; and in all that time they never wash the shirt above thrice. Their shoes, or rather sandals, are made of the raw skin of a buffalo, tied round the foot, and fastened with thongs of the same skins; but when the snow lies thick on the earth, they wear a kind of snow-shoes, which spreading much farther than the feet, prevent their sinking into it.

The whole family, both males and females, eat together without distinction: the king with all his train, to the very grooms, and the queen with her maids and servants. In fair weather, they dine in open court, and, if it be cold, make a large fire, for wood costs them nothing. Upon working days the servants have nothing but gomm, and the master pulse, dried fish or flesh; but on holydays, or when they make entertainments, if they have no venison, they kill an ox, a cow, or a hog. Both the men and women are very great drinkers, and at their feasts make their friends drink as much as possible. Their wine is drank unmixed, and beginning with pints, they proceed to much greater quantities. The men, at their merry meetings, discourse about their wars and robberies, and the women tell obscene tales of their amours.

Mingrelia is but thinly inhabited, which is occasioned by their wars, and the vast numbers sold by the nobility to the Persians and Turks. All their trade is carried on by the way of barter; for their money has no settled value. The current specie is, piastres, Dutch crowns, and abassis, which are made in Georgia, and bear the Persian stamp. The revenues of the prince of Mingrelia do not exceed 20,000 crowns, which are raised by customs, on goods imported and exported, by selling of slaves,

and by imposts and fines. But all this he lays up, for his slaves serve him for nothing, and his crown-lands furnish his court with more provisions than they can consume. He is not able to raise above 4000 men fit to bear arms, and these are mostly cavalry, for he has not above 300 foot. These soldiers are not distributed into regiments, or companies; each lord or gentleman leads his men to battle, withour order, and without officers; they follow him, as well in flying as in charging the enemy. The prince's court, upon solemn festivals, consists of two hundred gentlemen, but upon other days of about one hundred and twenty.

The religion of the Mingrelians, or Colchians, was formerly the same with the Greeks, they being converted by a slave, according to ecclesiastical historians, in the reign of Constantine the Great. But the Mingrelians say, that St. Andrew preached among them in a place called Pigaitas, where a church now stands, whither the catholicos, or chief bishop, goes once in his life to make the holy oil; yet I was unable to find a Mingrelian who knew what is meant by religion, by sin, the sacrament, or divine worship: for they are now fallen into such a profound abyss of ignorance, that they look upon the life eternal, the day of judgment, and the resurrection of the dead, as mere fables. Their clergy perform scarcely any ecclesiastical duties; for there is hardly one of them that can either write or read, and they have in a manner lost the method of performing divine worship.

On the confines of Mingrelia lie the principality of Guriel and the kingdom of Imeretta: the former is very small, it bordering upon Imeretta on the north, upon Mount Caucasus on the east, upon

Mingrelia on the west, and upon the Black Sea on the south. It lies along the sea shore from the river Rione to the castle Gonie, which is held by the Turks. The inhabitants are of the same disposition and irregularity of manners as the Mingrelians; having the same inclinations to lewdness, robbery and murder.

The kingdom of Imeretta, the Iberia of the ancients, is something bigger than the country of Guriel, and is encompassed by Mount Caucasus, Mingrelia, the Black Sea, the principality of Guriel, and part of Georgia. It is 26 miles long, and 60 in breadth; it is full of woods and mountains like Mingrelia, but the valleys are more pleasant, and the plains more fertile, they producing corn, pulse, cattle, and a variety of herbs. There are some iron mines in the country, and some money current among the people, which is coined in the kingdom. They have also several towns; but their manners and customs differ but little from the Mingrelians. The king has three good castles, one called Scander, seated on the side of a valley, and two on Mount Caucasus, called Regia and Scorgia, which, from their situation, are almost inaccessible. The fortress of Cotatis was once in the jurisdiction of this prince, but is now in the possession of the Turks.

The people of Guriel, Mingrelia, and Abea, were subject to the king of Imeretta, after they had freed themselves from the power of the emperors of Constantinople and of Trebisond; but in the last century setting up for themselves, they became involved in continual wars, till calling in the assistance of the Turks, they were all made tributary to them. The king of Imeretta pays a tribute of eighty boys and girls, from ten to twenty years of age. The

prince of Guriel pays forty-six children of both sexes, and the prince of Mingrelia 60,000 ells of linen cloth, made in that country. The Abcas, however, seldom paid any thing at first, and now pay nothing.

CHAP. II.

A description of Isgaour. A war breaks out, and a trade is carried on in slaves. Sir John Chardin proceeds to the village of Anarghia, and thence to Sipias, the residence of some Theatine monks, where he is visited and invited to dinner by a Mingrelian princess.

AS soon as our vessel had entered the road of Isgaour, I landed with the Greek merchant who conducted me, with the hope of finding houses, some provisions and assistance; but I was much deceived. The inhabitants had fenced round a place a hundred paces from the shore, two hundred and fifty long, and fifty broad; this was the grand market of Mingrelia. It had a street formed of about a hundred little huts on each side, built of branches of trees tied together. Each merchant took one of these huts, in which he slept, and there sold such commodities as he hoped to dispose of in two or three days time: those goods they bought, and those they had no probability of selling immediately, were kept on board the ships. No refreshments were to be had in the market, nor was there a peasant's house in its neighbourhood. At this I was equally surprised and afflicted, for our provisions were almost consumed, and nothing was to be sold by the natives but slaves chained together. There were above a dozen of naked wretches, who, with bows and arrows in their hands, struck every one with terror; these

were the officers of the customs. But my surprise and affliction were much increased, on being informed that the Turks and the prince of Guriel had taken up arms against the Mingrelians, and begun the war by plundering the houses of their neighbours, and carrying off them and their cattle wherever they found them.

On my taking the resolution of going into Mingrelia, I had depended greatly on the Theatine missionaries, who have a house forty miles by land from Isgaour, where, I was told, I might live in safety, and that they would speedily procure me a passage into Persia. I therefore sent an express with a letter to the prefect of the mission, and returned on board much dejected.

Two days after a number of peasants, who fled from the enemy, passed by Isgaour, and raised a great alarm, by reporting, that the Abcas, whom the prince of Mingrelia had called to his assistance against the Turks, plundered and burned every thing before them, and carried off all the inhabitants and cattle that fell into their hands; adding, that they were already near the port. All were now in a hurry to carry their effects on board. The commanders of the ships landed two pieces of cannon, and the men were under arms all night; but the next day they re-embarked, choosing rather to abandon the wool, salt, earthen-ware, and other merchandize they had not been able to bring on board, than to expose themselves to the danger of falling into the hands of the Abcas. About ten at night we saw all the market in a flame; and the next morning some men landing, they found nothing but the remains of the conflagration.

I now endeavoured to buy from the masters of

the ships as much provisions as possible; but all I could purchase from the several merchants was sixty pounds of biscuit, a little pulse, eight pounds of butter, and twelve pounds of rice. This was but small allowance for six persons; good management, however, made it last longer than I could have imagined: we had dried fish in abundance, and scarcely ate any thing else; and I was delighted when I had prevailed on my men to make a meal without bread.

Hearing no news of the prefect, and not being able to guess the reason, I informed my men of the necessity we were under that one of them should go to him, because none but he could secure us from the evils with which we were threatened, or deliver us from those we endured, and that were increasing every day. My valet offered to undertake the journey. I therefore gave him letters and presents for the prefect and his brethren, and he set out on this expedition.

On the morning of the 4th of October my valet returned, bringing with him the prefect, who was a native of Mantua, called Don Maria Joseph Zampy. I immediately ran to embrace him, when he cried, "God forgive those who have advised you, sir, to come hither: you are arrived at the most barbarous country in the world: and the best step you can take is, to return to Constantinople by the first opportunity." The joy we had conceived at seeing this priest, was damped by this discourse. I took him into my cabin, and there with my comrade deliberated on what was to be done. He told us that he was come to serve us to the utmost of his power; that he would take us to his house, if we desired it, but that he had no bread; that now no

provisions were to be had; that the air of the country was unhealthy, and the people more wicked than it was possible to imagine. I told him that I had a letter of recommendation to the prince of Mingrelia; but he replied, that he was as great a villain and as base a robber as any of his subjects: and then added, that if, after this notice, I was resolved to venture, he would do all in his power to preserve our persons and baggage, and procure us a safe passage into Persia.

I did not stay to deliberate on what the father had represented; the evils with which I was threatened in Mingrelia were future, and I hoped to avoid them: but those I suffered were present, they filled my imagination, and my heart sunk under them. I therefore represented to him, that whatever misfortunes might happen to us in Mingrelia, they must be less than those of returning to Caffa, by which we must infallibly perish; and this opinion I strengthened by many reasons. He was soon convinced by my arguments, and now only consulted on the manner in which we should travel. The bark in which we had come down the river being proper for our purpose, we embarked in it with all our baggage, and I gave the value of a hundred crowns in goods to father Zampy, who knew the price set upon it, and was to buy it for me. The baggage being embarked before noon, we immediately set sail. I was filled with joy at leaving the ship, where I could not endure the suffocating smell, nor bear the sight of the infamous commerce carried on in it. It was become a prison for slaves, in which the men and boys were chained two and two every night, and loosened every morning. The war of Mingrelia was of advantage to our merchants, who

bought the booty and slaves taken by the Abcas, who were now continually coming on board, to exchange them for arms, clothes, and other commodities. A Greek merchant, whose cabin was next to mine, bought a woman and her sucking child for twelve crowns: the woman was about twenty-five years of age, her face was extremely beautiful, her skin had the whiteness of the lily, and I never saw a finer breast, or a rounder neck. This lovely woman filled me with compassion. What surprised me most was, to see that these miserable creatures were not dejected, and that they appeared insensible of the misery of their condition. As soon as they were bought their rags were taken off, they were dressed in new linen habits, and set to work; the men and boys in doing something about the ship, and the women in sewing.

But to proceed: we had a pretty good wind, and our little bark advanced both with sails and oars. During the voyage I agreed with father Zampy on the means to prevent our falling into the hands of the enemy, and of being neither plundered nor assassinated by the Mingrelians.

At midnight we arrived at the entrance of the Astolphus, one of the greatest rivers in Mingrelia, called by the natives Langur, where we stopped, and sent two of our mariners to Anarghia, to inquire after the enemy, and to see if the inhabitants had not fled. Anarghia is a village two miles from the sea, and the most considerable place in all Mingrelia. It consists of about a hundred houses; but they are so far distant from each other, that it is two miles from the first to the last. There are always Turks in that village to purchase slaves, and barks to carry them off. It is said to be built on the place

where anciently stood the great city of Heracles.

The next morning before day, the two mariners returned with the news, that the Abcas had been no nearer than within fifteen miles of Anarghia, and that every thing there was as usual. Father Zampy caused the men to row hard, in order to arrive early at that village, that we might all land without being seen. This happened according to our wishes. We went to lodge with a peasant, who had the best accommodations of any in the place; and as we had many chests, the largest of which was full of books, father Zampy advised me to open it, as soon as we were at our lodgings, under the pretence of looking for something, to prevent their imagining that these chests were filled with treasures; he at the same time proposed my pretending to be a religious, and that we had brought nothing with us but books. I followed this advice. The people of the house were astonished at seeing so large a chest thus filled, and I believe imagined that the contents of the others were the same.

On the 9th of October a lay Theatine, who was physician and surgeon to all Mingrelia, came to see us. The access which his art gave him to the houses of the prince, and of all the great, had raised his vanity. I received and treated him in a manner that flattered his pride, and in return he gave me a thousand assurances of his protection and assistance. Some days after he came to inform us, that the Abcas had returned home, and had carried off 1200 persons, much cattle, and a great booty. He then told father Zampy, that we might all go to their house at Sipias; and that the prince and the catholicos, who is the head of all the clergy in this country, had ordered him to tell me and my comrade,

that we were welcome, and that they would grant us men and horses to conduct us into Georgia.

Upon receiving this agreeable news, we immediately prepared for our departure. Father Zampy made me pass for a capuchin, observing that I should meet with some of that order in Georgia. On the 14th we set out two hours before day for Anarghia, and proceeded two leagues up the river Astolphus, after which we landed our baggage, and with it loaded six small carts; besides two others, filled with the provisions brought by father Zampy. The Mingrelians were not accustomed to see such a quantity of goods at a time; and the report was immediately spread over the country, that some Europeans were arrived, who had eight carts loaded with their baggage. We proceeded four leagues and a half by land, and arrived in the evening at Sipias.

Sipias is the name of two churches, one of them a parish church of the Mingrelians, and the other belonging to the Theatines, an order of friars, who first came into Mingrelia in 1627, when they were admitted as physicians, and a piece of land given them, on which they built several wooden houses, after the manner of the country. Each of the friars have one of these houses to dwell in; for they are all separate: the smallest are for their slaves, and two families of peasants, who are their tenants; but though they have good employment as physicians, none will embrace their religion.

On the 18th the princess of Mingrelia came to the Theatines. She was on horseback, attended by about ten men and eight women, very badly clothed, and ill mounted, with several men on foot who stood about her horse. Father Zampy went immediately to receive her, when she told him, that she had

heard there were some Europeans in his house, who had brought a great quantity of baggage: that she was glad of it, and desired to see them, in order to tell them that they were welcome. I was instantly called, and father Zampy told me, that I must make her a present, since it was the custom to pay thus for the visits of a prince and princess. Being told that I spoke the Turkish and Persian tongues, she called a slave who knew the Turkish, and asked me a thousand questions about my rank and my voyage. I told her that I was a capuchin. She caused me to be asked, if I was in love? if I had ever been in love? how it happened that I had never been in love? and how I did to live without a woman? She carried on this conversation with great vivacity, and all her retinue were very merry upon it; but, for my part, I was much dejected, and would have been glad of the absence both of the princess and her train, whom I every moment feared would pillage our lodgings, for she asked three times to see what I had brought; but father Zampy promising to bring her the usual present the next day, she departed, seemingly well satisfied.

The next morning she sent to invite me to dinner. She was at a house only two miles from ours; but did not live with the prince, who had a great dislike to her, having been forced to marry her. I found her better dressed than the day before. She was painted, and seemed to endeavour to appear lovely; she was clothed in gold brocade, and had jewels in her head-dress. She sat on a carpet, with nine or ten women by her side, and near her were many shabby fellows half naked, who composed her court. They asked for my present for the princess, before they suffered me to enter. It was brought by

my servant, who delivered it to them, and consisted of cases of knives, scissars, and other things, which cost about twenty shillings, and was worth above three pounds in Mingrelia. The princess was satisfied, and suffered me to enter after having seen them. Near her was a bench, on which the slave, who spoke Turkish, desired me to sit. She first told me that she would have me to marry one of her friends, and that I should not leave that country, for she would give me houses, lands and slaves. But a stop was put to her discourse, by one coming to inform her that dinner was ready.

The house in which she lived, was in the midst of five others, each at a hundred paces distance. Before one of them was a raised place, built with wood, eighteen inches high, over which was a small dome. Here a carpet being spread, the princess seated herself upon it, as did her women, at four paces distance, on other carpets. The shabby wretches who composed her court, and were about fifty in number, seated themselves round on the grass. There were two benches near the place raised for the princess, one of which served the Theatines and me for a seat, and the other for a table. When the princess was seated, a long painted cloth was laid before her, and at one end of it were placed two large and two small flagons, four plates, and eight cups of different sizes, with a silver basin, ewer and skimmer. Other servants at the same time laid boards before those who were seated, to serve as tables; and one was also put before the women. This being done, two kettles were brought in, and placed in the middle: one of them, which was very large, was carried by four men, and was full of common gomm; the other, which was smaller, was brought in by two,

and was full of white gomm. This gomm was a kind of paste, of which the Mingrelians make the same use as we do of bread. Two other men brought in, upon a kind of bier, a hog boiled whole, and four others entered with a large pitcher of wine. The princess was served first, then her women, then us, and afterwards her attendants. The princess was also served with a wooden bowl of gomm, and some herbs, and with a silver dish, in which were two fowls, one boiled and the other roasted; but both of them had a very disagreeable sauce. The princess sent me a part of the bread and sallad, and caused me to be told, that I should stay for supper, and that she would kill an ox; but this was mere compliment. A little after she sent me two pieces of fowl, and asked with a loud voice, why there never came into Mingrelia any of the European artificers, who work so well in metals, silk and wool? and why there only came monks, who had no business there, and whom they did not want? It is easy to guess at the confusion into which this question must throw the poor Theatines who were present. I answered, that the artificers of Europe laboured only for gain, and having employment enough there, had no inclination to go farther; but that the religious, having in view the glory of God, and the salvation of souls, these great concerns induced them to leave their country, and travel so far.

The repast lasted about two hours; when it was half ended, the princess sent me a cup of wine, and caused me to be told that it was the wine she herself used, and the cup out of which she drank. Three times she did me this honour, and was much surprised to see me mix water with my wine, saying she had never seen that done before. Indeed, she

and her women drank it unmixed in large quantities. Dinner being ended, she sent to inquire if I had brought any spices or china-ware; she also asked me for a variety of things, and finding that I had none to give her, she at last grew angry, and said she would send to examine my goods; but though I was much frightened, I answered, she might do it whenever she pleased; to which she replied, that she was only in jest. However, as soon as we rose from table, I entreated one of the Theatines, who had accompanied me, to make all possible haste to my comrade, and tell him what the princess said, in order that he might prepare for all events. After dinner she again spoke of the marriage, and said she would soon show me the woman she would give me; but I replied as before, that monks never marry, and was going to take my leave, when unhappily she perceived, under the mean frock I wore, that I had whiter and finer linen than what they had in Mingrelia. She came up to me, took me by the hand, pulled up my sleeve to my elbow, and held me for some time by the arm, talking all the while in a low voice to her women. I was extremely embarrassed, and what gave me most pain was, my not knowing what she said; though I could perceive, by her gestures, that she was talking earnestly about me. I was at a loss how to behave in public to a woman, who had, at the same time, the title of sovereign, and the impudence of a prostitute. But she soon threw me into a greater consternation; for going up to father Zampy, she said, "You both deceive me; you shall come again on Sunday morning, and this stranger shall say mass. The father was going to reply, but the princess turned her back, and bid us go home.

I returned to our lodging very sad and pensive;* the princess's avarice made me apprehend she would do me some ill turn; and father Zampy assured me that he was certain of it. I therefore, the same night, caused a pit five feet deep to be dug in his apartment, in which I placed a chest that contained a clock, and a box of coral; this was so well buried, that there was not left the least sign of the ground having been opened. I then went into the church with the same design, when father Zampy advised me to open the grave of a Theatine, who had been buried six years before, and to deposit among his ashes a small casket I was willing to conceal; but happily I chose to bury this casket, in which were 12,000 gold ducats, in a corner of the church behind the door, for which purpose I made a deep pit like the former. I afterwards concealed in the roof, over the chamber where I lodged, a sabre and a poignard set with precious stones. My comrade and I kept about us what was of the least weight and the greatest value; and such things as were not worth a great deal we gave the Theatines to keep for us.

On the 23d, after dinner, a person came in to inform father Zampy that there were two gentlemen at the door who asked for him. These gentlemen, who were neighbours, were on horseback, and had with them thirty men, horse and foot, well armed. My comrade and I were immediately called. I could not penetrate into their design; but I knew it too soon; for, on our coming up to them, they caused us to be seized, and tied by their men: telling the

* The reader will form a better idea of Sir John Chardin's consternation at being ordered to say mass, when he knows that he was not only no priest, but that he was a Calvinist.

prefect, and the other Theatines who came to salute them, that if they stirred they would kill them. The prefect, being seized with fear, fled; the others, however, would not leave us; and the lay-brother not only made use of all his interest in our behalf, but, though a sword was held up to his neck, he would not abandon us. Our servants were immediately seized, and one of them making resistance, and defending himself with a knife, was thrown down, and tied to a tree. They then declared, that they would see what treasures we had. To which I replied, that they must do as they pleased; we were poor Capuchins, and all our wealth consisted in books, papers, and a few ordinary goods, which, if they would offer us no violence, we would show them. This answer succeeded, they untied me, and bid me open my chamber door.

We had kept about us, as I have already observed, our most precious jewels; my comrade had sewed his in the neck of a close coat, lined with fur; but I had made mine up into two small packets, which I had hid in my chest among my books; not daring to carry them about me, for fear of being robbed or assassinated on their account. I therefore desired my comrade and the lay-brother to take the two gentlemen aside, and to amuse them by offering a little money, in order to give me time to take the two valuable packets out of my chest, and to conceal them in another place. They did so; I entered my chamber, and shut myself in. The gentlemen suspected my design, and went to the door, which I had fastened on the inside; when my comrade bid me, in a low voice, be on my guard, as they watched me through the cracks: this made me snatch the two packets out of the thatch, in

which I had already concealed them, for fear they had seen me put them there. I then put them into my pocket, and seeing the villians were breaking open the door, threw myself out of the window into the garden. In a less pressing necessity I would not have made that leap on any consideration; but a mind seized with fear, dreads nothing but the first object of its apprehensions; I ran to the bottom of the garden, and threw the two packets into a thicket of briars; but was in such confusion, that I did not with sufficient care observe the place where I put them.

I immediately returned to my chamber, which I found full of these robbers, some of whom were struggling with my companion, while others were beating with their weapons on my chests, to break them open. Knowing that there was now nothing in them of great value, I took courage, and bid them take care what they did, as I was sent for by the king of Persia, and that the prince of Georgia would take a severe revenge for the violence that was offered me. I then showed the king of Persia's passport, which one of the gentlemen took, and was going to tear it, saying, he neither feared nor valued any man upon earth; but the other stopped him; for the writing in gold, and the gilt seal, inspired him with respect. He, however, bid me open my chests, and said that no harm should be done me; but, if I made any farther resistance, they would sever my head from my body. I began to reply, instead of showing my obedience; but this had like to have cost me dear; for one of the soldiers drew his sword, and was aiming it at my head, when the lay-brother stopped his arm. I now immediately opened the chests, they began to plun-

der them, and every thing that pleased these gentlemen were taken away.

During the time this pillage lasted, I leaned against a window, and turning my eyes away from these wretches, that I might not increase my grief by beholding them, I cast a look into the garden, and there perceived two soldiers removing the brambles, just where I supposed I had concealed my two packets of jewels. I ran in a rage to the place, followed by one of the Theatine fathers; but the soldiers, I knew not why, retired as soon as they saw us coming towards them. I instantly sought for my two packets; but the confusion I was in prevented my knowing the place where I had put them; and my not finding them, made me certain that they had discovered and taken them away. The reader may judge, from the value of these packets, which amounted to 25,000 crowns, of the consternation with which I was seized. In the mean while my comrade and the lay-brother calling me as loud as they were able, I left the garden and ran into the chamber. On entering it, I was seized by two soldiers, who dragged me into a corner, and took every thing they found in my pockets, which was of no great value. They then seized my hands, and attempted to tie them. I cried out, I resisted, I made signs that they should lead me to their master. I caused the chief of the villains to be told, that they need not tie me, either to carry me away or to kill me; for I was disposed to submit with whatever they did with me. They replied, that since we were ambassadors, they would take me to their prince. I let them know that we would go without being tied, and that we hoped he would do us justice, as we had letters to him, to which he

would certainly show respect. It was late, the night approached, and the princess's castle was at fifteen miles distance, they therefore released us, and only took the servant who was tied to a tree, and whose liberty I procured a fortnight after for ten piastres.

As soon as I was out of the hands of these robbers, I went into the garden: the priest, who had followed me when I went to fetch the two packets of jewels I had concealed, told every body in the house of the misfortune I believed I had suffered, and nobody doubted but that these soldiers, having observed me, had followed and taken what I had concealed among the brambles. Allaverdy, one of our Armenian valets, followed me, and to my great astonishment threw his arms about my neck, with his face bathed in tears. "Sir," said he, "we are ruined. Fear, and the common misfortune, have made us forget what we all are." I was at first so surprised, that I took him for some Mingrelian that was going to strangle me, and when I knew him, I was moved by his tenderness. "Sir," said he, "have you made a thorough search?" "I have searched so much," cried I, "that I am quite sure of my misfortune." He was not contented with this, he would have me show him the place, and the manner in which I concealed them. I did so, merely out of complaisance for the poor youth who showed such affection; but was so fully persuaded that he would lose his labour, that I would not assist him. It was now night, and I was so uneasy that I knew not what I did; but at length, to my great astonishment, Allaverdy came again to caress me, and gave me the two packets, which he pulled out of his bosom. I could not help imagining that the finger of Heaven was in this; and, believing

now that I was the care of the Almighty, I became confident of the divine assistance, and entertained those hopes of deliverance, that have ever since supported me under all my distresses.

I now went to my chamber, and told my comrade of my success. I found him putting our things in order. What they had taken consisted of clothes, linen, arms, brass vessels, and other things of small value, which did not amount to four hundred crowns; and we agreed to conceal the recovery of my two packets from the Theatines, that they might think we had little else to lose.

The next morning the prefect of the Theatines, and the lay-brother, went with me to the prince, and the catholicos, to demand justice; but neither of them could give us any satisfaction. The prince observed, that while the war lasted, he had but little authority over the nobility; but, at another time, he would have done his utmost to recover what he had lost. The catholicos, to whom he gave a case of silver-hafted knives and forks, talked in the same manner, and endeavoured to comfort us. They, however, each of them appointed a gentleman to go on their parts, to demand what had been taken from us; but their endeavours to find the robbers were ineffectual. From them we learned that the princess was concerned in the robbery, and had a third part of the spoils; and that the Turks had entered Mingrelia, and were laying waste all the country through which they passed, with fire and sword.

I was now in so resigned a disposition, that this news did not much move me; the Theatines, however, were filled with terror, and both they and we prepared for flight. At midnight we heard the re-

port of two great guns, fired from the fortress of Rucks, to give notice of the approach of the enemy. At this signal every body began to fly: and at day-break we ourselves set out. I left every thing that had been buried, and concealed in the roof, and in other places, thinking them much safer than what we took with us. The Theatines had no other carriage but one cart, drawn by bullocks, and two horses. In the cart was carried the baggage, the lay-brother mounted one of the horses, and my comrade, who was sick, rode the other, while two Theatine friars and I followed on foot, accompanied by all the slaves and servants. One of the friars staid alone, to guard the house, in which were a thousand things that we could not take away for want of carriages. I left my books, most of my papers, and my mathematical instruments, imagining that neither the Turks nor Mingrelians would take the trouble to remove them. The wars there consisting chiefly in chasing and plundering, the enemy soon retires. For this reason they always leave a person or two at each house, to prevent the neighbours stealing the corn, wine, and other things that could not be carried away. These men are seldom surprised by the enemy, because they are always upon the watch, and take care to escape into the woods, which are not only near, but thick, and proper for concealment.

The place to which we retired was, a fortress in the woods, like those I have already described. The lord of the place, who was called Sabatar, was a Georgian, who had been a Mahometan, and became a Christian. We arrived at his castle, after having proceeded five leagues through the dirt and mire, in which the cart was continually sticking

fast, so that it was obliged to be unloaded and loaded twenty times. Meanwhile we were in continual danger of being robbed and murdered. We met with a favourable reception, and the Theatines telling the lord Sabatar that I would repay the obligations he should confer on us, he lodged us in a bakehouse; a little mean hut, in which we were sheltered but little better than if we had been in the open court, for the rain poured in on all sides. Our having it was, however, a great favour, as it prevented our being mingled with a multitude of miserable objects. The fortress was full of people before we arrived, and contained eight hundred persons, almost all of whom were women and children.

On the 27th the prefect of the Theatines left us, to go to the house for some vessels and provisions we had left behind. I designed to have accompanied him, but he set out two hours before day. On entering the house he found it full of rangers, belonging to the bassa and the prince of Guriel, who beat him with their staves, and insisted on his opening the church, saying he had concealed there all the treasure; but the prefect had cast the key among the brambles immediately on his perceiving them, and, notwithstanding the ill treatment he received, he refused to tell where it was. At length, stripping him of part of his clothes, and taking out of the house only such things as were most portable, they went away, without touching either my books or my papers. However, on the 29th, a gentleman of Mingrelia, with thirty of his men, went thither in the night, and uncovered almost all the roof of my chamber, with the hopes of finding something I might have concealed. He carried off all the chests

that had been left, and my more cumbersome materials; in short, every thing which the Turks had left, except what was of great value, which he happily did not discover. This rapacious wretch having no light, made a fire with my papers and books, tearing off the covers because they were finely gilt; for I had caused my best books to be curiously bound, before I left Paris, and this villain did not leave me one.

On the 30th, in the morning, I, with the deepest concern, learned these particulars. We began to be in want of the common necessaries of life; my servants were reduced to despair, and we had nothing before our eyes, but the prospect of death or slavery. This made me resolve to hazard every thing, in order to leave Mingrelia while I had strength to do it. I caused guides to be every where sought for: I promised, I entreated, I made presents; but none would conduct me. They told me, that men in arms possessed all the passes of Imeretta, between Mingrelia and Georgia; and that it would be the greatest folly to go thither, since we should all be certainly made slaves. I then proposed to make the tour of Mount Caucasus, or to proceed along the sea shore; but nobody would conduct me: for it can scarcely be conceived, how much afraid the Mingrelians are of death; no reward can induce them to undergo the least danger.

Sabatar, to whom the fortress belonged, had now submitted to the Turks, and was not only to enjoy all his lands, but to have a Turkish guard for the security of his castle; for which he was to pay twenty-five slaves and eight hundred crowns, which he was resolved to raise among those to whom he granted his protection. From every family that

had four children, he took one; and it was a most dreadful sight, to see them torn from the arms of their mothers, tied two and two, and led to the Turks. I was taxed at twenty crowns.

At length I was constrained to take the resolution to go by sea, that is, to take a circuit of seventy leagues. For that purpose I went to Anarghia, a village and small port, already described; and having found there a Turkish felucca, I freighted her for Gonia, and returned to the house of the Theatines to prepare for the voyage.

I left the castle on the 10th of November, early in the morning, having agreed with my comrade on the methods I should take, in order to deliver him out of Mingrelia, if it should please God to give me a happy voyage. I took with me 100,000 livres in precious stones, 800 pistoles in gold, with a part of the baggage that remained. The jewels were concealed in a saddle, made in Europe for that purpose, and in a pillow. I took one of our servants with me, the same whom I had redeemed from slavery, who was a wicked, drunken fellow, and whom it was not safe to leave in Mingrelia. Father Zampy accompanied me, as he had always done, and the lay-brother also went with me to Anarghia. The prefect and I walked, because we could only hire one horse, on which was placed my baggage and my valet; but the lay-brother rode on horseback, having a horse of his own. I cannot express the fatigue we endured, in the two days we were upon the road; for it rained very hard, and we were obliged to wade through the mud, in which I commonly sunk above the knees. On the night of the second day we arrived at Anarghia, soaked through with rain.

On the 19th father Zampy received advice, that the night before, the church had been broke open, and nothing left but the bare walls; the tomb had been opened, and every thing taken out, which the poor Theatine, who had been left in the house, had buried in it. It is easy to imagine the apprehensions with which I was seized, on receiving this news, having left above 7000 pistoles buried in the church. I immediately dispatched a messenger with a letter to my comrade, who wrote me word, that they had not touched our money, and that every thing we had buried was safe. This news revived my courage, and I went to hasten the Turks, of whom I had hired the felucca.

CHAP. III.

The author leaves Anarghia. The Euxine or Black Sea described. He proceeds to Gonia, then passes over Mount Caucasus, which is described. His arrival at Teflis, and return to Mingrelia. Treachery of his valet.

ON the 27th of November I left Anarghia, and after an hour's sailing reached the sea; for the river Langur is very rapid, and we proceeded with great swiftness down the stream.

The Euxine, or Black Sea, is nearly two hundred leagues in length from east to west, and its greatest breadth, from the Bosphorus to the Borysthenes, is about three degrees: but the opposite end is not half so broad. The water of this sea appears neither so clear, so green, nor so salt as the ocean, which probably arises from the great rivers that discharge themselves into it. It did not receive its name from the colour of the water, but from the tempests, which are said to be there more frequent and more

furious than in other seas: hence the Greeks gave it the name of Axin, which signifies intractable; and the Turks that of Cara Denguis, or the Stormy Sea; for cara, which properly means black, also signifies stormy.

On the 29th we reached the river Phasis, and proceeded a mile up it to some houses, where the master of the felucca landed, and put some goods on shore. The river Phasis has its source in Mount Caucasus, and is now called by the people of that country the Rione. It is confined within a narrow bed, and runs with great rapidity. I sought for the great city of Sebasta, which geographers have placed at the mouth of the Phasis; but the ruins of that city, like those of Colchis, have no traces of them left. All that I observed to have any conformity with what the ancients have written of this part of the Black Sea is, that it abounds with pheasants. There are authors, and among others Martial, who say, that the Argonauts brought those birds from Greece, where they had never been seen before, and that they gave them the name of pheasants, from their being taken on the banks of the Phasis. This river separates Mingrelia from the principality of Guriel, and the little kingdom of Imeretta.

On the 30th, in the afternoon, we arrived at Gonia, about forty miles from the river Phasis. This is a large square castle, built of hard rough stones of an extraordinary size, situated on a sandy bottom on the sea-shore. It has neither ditch nor fortifications, and only consists of four square walls, fortified with two pieces of cannon, and defended by a small garrison of janizaries. Within it are about thirty small, low, inconvenient wooden houses; and near it is a village that contains about the same number.

Here is a custom-house belonging to the grand seignior; but the officers pay no respect either to the quality of the persons who land there, or to the sultan's passports. Those who command in this extremity of the empire, think themselves so far from him that they may act with impunity.

Our felucca no sooner came to land than my valet leaped on shore, kissed the earth, and showed the most extravagant and frantic signs of joy, and then entering the castle, left me at a time when I most wanted him. Soon after the custom-house officer and the lieutenant-governor came to see my things landed, and to receive the duty; they instantly let me know that they were informed of my being an European, and of all the misfortunes that had happened to me in Mingrelia. This surprised me; but I found I was betrayed by my rascal of a valet. The officer of the customs asked me several questions, and gave orders for examining my goods; but they could find nothing I wanted to conceal. My saddle, however, weighed very heavy, and this rendered it suspected, especially as the Turkish saddles are extremely light. It was examined and handled on all sides: but being able to find nothing within it besides hair and wadding, they laid it down.

Of the 800 pistoles I had brought, I carried half of them about me, and the other half in a wallet, fastened with a padlock, with some things, which though of small value, I knew the Turks would seize if they saw them. The custom-house officer and his janizaries being told of this wallet, ordered me to open it; on which I told them, that I would freely do it in the house, but not on the sea-shore, before so many men. On which the officer of the customs took me home with him to his house, and

the lieutenant-governor went with us. The latter made me pay the value of one per cent. on my goods, and the other five. The custom-house officer likewise took twenty-two pistoles in gold, and every thing he liked, that was found in my wallet; among the rest he got from me a pair of pistols, which were the only arms I had; he, however, paid me for them, but gave me no more than half their value. After this rapacious behaviour he invited me to lodge with him; but I could not help expressing my astonishment, that he, who had unjustly made me pay a duty for the gold and silver I brought, should immediately assume the mask of friendship; but he vindicated what he had done, renewed his invitation, and even promised to supply me with a guard to protect my baggage, and conduct me over the mountains. But though he renewed his entreaties, and, as I afterwards found, really meant me well, yet I was afraid of accepting his invitations, for fear he should take that opportunity of causing my saddle and my clothes to be more narrowly examined.

It was almost night when I left this officer of the customs, who was also governor of the territory of Gonia. My valet had carried my baggage to the place where the men who came with us lodged. This was a wretched cottage, which admitted the air on all sides, and was as dirty and stinking as possible. I then received many compliments of condolence, if I may use the term, for all the men appeared sorry for my loss, and blamed me for not letting them keep the wallet for me; their goods paying no duty. While I was eating a piece of a biscuit, a janizary came to tell my valet that the lieutenant-governor wanted him: my valet went, and an hour after the same janizary came for me. I

found the lieutenant and my valet sitting together both drunk. Having obliged me to eat and drink, the lieutenant demanded 200 ducats, as due to his master from all Christian church-men who came there; this occasioned a long dispute: I attempted to retire but was detained by force, and threatened to be put in irons: I was at last glad to escape by paying a hundred ducats to the lieutenant, and four to the janizaries; but this was not all, the lieutenant obliged me to entreat him to accept of the money, and to swear that I would not complain of him.

The next morning, the officer of the customs sent a party of soldiers to my miserable lodgings, to examine again my saddle, and to search me: but though they filled me with the greatest uneasiness, they could make no discovery. After this, I was allowed two men to carry my baggage, and a Turk to conduct me as far as Acalzika; he also gave me a passport, and advised, that I and my valet should wear a white turban, in order to be treated with the greater respect. This I did, and set out at eight o'clock in the morning, transported with joy at leaving so wicked and dangerous a place, and at having nothing more to fear. I then began to feel some peace of mind. For five months past I had suffered the most dreadful agitations; insult, slavery, marriage, the loss of my substance and liberty, during all this time, distracted my mind by turns, and a thousand real evils had kept me under the deepest dejection. I now ascended Mount Caucasus with a lightness which surprised my porters; for the body is literally light when the heart is eased of a heavy load. This is true without a figure; for I seemed to have been delivered from the weight

of a mountain. We kept constantly ascending, frequently so near the most frightful precipices, that it was impossible to avoid being struck with terror; and in eight days, after performing a journey of thirty-six leagues, on the 8th of December reached the top of Mount Caucasus.

Asia is divided by a chain of mountains, the three highest of which have been named Taurus, Imaus, and Caucasus. The first advances farthest into Asia, and the whole chain, in general, is called by the name of Mount Taurus. Caucasus is the highest and the most difficult of access. When I passed it, it was entirely covered with snow, and my conductors were, in many places, obliged to clear it away with shovels. The top, which is eight leagues over, is perpetually covered with it. I passed the night of the 7th and 8th in the midst of the snow, where I caused some fir-trees to be cut down, and lay upon the boughs by the side of a great fire. On our arrival at the top, my conductors made long prayers to their images, to do us the favour to prevent a wind; and, indeed, if it had been high, we should doubtless have been buried in the snow, for, as it is as small as dust, a little wind fills the air with it. The horses sunk so often into holes covered by it, that I often thought we should lose them. I almost constantly walked, and did not ride above eight leagues in crossing this frightful mountain, which is thirty-six leagues over.

During the two last days I seemed in the clouds, not being able to see twenty paces before me. The firs, it is true, with which the top of the mountain is covered, tend greatly to obstruct the view. On descending I saw the clouds move under my feet.

Mount Caucasus is fertile almost to the top, and

its sides abound in honey, corn, fruits, hogs and large cattle. The vines twine about the trees, and rise to such a height, that the inhabitants cannot gather the fruit from the upper branches. There are many streams of excellent water, and a great number of villages. It was the time of vintage, and I found both the grapes and the new and old wine excellent. The peasants live in cabins built of wood, each family having four or five of them, and in the centre of the largest they make a great fire, which serves for all the cottages around it. The women grind the corn as often as they want bread, and bake the dough on round stones, about a foot in diameter, and hollowed two or three fingers deep. The stone being well heated, they put the dough into it, and cover it with hot ashes and burning embers. I lodged at the house of a peasant, of whom I hired horses, and men to carry my baggage. The Turk, my conductor, caused me to be as well served as the place would permit. The natives supplied us with fowls, eggs, pulse, wine and fruit in abundance, for which nothing was demanded; and my conductor hindered me even from making them any present in return.

The inhabitants are, for the most part, Christians of the Georgian church. They have very fine complexions, and I have seen among them very beautiful women. They are infinitely better accommodated than the Mingrelians.

On the 9th I proceeded five leagues across a fertile plain, and at night arrived at Acalzika. This is a fortress built in a hollow between near twenty little hills. It has a double wall and towers, with ancient battlements on the top; but it has very few guns. On these eminences are about four hundred

houses, all of them lately built; the only ancient buildings are two Armenian churches. The town is inhabited by Turks, Armenians, Georgians, Greeks, and Jews. The Christians have churches, and the Jews a synagogue. There is also a small caravansera, built of wood, as are most of the houses in the place. The river Kur, or Cyrus, passes near it; it has its source in Mount Caucasus, and at length discharges itself into the Black Sea. The bassa of Acalzika lodges in the fortress, and the principal officers and militia dwell in the neighbouring villages.

On the 13th I set out from Acalzika, proceeding to the east, and having gone three leagues, found the plain of Acalzika contract, and the mountains approach each other, so that the plain is not more than half a league in breadth. It has there a strong Turkish castle, built on a rock on the side of the river Kur. The foot of this rock is encircled by a double wall, and about it is a little town, named Usker, between the fortress and the opposite mountain. Two leagues from thence we ascended a mountain that separates Persia from the dominions of the Turks, and then proceeded along the side of it. Upon this mountain are many villages; at its foot runs the Kur, and we there saw the ruins of several castles, fortresses and churches, vestiges of the former grandeur of the Georgians, and of the conquests of the Turks and Persians.

The two following days we passed through the delightful plain of Surham, by a large village, with a fortress of the same name. This plain is covered with little woods, villages, small eminences, houses of pleasure, and small castles of the Georgian lords. This fine country is entirely cultivated. We then

passed over a mountain, leaving on the right a city, which has now no more than 500 inhabited houses, though formerly it was said to have had 12,000, and to have been the see of a bishop.

I now approached Gory, and went directly to the house of the Capuchins, who are Italian missionaries of the congregation de propaganda fide, to whom I had letters of recommendation. I related to those fathers the misfortunes I had suffered in Mingrelia, and my being obliged to leave there the things I had brought for the king of Persia; that I was come into Georgia in search of assistance, entreating them to give it to me. They assured me that they would do every thing in their power to serve me, as soon as they received the orders of their prefect, who was at Teflis, the capital of Georgia. They gave me such reasons for going thither, that I resolved to set out immediately; and having hired a horse for me, the superior directed a lay-brother, named Angelo de Viterbo, to accompany me.

This lay-brother was both an honest man, and an able physician and surgeon, on which account he was much respected and esteemed. He was well acquainted with the language and country, and being endowed with much good sense, courage and patience, I could not have a better companion.

In two days we arrived at Teflis. The lay-brother led me to the convent of the Capuchins, where I immediately told the prefect the cause of my journey, and gave him my letters of recommendation. He was soon sensible of the necessity of attempting to recover what I had left there. It was agreed to say I was a Theatine, who had been sent to beg assistance of the Capuchins; and they were to send one of their companions with me, in order to bring them

away, on account of their being reduced to the greatest distress by the war.

This was no sooner determined than I prepared for the journey; I took out of my saddle and pillow the jewels I had concealed, and committed them to the care of the prefect. We thought we should never have been able to hire horses; but, by the means of money, we gained over two men, and gave security for their horses and clothes, in case they should be robbed of them. I also dismissed my valet, after I had expostulated with him on the numerous instances of treachery of which he had been guilty. I paid him for the whole time he had served me, and exhorted him to amendment; but this mildness had no effect, and the reader will see the dangerous snare he laid for me.

On the 20th of December I set out with brother Angelo and a Georgian belonging to the Capuchins, who had frequently been at Colchis and all the neighbouring countries, and whom the prefect recommended as a person in whom I might place the greatest confidence. We were only five men with four horses. Brother Angelo and I mounted two; the two others carried provisions, and every where we reported, that we were going in search of the Theatines of Mingrelia. We again passed mountains covered with snow, and at length arrived at a village named Sesano, situated in the finest part of the country of Imeretta.

The aunt to the king of Imeretta being sick, and hearing that a Capuchin was arrived at the village, sent for him; the missionaries being, in these countries, taken for physicians, and indeed they all practise physic. Brother Angelo went to her, and was in hopes of making this event turn to our advan-

tage. Two hours after he left us, a Capuchin of Gory arrived to inform us, that the valet I had dismissed had been at Gory, and discovered all he knew of my enterprise; swearing to ruin me, and he was gone nobody knew whither. This greatly alarmed me, and having given the Capuchin a thousand thanks, I prevailed on him to accompany me.

The next day we proceeded five leagues through a plain, which contains many villages and woods; leaving on our right the fortress of Scander, said by the natives to have been built by Alexander the Great. We afterwards passed by Chicaris, a village that contains fifty houses, and took up our lodging at the distance of a league from it, where we were obliged to stay two days; our carriers refusing to proceed farther. The news of the war made their hearts fail them; and they were seized with the dread of being led to death or slavery. To raise their courage, we told them that they had nothing to fear; that we were well informed of every thing; that we had our lives and goods to preserve as well as they, and that we would answer for the safety of their horses and persons. One of them spoke for the rest, and desired me to give them a writing, by which I would engage to buy them, in case they should be taken for slaves, or give one hundred and twenty crowns to their wives, if they should die. This I readily granted, and making them also other great promises, prevailed on them to proceed.

The next day we reached Cotatis, and lodged at the house of the bishop, who was not at home, but his officers gave us a very kind reception. Cotatis is built at the foot of a hill, on the banks of the river Phasis, and contains about two hundred houses.

At a little distance are those of the lords, and the king's palace. The town has neither fortifications nor walls. On a higher hill on the other side of the river, opposite the town, is the fortress of Cotatis, which has a high double wall, strengthened with towers.

I stayed at the town all the next day, when, while I was at dinner with the two Capuchins, the carriers and my guide being also, according to the custom of the country, at table with us, I saw the rogue of a valet enter, with an Armenian and a priest. I was not much surprised at seeing him, for my apprehensions kept him constantly in my thoughts. The villain entered with fury in his looks, and seated himself by my men, without being asked. This insolence offended me, and I asked from whence he came. He replied, from Acalzika, whence he had come in two days. I asked if the way was so easy, and the mountains so little covered with snow, that he could cross them in so short a time. "The way is the worst in the world," he cried, "and the mountains are covered with snow, like those we passed in coming to Gonia. You shall see, for you must come to Acalzika; I have orders from the bassa to bring you to that town." "You must have force to carry me thither," said I, "for I have no business there. You are ill-advised; you know I paid you at Teflis; and, if you are not satisfied, you ought to make known your demands; for without going so far as Acalzika on so trifling an affair, there are sufficient numbers at Cotatis capable of deciding it." This I spoke with the greatest mildness possible. But the villain turned with a furious air to his companion, and bid him bring in the Turks. He went out immediately; but this

was only an artifice to terrify me: I was, indeed, extremely frighted, and thought myself lost. The priest of Cotatis was ignorant of what passed, because we talked in the Turkish tongue; but being informed by father Angelo of the nature of the dispute, and the equity of my proposal, he immediately interested himself in the affair, and, with several Georgians, pressed the fellow to agree to so reasonable an offer; but the more they said, the more insolent and abusive he grew. Till at last, losing all patience, I struck at him with my sword; but they stopped my hand, and the villain fled in a great fright.

The next day, which was the 2d of January, brother Angelo set out with all the horses and men I had brought from Teflis, while I returned to Chicaris with the Capuchin, where we proposed to wait till his return.

I had continued there a fortnight, when one morning I was agreeably awakened by my comrade. He told me that brother Angelo, with the men and horses, arrived at Sipias on the 19th, when, to his great joy, he heard of my arrival at Teflis, and that I was then waiting for him near Cotatis. He instantly prepared for the journey, dug up the chests, and took out of the roof of the house half of what we had concealed there, and having staid till the 11th, to rest the horses, set out, leaving the remainder of the treasure to the care of the most faithful of our valets, not daring to run the hazard of losing the whole at once.

Having proceeded thus far, he added: "Don't be frighted at what I am going to relate, every thing goes well. On Saturday the 14th we happily arrived at Cotatis, and brother Angelo took me to

the bishop's house. I did not know of the menaces made you by the valet you had dismissed, till yesterday; if I had I should not have stopped at Cotatis. Father Angelo and our men, never once thinking of him, entreated me on Sunday morning to stay till noon, in order to refresh ourselves a little after our fatigues. I consented; but while we were at dinner, the rogue of a valet entered with twenty janizaries. 'Where is my master?' he cried with a loud voice: 'he attempted to kill me, and has not paid me; but I will certainly pay him.' He then looked about for you; but not finding you, he entered another room, with the hopes of finding you concealed there. I followed him, entreated him not to ruin us, and told him, that if my comrade had used him ill, or had not paid him, I was not answerable for it: but that, let his demands be what they would, I would pay him immediately, if he would but send away the Turks. He answered, that he agreed to this, and when he had dismissed them, he would come to me again.

"He then returned to the hall, and showing brother Angelo to the janizaries, bid them take that man to the governor of the fortress. He was instantly seized. The janizaries looked around to see if there was any thing they could steal, and casting their eyes on our two cloaks, carried them off. These were all they seized; they took none of my arms, nor the bags I carried about me, in which were gold and precious stones to the value of 40,000 crowns. The moment I saw the janizaries out of the house, I sent a valet to follow brother Angelo, and conjured the carriers to fly with us immediately. We saddled, and loaded our horses in an instant, and, thank God, arrived here in safety,

with every thing I brought from Mingrelia; having lost nothing but what the janizaries have taken, which is scarcely worth two pistoles."

It is impossible to express the joy I felt on this occasion. The Capuchin went immediately to the bishop and the queen, to complain to them both, and to desire them to procure the deliverance of father Angelo; and having now obtained more horses, my comrade set out on his return to Mingrelia, with five men, to take away the rest of the treasure, while I, with the Capuchin and three men, took the way to Teflis. But being arrived at Gory, I sent the Capuchin with a sum of money to Cotatis, in order to purchase the release of father Angelo.

On the evening of the 6th of February my comrade arrived at Teflis, with the remainder of the treasure, and the valets I had left in Colchis, together with a Theatine father, and brother Angelo: as soon as I had embraced them, the latter drew me aside, to tell me the sequel of his adventure.

"You have heard," said he, "in what manner your perfidious valet had me seized by the janizaries. The governor of the fortress of Cotatis had sent them, on his representing that you owed him three hundred crowns; that you were an ambassador; that you were going into Mingrelia in search of the treasures you had left there, and that in your person he would obtain a prize that would enrich him for ever. The villain pressed the janizaries who conducted me to the fortress, to bind me and use me ill; but there was among them a renegado Italian, who caused me to be treated more mildly. I walked along as slowly as possible, and amused them, to give your comrade time to fly; for I did

not doubt but that he would take that step. When they had brought me before the governor, he asked the villain, if I was his master; he replied, that I was not, and that he could not find him; but that I certainly knew where he was. The governor then examined me about you; I told him I did not know where you were; but that when you left me, you designed to go to Teflis. He then asked me many questions about your quality, and told me, that I should pay the three hundred crowns it was pretended you owed. I replied, that you were a poor friar, who had taken the trouble to give me notice of the miserable state to which those of your order were reduced in Mingrelia; and upon this I was going to visit them. That this was all I knew of you, and that every body at Cotatis, from the king to the meanest of his subjects, knew that I made a profession of poverty.

"Upon this the governor ordering me to be searched, they found the girdle you had given me, wherein was seven pistoles; but the jewels you had wrote to your comrade to give me, I had happily not received. The governor then cried, 'Wretch, where are the riches thou hast promised me; hast thou brought this poor man to mock me? Thou art a villain, and I'll order thee to be bastinadoed to death.' 'My lord,' replied he, trembling, 'these riches are in the hands of my master's comrade, who is at the bishop's.' 'Dog as thou art, returned the governor, why hast thou not brought him then? Go and fetch him.' He went with the janizaries. I was dreadfully afraid that he would find him; but my fear was turned into joy, when returning, the janizaries reported he was fled. The governor flew into a rage against your valet, who

appeared confounded. I then related the ill offices he had done you, and how generously you had paid him his wages.

"At night the governor invited me to supper, and learning that I was a physician, made me visit some soldiers in the fortress, to whom I administered remedies. The next day the queen and bishop sent two gentlemen to the governor to demand my release, and at noon there came two others from a great lord of the country, whose lady being ill, and hearing that I was confined in the fortress for debt, paid the governor twenty-five crowns for my discharge; and I was released, notwithstanding the clamours of the valet, who said that you would give a thousand crowns, rather than leave me there. I now went to visit the lady, and a few days after, father Justin arrived at Chicaris, where hearing that I was with this lord, he came to me, restored the twenty-five crowns, and we went together to Chicaris. Two days after your comrade arrived, with the remains of what had been left in Mingrelia. He told us the way he had taken to avoid coming near Cotatis; and that he had heard the rogue of a valet was confined in the fortress, and, probably, would not escape without due chastisement."

It was late, but my comrade and I could not go to supper till after we had some discourse on the happy success of our labours. We could not have hoped thus to save every thing, when we were surrounded with dangers that made us dread the loss of all; yet our losses in this fatal journey had amounted to no more than about one per cent.

CHAP. IV.

A description of Georgia, and of the manners of the inhabitants; the capital city, Teflis, described. Sir John Chardin proceeds to Dilyjan, and thence to Irivan, which, with the customs and manners of the inhabitants is described. He travels to Nacchivan, Abrener, Julfa, and Taurus to Ispahan.

GEORGIA, by which I would be understood to mean the whole country of that name subject to Persia, is bounded on the east by Circassia and Russia, on the west by Armenia Minor, on the south by Armenia Major, and on the north by the Black Sea, and that part of Mingrelia called Imeretta. This is, in my opinion, the whole country the ancients distinguished by the name of Iberia. It has many woods and mountains, that inclose large and beautiful plains; but the middle part, which is watered by the river Kur, the ancient Cyrus, is the most fertile. The natives call themselves Carthueli; and, it is said the Greeks gave them the name of Georgoi, which, in their language, signifies Labourers.

The air of Georgia is dry; very cold in winter, and hot in summer. The fine weather does not begin till the month of May; but then it lasts till the end of November. The inhabitants are, therefore, obliged to water the earth; by which means it produces all sorts of grain and fruit in the greatest profusion. The bread is as good as any in the world. The fruits are excellent, and of all sorts: no part of Europe produces finer or better tasted pears and apples; nor any part of Asia more excellent pomegranates. The cattle are extremely nu-

merous, and very good. The wild-boars are as common and as delicate as in Mingrelia; and the common people live almost entirely upon swine, which are seen all over the country, and their flesh is not only palatable, but very wholesome. The wild fowl are incomparable, and of all sorts. The Caspian Sea, which is near Georgia, and the Kur, which runs through it, afford the greatest plenty of sea and fresh-water fish.

In no other country do the inhabitants drink so much, or such excellent wine. The vines grow about the trees as in Mingrelia, and great quantities of wine are sent from Teflis into Armenia, Media, and to Ispahan. A horse load, which is three hundred weight, sells for about the value of eight shillings: this is the price of the best sort, for the ordinary wine does not sell for more than half as much. Georgia also produces great quantities of silk, which is exported to Turkey and the neighbouring countries.

The Georgians are the handsomest people not only in the East, but, I believe, in the whole world; I never observed an ordinary person of either sex in this country, and I have seen some that have been quite angelical. Nature has given most of the women such graces as are no where else to be seen; and it is impossible to behold, without loving them. They are tall, easy, not encumbered with fat, and have slender waists: but they injure their beauty with paint, which they use as an ornament, in the same manner as jewels and rich clothes are worn among us.

The Georgians have naturally much wit, and, had they a proper education, might possibly be distinguished by their learning, and their skill in the arts

and sciences; but the neglect of all instruction, and the force of ill example, render them ignorant, dishonest, and extremely vicious. They will, with the greatest effrontery, deny what they have said and done, and assert and vindicate the most notorious falsehoods. They are irreconcileable in their hatred, and never forgive; but then they are not easily displeased, and never conceive a perpetual hatred without just cause of anger. They are addicted to drunkenness and luxury, which are not even esteemed crimes. The women are no less vicious than the men; their desires are warm, and they are even more to blame than the other sex, for that torrent of impurity that overflows the country. The Georgians are also great usurers. In other respects they are civil, friendly, and appear with great gravity. Their manners and customs are a mixture of those of most of the nations that surround them. This, I believe, proceeds from the commerce they carry on with many different countries, and from the liberty every one enjoys in Georgia, of living according to his own religion and customs, and of freely defending them. Here you see Armenians, Greeks, Turks, Persians, Indians, Tartars, and Moscovites. The Armenians are even more numerous than the Georgians themselves; they are also more rich, and fill most of the inferior posts and employments of the state; but the Georgians are more powerful, more vain, and ostentatious. The difference between their dispositions, manners and belief, has caused a reciprocal hatred. They naturally abhor each other, and never intermarry. The Georgians, in particular, consider the Armenians in much the same light as that in which many Europeans behold the Jews.

The habit of the Georgians is almost like that of the Poles: they wear their bonnets like theirs; their vests are open at the breast, and fastened with buttons and loops; their covering for the legs and feet resembles that of the Persians, and the habit of the women is entirely Persian.

The houses of the great, and all the public edifices, are erected on the same models as those in Persia. They build very cheap, for they have wood, stone, plaister and lime in abundance. They also imitate the Persians in their manner of sitting, lying and eating.

The nobility exercise the most tyrannical power over their vassals, whom they oblige to work for them whole months together, and as often as they please, without giving them either pay or food. They think they have a right to their substance, liberty and lives; they take their children and sell them, or keep them as slaves: but they seldom sell any, especially women, who are above twenty years of age.

The Georgians are almost as ignorant with respect to religion as the Mingrelians. Both these countries received the knowledge of Christianity in the fourth century, from a woman of Iberia, who embraced the Christian religion at Constantinople; and both have now lost the spirit of it. There are many bishops in Georgia, besides the catholicos or patriarch. The prince, though of the Mahometan religion, commonly fills the vacant sees, and generally chooses his own relations; even the catholicos is his brother. The churches in the towns are kept in decent order, but in the country they are very dirty. The Georgians, like other Christians situated to the north and the west of them, have a strange custom

of building most of their churches on the top of mountains, in distant and almost inaccessible places: they see and salute them at three or four leagues distance, but they hardly ever go to them; and it is certain that most of them are not opened once in ten years. They build them, and then abandon them to the injuries of the weather, and to the birds. The reason of this custom I could never discover.

Most of the Georgian lords make an outward profession of the Mahometan religion; some to gain employments at court, or pensions from the state, others to obtain the honour of marrying their daughters to the prince, or only to introduce them to the service of his women. There are some of these base nobles, who will, themselves, lead the most beautiful of their daughters to the prince, for which they are rewarded by a post in the government, or a pension.

Georgia has but four fortified towns, Teflis, Gory, Suram and Aly, of which the former is the capital of the province. It is situated at the foot of a mountain, and by it runs the river Kur. The city is surrounded with handsome, strong walls, except on the river-side, and extends from north to south. It has a large fortress on the declivity of the mountain, where the garrison consists only of native Persians. Here is a public square, an arsenal, and a market. The prince of Georgia is obliged to pass through this fortress, when he goes, according to custom, without the gates of the city, to receive the letters and presents sent him by the king of Persia; because the city has no other entrance on the road from Persia, but through this fortress; and the prince never passes through it, without apprehensions that the governor has secret orders to seize

his person. Teflis has fourteen churches, which is a great number in a country where there is so little devotion. Six of these belong to the Georgians, and the remainder to the Armenians. The cathedral, which is called Sion, is situated on the bank of the river, and is entirely built with hewn stones. It is an ancient building, very entire, and has four naves. In the middle is a large dome, supported by four massy pillars. The great altar is in the centre of the nave facing the east. The inside is filled with modern Greek paintings, executed by such wretched hands, that it is extremely difficult to discover what they are intended to represent. To this edifice joins the bishop's palace, and the principal churches of the Georgians.

Though this city belongs to the empire of Persia, and is governed by a prince who professes the Mahometan religion, it has not one mosque. The Persians have, indeed, made use of their utmost endeavours to build them, but have never been able to accomplish it; for the people immediately rose in arms, pulled down the work, and beat the workmen. The princes of Georgia were glad of these seditions, though they pretended the contrary; for having abjured the Christian religion only to obtain the viceroyalty, they were not willing to consent to the establishment of Mahometanism. The Georgians are naturally mutinous, fickle, and brave; and being situated near the Turks, the Persians have not been willing to come to extremities with them; hence Teflis and all Georgia are allowed the liberty of preserving their religion. They use bells in their churches; they daily sell pork in the market, and wine is sold at the corners of the streets.

The public buildings of Teflis make a handsome

appearance; they are of stone, and kept in good order, particularly the bazars and caravanseras. The palace of the prince is one of the principal ornaments of the city. It has grand saloons, which open upon the river, and front very extensive gardens. There are aviaries filled with a great number of birds of different kinds, and a very noble falconry. Before the palace is a large square, which is surrounded with shops; and opposite the gate of the palace is the grand bazar, from the upper end of which the square and the front of the palace appear in a beautiful perspective. In the neighbourhood of the city are many pleasure-houses and fine gardens.

On the 10th, the prefect of the Capuchins informed the viceroy of my arrival; which, indeed, could not be concealed from a prince, who knows the most trifling things that happen at Teflis: but I was desirous of seeing him, and presenting the passports of the king of Persia, addressed to all the governors of provinces, to whom I was strongly recommended; for I had no doubt but at the sight of these orders he would give me a good reception, and an escort to conduct me out of his dominions. This prince, who is called Chanavas Khan, told the prefect I was welcome, and that I should do him a favour to come and see him as soon as I could. On the 12th he sent a gentleman to inform me, that as he was entering on a week of rejoicing, every day during which he should give a public entertainment to his whole court, he invited me to come. The Capuchins entreated my comrade and I to dress as well as possible, and, on their account, to make a noble present to the prince. To this I agreed, being very glad of an opportunity of showing my gra-

titude for the important services I had received from them.

It was near noon when we went to the palace, accompanied by the prefect, and one of the community, named father Raphael. The prince was in a hall about a hundred feet long and forty broad, built on the bank of the river, with an open front on that side. The ceiling was covered with mosaic work, and supported by a number of pillars between twenty-five and thirty feet in height, painted and gilt; the whole room was covered with rich tapestry. The prince and the principal nobility were placed near three fires, which, with several pans of coals, sufficiently heated the room. Chanavas Khan causes himself to be saluted like the king of Persia, by kneeling at two or three paces distance, and bowing the head three times successively to the floor. But this is dispensed with in regard to the Europeans, and I saluted him without kneeling. Two gentlemen in waiting afterwards led me to my place, but I would not sit above the Capuchins, for I was glad of an opportunity of doing them honour.

While I was bowing, a gentleman at the door of the hall took my letters patent from the king of Persia, which I held in my hand, and the present for the prince, which I had brought, and had ranged in a large silver bowl. The prince opened the patent, put it to his mouth, then to his forehead, and gave it to his first minister to tell him the contents: afterwards he looked at the present, which was placed at his feet, with much curiosity and pleasure. It consisted of a large watch in a silver case, chased and gilt; a crystal mirror mounted in silver; a gold box enamelled, to hold pills of opium, which most of the Persians take several times in the day; a very

neat case of surgeon's instruments, and knives with curious handles.

The first minister, after having read the patent, in a low voice, told the prince what it contained. All the great men admired the words wrote in gold, and the flowered work in the margin, which was very large. It was one sheet of paper, two feet and a half long, and thirteen or fourteen inches broad. Besides the writing in gold, there were words in blue, and others in red; thus the principal words and sentences were distinguished, while the rest were wrote in black.

In bowing to the viceroy I spoke not a word, nor did he move. A moment after I was seated, he sent me half a large loaf, which stood before him, upon a gilt dish, and ordered me to be told, that I was welcome. A little after he sent to ask me, how the war went on between the Turks and the Poles.

I shall not describe the order and magnificence of this feast; I shall only say, that a great deal of wine was drunk, and that a prodigious quantity of meat was eaten. We arose from table, after having sat three hours; and the roast meat was not yet brought in. We made a low bow to the prince, on our retiring, when he sent again to tell us, we were welcome, and ordered us to be conducted home.

On the 16th the prince invited us to the marriage of his niece, which was performed at the palace. I went there with the prefect, and father Raphael, one of the Capuchins; but the marriage ceremony was almost over before we arrived. It was celebrated in the grand saloon, where we had dined before, and, being full of ladies, no men were admitted but the prince and his near relations.

On the 20th, I desired the prefect and father

Raphael to return thanks to the prince for the honours he had conferred upon me, and to desire him to grant me an officer to conduct me as far as Irivan, the capital of Armenia Major; to which the prince readily agreed. He professed to entertain an esteem for the Europeans, and that he should be glad to have a number of them settled in Georgia; and added, that if they came thither for the sake of trade, he would grant them all the advantages they could desire; and, that as his country extended to the Black Sea, they would find their advantage in travelling through it to the East-Indies.

On the 28th of February we left Teflis; the next day we proceeded eight leagues through a beautiful plain, to the town of Cuprikent, or the Village of the Bridge. The town consists of about one hundred and fifty houses, and the bridge, which joins two mountains that are separated by the river, is supported by four unequal arches, that rise from two irregular masses of rock found in the river. Those at the two ends open on each side, and are hollowed out into small chambers, or porticoes, for the accommodation of passengers: an arch near the middle of the river has an opening on each side, with two chambers at the ends, and two large covered balconies, where the people may enjoy the fresh air during the heat of summer. You here descend by two flight of stairs, which are cut down from the arch.

The three following days we passed over high mountains, difficult of access, and arrived on the 4th of March at Dilyjan, a town consisting of about three hundred houses, situated on a river that runs at the foot of a high and frightful mountain, which, as well as the others we had passed, forms a

part of Mount Taurus. On these high mountains we were much incommoded by the snow and cold; but there is every where to be found abundance of water, and here and there are small fertile plains. The goodness of the soil, and the number of the villages, are almost incredible; some of these are on points of land, so high that the passengers below can scarcely see them. Most of them are inhabited by Georgian and Armenian Christians; but they are not intermixed, for they are such enemies, that they will not dwell together in the same village.

Most of the houses in these villages are properly caverns, for they are hollowed out of the earth. The others are built of large beams quite up to the top, which is made flat, and covered with turf, an opening being left in the middle to admit the light, and let out the smoke: this hole they stop when they please. The above caverns have the advantage of being warm in winter, and cool in summer.

The town of Dilyjan, and all the country for six leagues round, is called the territory of Casac, and depends on Persia, in the same manner as Georgia. it being always governed by its natural princes, in a direct line from father to son. Abas the Great conquered all these countries, at the same time that he made himself master of Georgia.

On the 5th we proceeded five leagues in passing the frightful mountain already mentioned. The whole mountain was covered with snow, and nothing else could be seen above us. The road was a narrow path of snow, hardened by being trampled upon by travellers and their hores: and as soon as we set foot out of this path, we sunk up to the middle. There is no possibility of passing this mountain while the snow is falling, or when the wind blows;

for then the track is lost, and thus many people perish every year. This snow never melts, and the mountain is perpetually covered with it.

The next day, though half dead, I continued my journey, and, spurred on by the hopes of finding some relief at Irivan, we proceeded five leagues to Bickni, a considerable town, situated at the foot of a mountain, on the banks of the Zengui, and lodged at a handsome monastery belonging to the Armenians, built between the town and the mountain. The monks received me with much humanity; but it being lent, nothing could prevail upon them to make me some chicken-broth, and my conductor was obliged to make use of all his authority to get me a few eggs.

The next morning, at break of day, we departed, after having made a small present to the monastery, and travelled nine leagues over plains covered with snow. The travelling in these snows is attended with great pain and danger, from the rays of the sun, which falling upon it, give it an insupportable brightness, that was very prejudicial to the sight, notwithstanding all the precautions we could take, by following the example of the natives, in putting a thin black or green silk handkerchief before our eyes, which only served to lessen the evil. When we met with peasants, it was necessary to dispute who should enter the snow, for the track was so narrow, that two horses could not pass by each other upon it. When the numbers are equal, they usually come to blows, otherwise the weakest yield. They unload their horses, and make them enter the snow, in which they sink up to their bellies, and thus stand to give a passage to the others. To this all whom we met were obliged by my conductor to

submit. We passed by several towns and villages, and at night arrived at Irivan.

Irivan is a large dirty city, the greatest part of which is filled with gardens and vineyards. It is situated in a plain surrounded with mountains, and on the banks of two rivers, the Zengui washing it to the north-west, and a river called the Forty Fountains, from the number of its sources, running to the south-west. The fortress, which is at a little distance, might pass for a small city. It is of an oval form, four thousand paces round, and contains eight hundred houses. None live in it but native Persians. The Armenians have shops, in which they work, and trade in the day; but at night they shut them up, and return to their houses. This fortress has three walls of earth, and battlements of white bricks, flanked with towers, and provided with narrow ramparts, extending on the north to a dreadful precipice, above two hundred yards deep, at the bottom of which flows the river. This inaccessible part is only fortified with terraces, furnished with artillery. The garrison consists of two thousand Persians. It has as many gates and walls, all of them cased with iron, and defended by batteries, porteullises, and fortified guard-houses. The palace of the governor of the province is on the brink of the precipice, and makes a handsome appearance. On an eminence, at a thousand paces distance, is a fort, fortified with a double wall and artillery, that commands the fortress.

There are several churches in the city, the principal of which is the bishop's, and another called Catovike; these were erected during the reigns of the last kings of Armenia. The others, which have been since built, are small, and sunk in the

earth, and have some resemblance to catacombs.

Near the episcopal church is an old tower, built of hewn stones; but I could neither learn the time nor the use for which it was built. On the outside are inscriptions, in characters like those of the Armenians, but the Armenians cannot read them. This is an antique work, of a singular architecture, and around it are several ruins, which seem to have belonged to a cloister. Near the above structure is a mosque, in ruins; and at some distance is a large square, four hundred paces in diameter, surrounded with trees: this is used for carousals, horse-races, wrestling-matches, and all exercises either on horse-back or on foot. There are many baths in the town and fortress, and several caravanseras; the finest of which is within five hundred paces of the castle. It was built a few years ago by the governor of Armenia. The gate is eighty paces deep, and forms a fine gallery, filled with shops, where all sorts of stuffs are sold. The body of the edifice is square, and contains three great lodging-rooms, and sixty small ones, with large stables, and many spacious warehouses. Before it is a market, surrounded with shops, in which are sold all sorts of provisions; and by the side of it is a fine mosque, and two coffee-houses.

Irivan is situated in 41° 15′ north latitude, and enjoys a good air; but it is thick, and very cold. The winter lasts long, and the snow sometimes falls in April. The country is, however, extremely fertile, and the wine produced in its neighbourhood is good and cheap. The Armenians have a tradition, that Noah planted the vine near Irivan, and point out the spot. All sorts of provisions are produced in the neighbourhood of the city, and sold at a low

price. The two rivers that flow by its side, and the lake of Irivan, which is at three small days journey to the north-west, furnish the city with fine fish, particularly trouts and carp, that are remarkably good, and famous all over the east; some of them I have seen three feet long.

The Armenians esteem this the most ancient city in the world, and believe that Noah dwelt there, both before and after the deluge, when he descended from the mountain on which the ark rested. They even say, that here was the terrestrial paradise.

At twelve leagues from Irivan, is the celebrated mountain, on which almost all the people of the country are firmly persuaded that the ark rested. This mountain is so high and large, that when the air is clear, it does not appear above two leagues distant. The Armenians even believe that the ark is still on the summit of this mountain, and say that a monk named James, being resolved to see it, or die in the attempt, went half way up the acclivity; but could go no farther, because, having ascended thus far every day, he was, while asleep in the night, carried back to the place where he set out in the morning. They add, that this continued a long time, till God being willing to satisfy, in part, his desires, sent him a piece of the ark by an angel, and ordered him to be told, that all access to the top was forbidden to mankind.

At the foot of the mountain is a village of Christians, and a monastery; for which the Armenians have great devotion, believing that Noah first offered sacrifices there after the deluge. This is called the monastery of the Apostles; from its being pretended that the bodies of St. Andrew and St. Mat-

thew were found there, and that the skull of that evangelist is preserved in the church of the monastery.

I having sent to inform the governor of Irivan of my arrival, a messenger came to tell me I was welcome; and that he was very desirous of seeing me, and a part of my jewels I had brought. I was then asked, how many men I had with me, and whether I chose to lodge in the fortress, or in the great caravansera. I chose the latter; because there can be no place more secure, and there is no want of company; for merchants come there from all parts of Asia. On this the governor giving orders for my having one of the best apartments, I went thither the next day, with all my baggage, and about noon an officer belonging to the governor brought me an order from the intendant, to receive daily from the proper officer, bread, wine, flesh, fish, fruit, rice, butter, wood, and other necessaries fit for six persons.

On the 10th I went, by the governor's desire, to pay him a visit, and found him in a large, handsome, light closet, with several lords of the country. He treated me with great complaisance, told me three times that I was welcome, and entertained me with sweet-meats and Russian brandy. I showed him my patents, after which he spent an hour in asking me news of Europe, in relation to the wars in that part of the world; the present disposition of the Christian princes, and the state of the sciences, with the new discoveries that had been made. He spent another hour in examining the jewels I had brought, of which he talked like one who was well acquainted with them. He set aside those that particularly pleased him, and such as he

thought would be agreeable to the princess his wife. Having kept me to dinner, he honoured me afterwards with his conversation for half an hour longer, and then dismissed me, ordering my mehemander to suffer me to want for nothing.

This governor was one of the greatest lords of Persia; he was beloved by the king, and revered by the court; his two sons were his majesty's chief favourites; and he was respected by the people, on account of his justice and integrity. Indeed he well deserved his good fortune; for, besides these amiable qualities, he was a man of sense, and fond of the arts and sciences.

On the 12th I dismissed the officer belonging to the viceroy of Georgia, who had conducted me to Irivan, on which occasion I made him a present of eight pistoles.

On the 5th of April the governor went to a camp, which he had caused to be formed a league from the city, in a large and beautiful meadow, always covered with flowers during the spring. The two rivers that pass by Irivan, wind in a serpentine course, with a gentle stream, forming many small islands. The governor's quarter, and that of the princess his wife, and those of the most considerable persons who accompanied them, were separate, and each in an island; but they had a communication with each other, by means of small flying bridges. The governor's tent was extremely magnificent; they had all the accommodations of a palace, in miniature, even to baths and stoves. His household consisted of five hundred men, without reckoning women and eunuchs. The great are here accustomed thus to pass the spring in the country. They take the diversions of hunting, fishing, walk-

ing, and exercises on foot and on horseback. Thus they taste the freshness of the air, of which they are extremely fond, and if they have no business that call them to the city, they continue to enjoy these delights during the summer, in the most delicious parts of the neighbouring mountains.

I left Irivan on the 8th of April, and on the 12th arrived at Nacchivan, once a vast city, but now a prodigious heap of ruins. Five leagues to the north is a large village named Abrener, which signifies a fertile field. The inhabitants of this, and seven other neighbouring little villages, are of the Roman Catholic religion. A Dominican of Bologna, 350 years ago, brought this part of the country under the authority of the Pope, and above twenty other villages submitted to him; but they have since returned to their obedience to the Armenian patriarch; the number of those who adhere to the church of Rome diminishing daily, on account of the persecution of the patriarch and the governors of Nacchivan.

The next day having passed the river Nacchivan over a large bridge, we proceeded through a dry and barren country, to the river Aras, the ancient Araxes, opposite the ruins of the city of Julfa the old. The city was situated on the declivity of a mountain, facing the river. The avenues that led to it, which were naturally difficult of access, were guarded by forts. I don't think there is in the world a more hideous and barren place, neither a tree nor a blade of grass is to be seen.

It was Abas the Great who ruined Julfa. That great and polite prince, seeing his forces unequal to those of his enemies, and reflecting on the means of preventing their returning every year into Persia,

to make and preserve their conquests there, resolved to render all the country a desert between Erzerum and Tauris, on a line with Irivan and Nacchivan, which was the way by which the Turks commonly came, where they fortified themselves, because they found provisions sufficient for the subsistence of their army. He therefore removed the inhabitants and the cattle, ruined the edifices of every kind, set fire to all the fields and trees, and even poisoned several fountains.

But to return: the Aras has its source in the mountains on which it is pretended that Noah's ark rested, and after dividing Armenia and Media, falls into the Caspian Sea. This river is large and rapid: bridges have been built over it, but however massy and strong they were made, they could not resist the force of the current. Indeed the noise of the waters, and the rapidity of their course, are very astonishing. We passed it in a large boat, made to carry twenty horses and thirty persons at a time. I suffered none to pass over with me but my men and my baggage. Four men took care of the boat, and proceeded three hundred paces along the bank up the river; by little and little they got into the stream, and then made use of only a long helm, to direct its course to the other bank. The boat was then driven by the current with an incredible impetuosity, and proceeded five hundred paces in an instant. The boat-men were above two hours in going and coming, on account of the efforts they were obliged to make in going against the stream.

I have observed that this river separates Armenia from Media. This last kingdom, which formerly held the empire of Asia, composes only a part

of a province of Persia, called Azerbeyan, or Asurpaican.

We now proceeded to the north-west, and the next day reached Marant, a good city, composed of 2,500 houses, situated at the foot of a hill, at the end of a fine fertile plain, watered by a small river named Zeloulou. The gardens of the Marant take up more room than the town itself, and produce great quantities of fruit, esteemed the best in Media. In this country is also gathered the cochineal insect.

From hence we proceeded four leagues, constantly turning between the mountains; afterwards we passed through fine fertile plains, that are well cultivated, and on the 17th arrived at Tauris, the second city of Persia, both with respect to its extent, its commerce, riches, and the number of its inhabitants.

Tauris is situated in a plain, at the foot of a mountain: it is of an irregular figure, and has neither walls nor fortifications. Through it passes the little river Spingtcha, which sometimes swelling, carries away the houses on its banks. Another river called the Agi, passes by the north side of the city, and is salt six months in the year, from the torrents which fall into it, after they have passed over lands covered with salt. The city is divided into nine quarters, or wards; the bazars composing the heart of the city, and the dwelling-houses, most of which have a garden, are on the outside. There are here many magnificent structures, the bazars just mentioned make as fine an appearance as in any part of Asia, from their largeness and great extent; from the beautiful domes with which they are covered; from the multitude of people, and the vast quantity

of merchandize with which they are filled. The finest of these, in which the jewels and most valuable merchandize are sold, is an octagon, and is called the Kaiferie, or Royal Market. As to the other public buildings, they are equally noble. There are said to be three hundred caravanseras, which are so spacious, that three hundred persons may lodge in each; and the mosques and baths are answerable to the grandeur of the other buildings. There are three hospitals in the city, in which nobody is lodged; but provisions are given twice a-day to all who come. Upon a hill, at the west end of the city, is a pretty hermitage, and at the east end are the ruins of a castle.

There is the largest square at Tauris I have ever seen; it being much more spacious than that of Ispahan. The Turks, when they were in possession of this city, have frequently drawn up within this square 30,000 men in order of battle. In the evening the populace are diverted there with drolls, mountebanks, wrestling, ram and bull-fights; the repeating of pieces in prose and verse, and dancing wolves. The people of Tauris place their highest entertainment in seeing these dances: those wolves that are most expert at them are sold for fifty crowns each. This spacious square is in the day time used as a market for all kinds of provisions.

The number of inhabitants in Tauris, I believe, amounts to at least 550,000 people, besides a multitude of strangers that are constantly there from all parts of Asia. The finest Persian turbans are made in this city, and I have been assured by the principal merchants, that the inhabitants annually manufacture 6,000 bails of silk. The commerce of

this city extends not only all over Persia, but into Turkey, Russia, Tartary, the Indies and the Black Sea.

Though Tauris is situated only in the thirty-eighth degree of north latitude, the air is cold, dry and healthful. This proceeds from its being exposed to the north, and from the tops of the surrounding mountains being covered with snow nine months in the year; from whence the wind almost constantly blows in the evenings and the mornings. The city abounds with all the necessaries and luxuries of life; and these are extremely cheap. The Caspian Sea, which is not above forty leagues distant, supplies it with fish, which are also found in the river Agi, already mentioned. In the summer they have abundance of deer and wild fowls: in the mountains are eagles, which the people of distinction bring down with the hawk. This kind of fowling is very curious and astonishing. All kinds of fruit are in the greatest plenty, and there are said to be above sixty sorts of grapes in the neighbourhood of the city. In short, there is not any part of Persia, where a person may live better and cheaper than at Tauris.

In the neighbourhood of the city are large quarries of white marble; one kind of which is transparent: and at a small distance are two little mines, the one of gold, and the other of salt: the gold mine has, however, been long neglected; the quantity found of that valuable metal being so small, as to be scarcely worth the labour of procuring it.

I stayed at Tauris for some time, during which I sold a number of jewels to the governor, and the son of the receiver-general of the province, for which I received a thousand crowns; but they

would not allow me to get any thing by them; the first placed to my account his father's interest with the shah, and the other that of his brother's, and of his uncle, Mirza Sadec, the great chancellor, forcing me to take the letters of recommendation they offered me, as a recompence for giving them the profit I ought to have made. It is impossible to conceive the caresses, the flattery, the engaging and agreeable behaviour, used by the great in Persia, to promote their own interest, even in affairs of the smallest moment; in which they act with such an appearance of sincerity, that a person ought to be perfectly acquainted with the genius of the country and of the court, to prevent his being deceived by them.

As this was the time when the Curdes, the Turkumans, and other nations who dwell in tents, and are mostly robbers, quit the plains, on account of the heat of the sun, and remove, with their flocks and habitations, into the mountains, in search of shade and pasture, we were advised, for the greater security, to wait for company; for this purpose I staid till the 28th of May, and then set out with the provost of the merchants, who had fourteen horses and ten valets.

The first night we lodged at Vaspinge, a town consisting of six hundred houses. Several fine rivulets run with a serpentine stream on all sides, and it is adorned with many gardens and plantations of poplar and linden trees, that are raised for the use of building. The next day we proceeded through fertile plains, interspersed with villages; our road then winded among the mountains, and again opened into plains, and after crossing several rivers, we arrived, on the 5th of June, at the city of Zen-

gan, situated in a valley between the mountains, where they are not above half a league distant from each other.

This city is surrounded with gardens, and a pleasant country, but on the inside it is only remarkable for the extent of its ruins. It is said to have been founded several centuries before the birth of Christ, and that it once contained 20,000 houses. It was entirely destroyed by Tamerlane, on his first coming to it; but he afterwards hearing that the sciences had long flourished there, and that it had produced many great men, caused it to be, in part, rebuilt: since that time, it has been frequently sacked and plundered by the Turks.

On the 6th we passed through the most delightful country I ever beheld, the way was even and straight, through a fine plain, watered by a considerable number of brooks, that rendered it extremely fertile: we saw so many villages that we could scarce count them; with a variety of gardens and groves, through which were beautiful avenues, that afforded the finest landscapes. Having proceeded five leagues through these pleasing scenes, we alighted at a large caravansera, within a cannon-shot of Sultania.

This city, which is situated at the foot of a mountain, makes a fine appearance at a distance; but on approaching it, the beauties we admire afar off vanish. There are, however, some public edifices that are well built, and about 3,000 houses.

The next day we travelled through plains as beautiful as the former, and on the 8th arrived at Ebher, a considerable town, intermixed with gardens, built on the banks of a small river that runs through the midst of it. Its situation is extremely

agreeable; the air is good, and the soil produces abundance of fruit, and all the necessaries of life.

Leaving Casbin, or Caswin, to the right, we proceeded on our journey towards Ispahan. We had, for some time, set out an hour or two before sun-set, and completed a journey of five or six leagues by about midnight. People in the East generally travel in this manner during the heat of the summer, to secure themselves from the heat of the sun, which is very fatiguing both to man and beast. In the night they travel with greater speed. The servants, from time to time, proceed on foot, and their masters themselves are glad to walk a little, to prevent their being seized with sleep, and to keep themselves warm, which eases the horses. On their arrival they go to bed, and gain in the day the sleep they lost in the night. Another advantage of travelling in the night is, that the beasts of burden take their rest at a time when they would be incommoded by the heat of the sun and the flies. Besides, what is wanted both for man and beast may be more easily provided during the day.

On the 13th, two hours before day, we arrived at Sava, a city situated in a sandy and stony plain. It is two miles round, and encompassed with a wall; but it is thinly peopled, and the houses in the suburbs are ruinous, for want of inhabitants: the walls are also but ill preserved. However, the remains of some grand edifices show that it was once a place of great importance. The histories of Persia agree, that the whole plain of Sava was formerly a morass, or salt-lake, like that called the Sea of Salt, which lies twenty leagues to the west of this city, and is crossed by a causeway extending thirty leagues, in going from Ispahan to Hyrcania,

Opposite Sava, to the west, is a tomb, rendered famous by the Persians going in pilgrimage to it; this is called Echmoul, or Samuel, from the opinion that this prophet was interred there. They have built over his tomb a fine mausoleum, in the middle of a magnificent mosque.

At the distance of nine leagues to the east of the city, are some ruins of the ancient city of Rey, once the largest in all Asia. The Persian geographers say, that in the ninth century it was divided into 96 quarters, each of which had 46 streets, 400 houses, and 10 mosques: that the city also contained 4,600 colleges, 16,600 baths, 15,000 minarets belonging to mosques, 12,000 mills, 1,700 canals, and 13,000 caravanseras. The Arabian authors represent it as the most populous city in Asia, and that, except Babylon, no city ever exceeded it in wealth, and the number of inhabitants. Hence it obtained the pompous titles given it in history, as, the Spouse of the World, the Gate of the Gates of the Earth, and the Market of the Universe. This city was situated in 30° 35′ north latitude.

On the 13th we proceeded to Kom, a large city situated along the bank of a river. It has also several handsome caravanseras, and fine mosques; the most beautiful of these last is, that in which are interred the princess Fatima, Mahomet's daughter, and the two last kings of Persia. The structure of this mosque is beautiful, and its ornaments extremely sumptuous. The access is through four large and stately courts, the first of which is a handsome garden, and the last is paved with transparent marble, and surrounded with neat lodgings for the priests. The door to each mausoleum is plated with silver, and the tombs are surrounded

with grates of the same metal. Nothing can be imagined richer, neater and more magnificent, than these mausolea. To that of Fatima the Persians give the name of Massuma, or pure, and hold it in great veneration. There is a revenue of 3,200 tomans belonging to the place.

We left Kom on the 16th, and three days after arrived at Casan, a large town, the houses of which are built of earth and brick. It has several caravanseras, one of which was built by Shah Abbas, and is esteemed the finest in all Persia. On the inside are four noble rooms, surrounding a square court, with an arcade both above and below, that above being secured by a balustrade. The entrance is under a high and magnificent portico, which, as well as the rest of the building, is adorned with Mosaic work. In the middle of the court is a reservoir of water, raised about five feet high.

On the 24th we left Casan, and on the 29th arrived at Ispahan, the metropolis of Persia, and one of the largest cities in the world; for, including the suburbs, it is not less than twenty-four miles in circumference. It is built on the banks of the Zenderoud, over which are three fine bridges, one near the middle of the city, and one at each end. The walls of Ispahan are about 20,000 paces round; they are only built with earth, and are so hid by the houses and gardens, both on the inside and without, that, in many places, they cannot be seen. The city is also defended by a ditch and castle.

The beauty of Ispahan particularly consists in the great number of its magnificent palaces, handsome houses, large caravanseras, beautiful bazars, and in its canals, and spacious streets, the sides of which are adorned with rows of lofty plane-trees;

but the other streets are generally narrow and crooked. The worst is, they are not paved; but as, on the one hand, the air is very dry, and on the other, the people water the street, before their houses, morning and evening, they are neither so dirty nor so dusty as might be expected. They have three considerable inconveniences: one, that the streets being over vaults, made for the passage of the canals, which run under them, they sometimes fall in, and endanger the lives of the passengers. Another is, there being wells in the streets, the sides of which are even with the earth, by which the passengers are exposed to the same danger, if they do not take sufficient care. The third inconvenience is a very disagreeable one, which is, that under the walls of the houses are large holes for receiving all the filth, and sometimes serving as common necessaries. The streets, however, do not stink, as might be imagined; which is in part owing to the dryness of the air, and also to the pits being emptied every day by the peasants, who bring fruit and other provisions to the city, and load their cattle with the ordure, which they carry away to manure their gardens. This city, on every side, appears at a distance like a wood, intermixed with large and lofty domes and minarets.

CHAP. V.

The author leaves Ispahan, and visits the remains of the ancient palace of Persepolis, which are particularly described; proceeds to Schiras, to Laer, arrives at Gambroom.

ON the 2d of February, 1674, having sold great part of my jewels, I left Ispahan, and proceeded to

Mayar, a village consisting of three hundred houses, situated between two mountains, and extending from the one to the other, so that it is impossible to pass between them, without going through it. The country about it is, however, dry and barren, without trees or the least verdure, owing to the scarcity of the water, though the inhabitants have enough to supply their gardens.

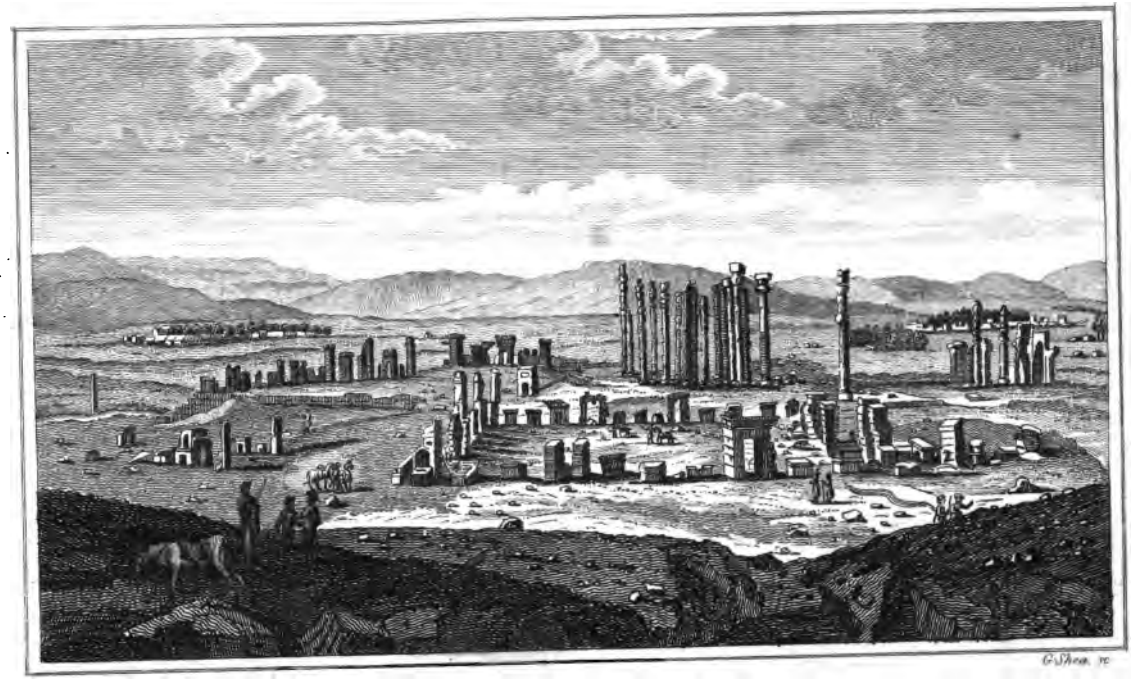
On leaving this place the next day, the valleys extended three leagues together between the mountain. Then turning to the right, we entered a beautiful plain, of a vast extent, which I have had the pleasure of crossing several times, and have found, that from the middle of March to the middle of November it is covered with flowers, flocks, grain and fruit. We stopped at Comicha, or Komminsja, a town three miles round, but full of gardens, and thinly inhabited. The finest buildings here are the dove-cots, which represent lofty round-towers. It is thought that this place is the Orebatis of Ptolemy. Within a cannon-shot from the side of the town next Ispahan, is the tomb of a Persian saint, covered with a dome. In a court before it are two reservoirs of water, at twenty paces distance from each other. They are furnished with fish, some of which have rings of brass, gold or silver, in their noses. The fish of one of these basons are held so sacred, that the people imagine, that if any one presume to touch them, he will immediately drop down dead.

The two following days we proceeded through a fine country, interspersed with rivulets and villages, and having passed through Anamabaet, a large town, which is said to have separated Persia from Parthia, took up our lodging at a town named Yes-

de-cas, or Jesdegaes, seated on the side of a mountain, with a large valley before it. The houses rise from this valley one above the other, affording a fine prospect at a distance. On the top of a round eminence in the midst of the valley, is a castle built of earth, and opposite to it is a large caravansera. The inhabitants of this town eat the best bread in all Persia.

The next day I was twelve hours on horseback, in proceeding eight leagues, on account of the snow, and the ruggedness of a mountain over which we were obliged to pass; though my baggage was carried on four vigorous mules, and I myself was well mounted. I afterwards passed through pleasant plains, and at length arrived on the 13th at the ruins of the ancient Persepolis.

At a distance these magnificent remains appear as in a kind of amphitheatre, the mountains forming a half-moon, as if to embrace them. They are seated in a fine plain, that extends two leagues in breadth from the south-west to the north-east; and near forty leagues in length from the north-west to the south-east. This plain is usually called Mardasjo; the inhabitants pretend, that it contains 881 villages, and about 1,500 within the distance of twelve leagues around the ruins, including the villages seated among the mountains, some of which are adorned with beautiful gardens. In the winter season the greatest part of this plain is covered with water, which is favourable to the culture of the rice that grows there at that time. The soil of this agreeable plain is mostly converted into arable lands, and watered with a number of streams, that renders it exceedingly fertile. It abounds with several sorts of birds, particularly cranes, pigeons,



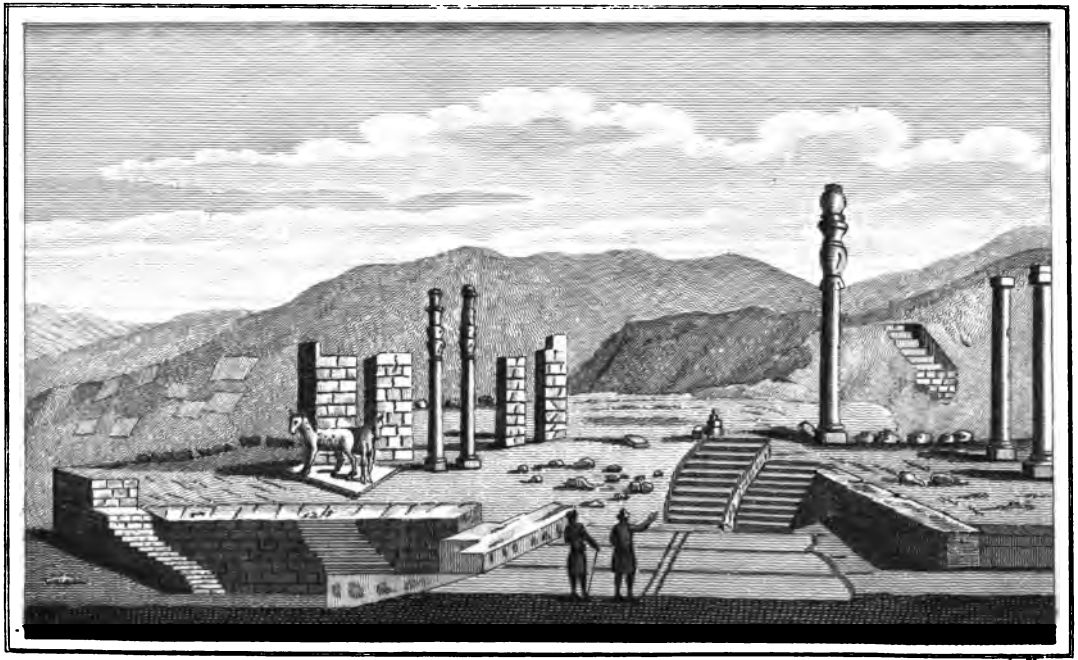
A View of the Ruins of the Palace of Persepolis from the East

Dublin. Published by J. Christie, 17 Ross Lane.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.



G. Shea. sc.

The Ascent to the Columns.

Dublin. Published by J. Christie 17 Hafs Lane.

quails, snipes, partridges, hawks, and vast flocks of crows, which are very numerous throughout all Persia.

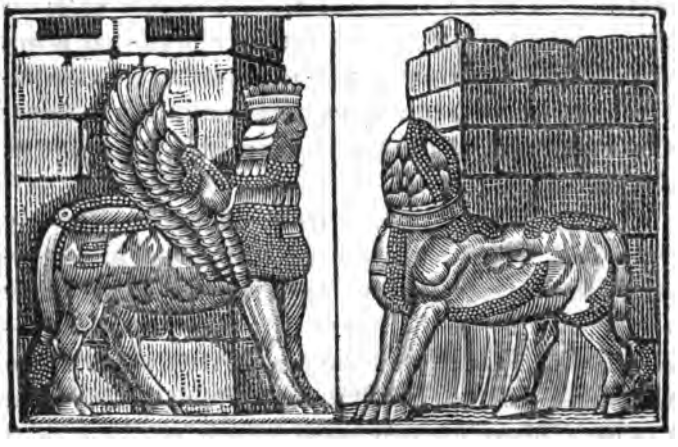
The ancient palace of the kings of Persia, usually called the House of Darius, and by the inhabitants Chel-menar, or Chil-minar, which signifies the forty pillars, is situated to the west, at the foot of the mountain of Kulierag-nêt, or Compassion, anciently called the Royal Mountain, which is entirely composed of freestone. That superb edifice has the walls of three of its sides still standing. The front extends six hundred paces from north to south, and three hundred and ninety from east to west, as far as the mountain, where an ascent is formed between some scattered rocks, beyond which there appears to have been formerly some other buildings, the rocks in some places appearing smooth, and finely polished.

The top of this edifice presents to the view a platform of four hundred paces, extending from the middle of the front wall to the mountain; and along three sides of this wall is carried on a pavement of two stones joined together, eight feet broad. The height of the wall in some places is twenty-four feet, but it is not every where so high; in some places the earth about it is raised, and in others the wall itself has sunk. On examining the previous remains, we must proceed as if we were examining those celebrated beauties, whom age or sickness has brought low, that is, from the traces of the beauty we see, to form an idea of what they were. The stones of the wall are black, harder than marble, some of them finely polished, and many of them of such an amazing size, that it is difficult to conceive how they were able to remove and raise such prodigious masses.

The principal stair-case is placed between the middle of the front, and the northern end of the edifice. It consists of two flights of steps that wind off from each other to the distance of forty-two feet at the bottom. These steps are only four inches high, and fourteen in breadth; they are the most commodious I ever saw, except those of the viceroy's palace at Naples, which are, however, in my opinion, something higher. There are fifty-five of these steps on the northern side, and fifty-three to the south; but these last are not so entire as the others. I am likewise persuaded that there are several others under ground, that have been covered over by length of time, as well as part of the wall, which rises forty-four feet eleven inches high in the front. At the bottom of these two flight of steps is a single flight, extending fifty-one feet four inches from one to the other; from thence the two flights are carried off from each other, and return back from the centre at an equal distance from the extreme parts of the top; and above these flights is a pavement of large stones, and another single flight of steps, seventy-five feet wide, answering to that of the bottom, and leading up to the grand entrance of the edifice. This stair-case has a very fine and singular effect, answerable to the magnificent remains of the rest of the building.

On ascending the upper steps, the spectator sees before him, at the distance of forty-two feet from the front wall of the stair-case, two grand portals, and as many columns. These portals are twenty-two feet four inches in depth, and thirteen feet four inches in breadth. On the inside, upon a kind of pilaster, on each hand is a large figure in basso relievo; they bear some resemblance to the sphinx,

and are twenty-two feet from the fore to the hinder-legs, and fourteen feet and a half high. The faces of these animals are broken, and their bodies much damaged; but, what is most extraordinary, the breast and fore-feet project from the pilaster. That on the first portal is turned towards the staircase; that on the second, which has wings, faces the mountain. Indeed it is impossible to know what these figures, thus mutilated, were designed to represent; but the bodies have some resemblance to that of a horse. The reader will conceive a more perfect idea of these extraordinary pieces of antiquity, from the following cut, taken from Mr. Le Bruyn's drawings made on the spot.



On the upper part of these pilasters are characters, which, from their smallness and elevation, it is impossible to distinguish. The height of the first portal is thirty-nine feet, and that of the second twenty-eight; the pilasters stand on a base five feet two inches in height.

The two columns that appear between the portals are the least damaged of all, particularly with re-

spect to their capitals, and the other ornaments of the upper parts; but the bases are entirely covered over with earth. They are fourteen feet in circumference, and rise to the height of fifty-four feet. There were formerly two others between this and the last portal, several pieces of which lie half buried in the ground.

At the distance of fifty-two feet south of the same portal is a large basin for water, cut out of a single stone twenty feet long, and seventeen feet five inches in breadth, and raised three feet and a half above the surface of the floor. From this basin to the northern wall is an extent of ground comprehending a hundred and fifty paces in length, in which nothing is to be seen but the fragments of large stones, and part of the shaft of a column that is not fluted like the rest, and is twenty feet in circumference: beyond this tract of ground, and as far as the mountain, the earth is covered with heaps of stones.

Proceeding southward from the portals already described, you see two other flights of steps resembling the former, the one to the east, and the other to the west. On the upper part the wall is embellished with foliage, and the representation of a lion rending a bull, in basso relievo, much larger than the life. There are also small figures on the middle wall. This stair-case is half buried under the earth.

From hence extends a wall 45 feet in length, beyond the lower part of the staircase, and then is an interval of 67 feet, extending to the western front, which corresponds with the other, and has three ranges of figures one over the other, with a lion tearing an ass that has a horn projecting from the forehead; and between these animals and rows of figures

is a square filled with antique characters, the uppermost of which are defaced. The figures are less damaged in that part of the structure, where the ground is lower: but the wall which extends from the staircase to the western front, has not any figures. On the other side the stairs are three ranges of small figures; but those in the upper row are only visible from the waist downwards. These figures are only two feet nine inches high, and the wall, which is five feet three inches in height, has an extent of 98 feet.

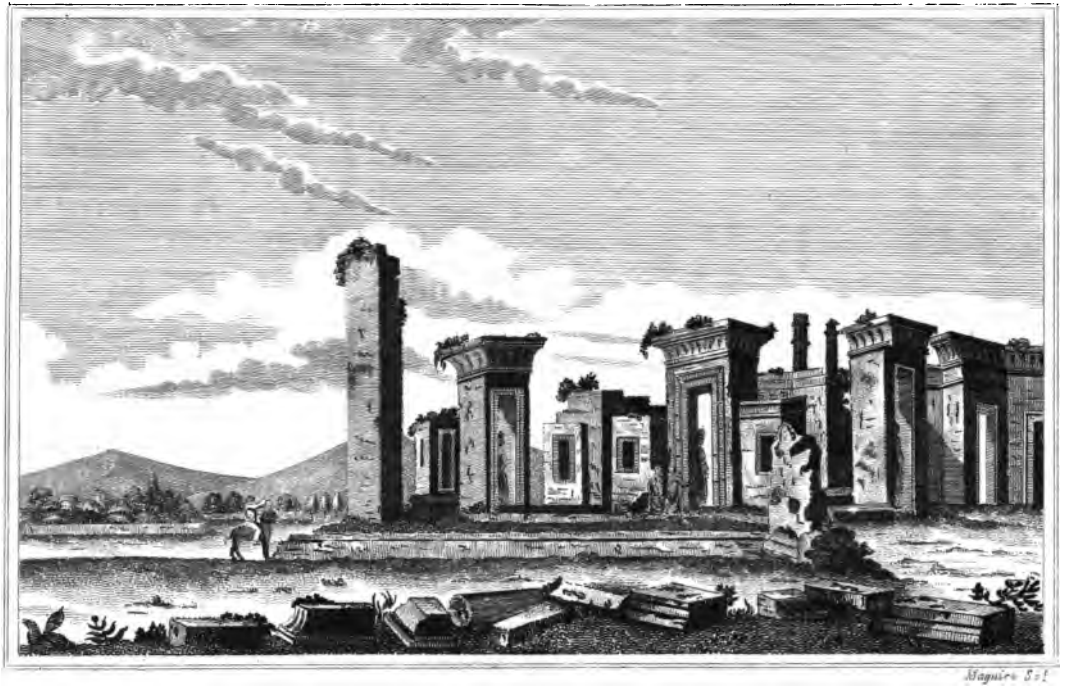
On the top of the steps last described, is an entrance into an open place paved with large stones, whose breadth is equal to the distance from the staircase to the first columns, which comprehends the space of 22 feet 2 inches. These columns are disposed into two ranges, each of which consists of six pillars, but none of them are entire; there are also eight bases or pedestals, and the ruins of some others. At the distance of 70 feet 8 inches were formerly six rows of other pillars, each row consisting of six: these thirty-six pillars were likewise 22 feet 2 inches distant from each other, but only seven of them are now entire; however, all the bases of the others are standing.

At the distance of 70 feet 8 inches from these rows of columns on the west, towards the front of the staircase, were only twelve other columns in two ranges, each of which contained six, but only five are now remaining. The ground is there covered with the fragments of columns, and the ornaments that served for their capitals; between which are pieces of sculpture, representing camels on their knees. On the top of one of the columns is a compartment, representing camels in that posture.

On advancing towards the east, you are presented

with a view of several ruins, consisting of portals, passages and windows. The insides of the portals are adorned with figures in bas relief. These ruins extend 90 paces from east to west, and 125 from north to south, and are 60 paces both from the columns and the mountains. In the middle of these ruins the earth is covered with 76 broken columns, nineteen of which still support their entablature; their shafts are formed of four pieces, besides the base and capital.

At the distance of 118 feet from these columns to the south, is an edifice, that rises higher than any other part of the ruins, from its being situated on a hill. The front wall, which is five feet seven inches high on that side, is composed of a single range of stones, some of which are eight feet deep; and the wall extends 113 feet from east to west, but has neither figures, nor any other ornaments. However, in the middle of the front are the ruins of a double stair-case, on the sides of which are several figures. The rest of the building was chiefly composed of large and small portals, and is entirely destroyed. The largest of these portals is five feet wide, and five feet two inches deep. Among the rest, two portals appear to the north, with three niches, or windows, walled up. Under these portals are the figures of a man and two women, down to the knees, for their legs are covered with the earth that is raised against them. Under the other gate is the figure of a man, holding a lion by the mane. To the south is a portal and five windows, each of which is five feet nine inches wide, and eleven in height, including the cornice; their depth is equal to that of the grand portals. The two sides of this gate are carved with the figure of a man,



Maguire Sc.

The Portico to the East.

Dublin Published by J. Christie 17 Ross Lane.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

with something on his head resembling a tiara. He is accompanied by two women, one of whom holds an umbrella over his head. On the inside, three niches are covered with ancient Persian characters. We shall indulge the curious reader with two of these inscriptions. The meaning of the last is unknown; but the first, which is of a later date, signifies, "Strength is the gift of God alone."

There are two other gates to the west, that are not covered; within one of these is the figure of a man fighting a bull; with his left hand he grasps a horn in his forehead, while with his right he plunges a dagger into his belly. On the other side the figure, another man clasps the horn with his right hand, and stabs the beast with his left. The second portal has the figure of a man carved in the same manner, with a winged deer that has a horn in his forehead. Horns were anciently the emblems of strength and majesty, they were therefore given to the sun and moon; and Alexander was called by the Orientals, Dhulkarnam, or the horned, because he made himself king of the horns of the sun, that is, of the east and the west.

Behind this edifice are the ruins of another, which

exceed it in length by 38 feet. It has also niches and windows, the former of which are cut out of single stones. A little to the south is a double flight of steps, separated by walls embellished with small figures and foliage. Farther to the south are subterraneous passages, which extend a great length, and appear to have been aqueducts. Still farther to the south are the remains of another edifice, which extend 160 feet from north to south, and 191 from west to east. Ten portals belonging to it are still to be seen, together with seven windows, and forty inclosures, that were formerly covered rooms. In the middle are the bases of thirty-six columns, in six ranges, and the ground is covered with large stones, under which were aqueducts.

There anciently stood another structure to the westward of the last-mentioned building. On the ruins of the wall, which still rises near two feet above the pavement, are cut the figures of men in basso-relievo, each represented with a lance. The ground inclosed by this wall contains a number of round stones, that were the bases of columns.

On the east side of these last ruins are the remains of a beautiful stair-case, sixty feet in length, resembling that of the front wall: but though most of the steps are destroyed by time, the wall that separates the two flights is still eight feet in height, and adorned with figures almost as large as the life. The front contains the representation of a lion encountering a bull: there are also lions of the same workmanship on the wings of the stair-case; both of them accompanied with characters and figures almost as big as the life. Columns were formerly disposed between this edifice and the other last-mentioned. Among these ruins are four por-

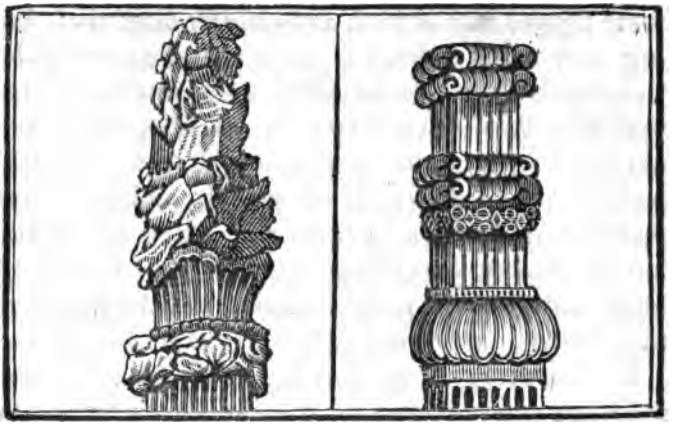
tals, each adorned on the inside with the figure of a man, and two women holding an umbrella over his head.

A little to the north side of these two last edifices are two portals with their pilasters, on one of which is also the figure of a man and two women, one of whom holds an umbrella over his head. Above these women is a small figure with wings, which are expanded to the sides of the portico. The lower part of the bust of this figure seems to terminate on the two sides with a spread foliage, and a kind of frieze. Over the second figure a man is seated in a chair with a staff in his hand, and another stands behind him, with his right hand upon the chair. A small figure above holds a circle in its left hand, and points to something in his right. Under this portal are three ranges of figures, all of which have their hands lifted up, and over the third pilaster, which still remains, two women hold an umbrella over the head of a man. The earth is covered with fragments of columns, and other antiquities.

From hence you proceed to the last ruins of the structures on the mountain. On the south side are two portals, under each of which a man is seated in a chair, with a staff in his right hand, and in his left a kind of vase. Behind him is another figure, which holds something on his head like the tail of a sea-horse, and has a linen cloth in his right hand. Below are three rows of figures with lifted hands: four in the first, and five in each of the other two rows. They are three feet four inches high: but the seated figure is much larger than the life. Above this are several ornamental ranges of foliage, the lowest of which is intermixed with small lions, and the highest with oxen. Over these ornaments

is a little winged figure, which holds in its left hand something that resembles a small glass, and makes a signal with its right. These portals are twelve feet five inches in breadth, and ten feet four inches deep, and the highest of the pilasters is from twenty-eight to thirty feet. On the two towards the north a man is seated, with a person behind him, like the preceding figures, and behind this are two other men, holding in their hands something that is broken; before the figure represented sitting, are two other figures, one with his hands placed on his lips, with an air of salutation, and the other holding a small vessel. Above these figures is a stone, filled with ornaments, and below are five ranges of figures, three feet in height: these are a band of soldiers armed in different manners. From the foot of these mountains you have a full view of all the ruins, except the walls and stair-cases, that cannot here be seen; and the whole appears as in the large plate.

No other difference is observable in the columns, except that some of them have capitals, and others have not; with respect to the elevation of those that are perfect, they are all from seventy to seventy-two feet high, and are eighteen feet five inches in circumference, except those near the first portals. The bases are round, and twenty-four feet five inches in circumference; these are four feet three inches high, and the lower moulding is one foot five inches thick. They have three sorts of ornaments, which may be termed capitals. In order to afford as perfect an idea as possible of the singular architecture observed in this palace, we have, for the satisfaction of the curious, given a cut or two of these capitals; one in its present state, and the other as it must have appeared before it was injured by time.



Besides the basso-relievos already mentioned, there are many others, particularly the representation of a triumph, or a procession of people bearing presents to a king, consisting of a great number of figures, with some led-horses, an empty chariot, a led camel, &c. The drapery of all the human figures in this edifice is extremely singular, and has no relation to that of the ancient Greeks and Romans. Their military habits are agreeable to the mode of the Persians and Medes. The rules of art are not observed in the figures, since no muscles are visible in the naked parts, and the figures themselves have a heavy air: nothing has been observed but the outlines, and this neglect causes them to appear stiff and inelegant: the draperies also have the same defects, and the whole has a tasteless sameness. However, the proportions have been finely kept, both in the great and small figures, which proves that those who made them were not entirely destitute of capacity, but were, probably, obliged to be too expeditious to finish them with proper care. The ornaments must, however, be acknowledged to be exceeding beautiful, as well as the chairs in which

some figures are seated, notwithstanding their being now much impaired. It is therefore probable, that there might be formerly some fine fragments that have been since destroyed. Besides, the generality of the stones are polished like a mirror, particularly those within the portals, and that compose the windows and pavements. These are of different colours, as yellow, white, grey, red, deep blue, and, in some places, black; but the stones of the greatest part of the edifice are of a clear blue.

Indeed every thing corresponds with the grandeur and magnificence of a great king's palace, to which the images and relievos give a surprising air of majesty. It is certain, there have been very stately portals, and grand galleries, to afford a communication with all the detached parts of the structure; most of the columns, whose remains are still so beautiful, were certainly intended to support those galleries, and there even seem to be still some remains of the royal apartments. In a word, the magnificence of these ruins can never be sufficiently admired, and the structure must undoubtedly have cost immense treasures. This palace, which was the glory of all the East, owed its destruction to the debauchery and frenzy of Alexander the Great, who, after he had preserved it from the ravages of war, above two thousand years ago, reduced it to ashes at the solicitations of Thais, a Grecian courtezan.

There are two ancient tombs of the kings near the mountain, one to the north, and the other to the south; both of them are hewn out of the rock, and are noble fragments of antiquity. Their fronts are covered with figures and other ornaments. The form of both is nearly the same, and therefore a description of that to the north will serve. That

part of the tomb on which the figures are carved, is forty feet wide: the height is almost equal to the width below, and the rock extends on each side to the distance of sixty paces. Below, a range of four columns support the entablature on their capitals, each of which is composed of the heads of two oxen as far as the breast, with the fore legs bent on the top of each column. The gate, which is surrounded with ornaments, is placed between two of these columns in the middle, but is at present almost closed up. Above the columns is the cornice and entablature, adorned with eighteen small lions in bass-relief, nineteen on each side advancing towards the middle, where there is a small ornament resembling a vase. Above the lions are two ranges of figures, almost as large as the life, fourteen in each range, armed, and lifting up their hands, as if to support the building above them; and on the side is an ornament, somewhat in the form of a pillar, with the head of some animal that has only one horn. Above this is another cornice, ornamented with leaves. On the left, where the wall projects, are three rows of niches, one above each other, each of them containing two figures, armed with lances, and three others on the side, armed in the same manner. There are likewise two on the right side, with their left hands placed on their beards, and the right on their body; on the side of these are three others, in the same position as those opposite. At some distance below, and between these figures and an ornament that has some distant resemblance of a round pillar, there is another figure on each side, very much impaired. Above, on three steps, stands a figure, that has the air of a king, pointing at something with his right hand, and holding a

kind of bow in his left. Before him is an altar, on which an offering is made, from whence the flames are represented ascending. Above this altar appears the moon; and, it is said, that there was once a sun behind the figure; but nothing of it is now to be seen. In the middle, and above all this, appears a small mystic figure, that is also to be seen in several parts of the other buildings.

Two leagues from these ruins is a place called Noxi Rustan, where are four tombs of persons of eminence among the ancient Persians, that much resemble those of Persepolis, only they are cut much higher in the rock. This place receives its name from one Rustan, whose figure is there carved to perpetuate his memory. He is said to have been a potent prince, of an immense stature; for it is pretended that he was forty cubits high; and, according to the same ridiculous tradition, he is said to have lived 1113 years.

The tombs have their bases eighteen feet above the surface of the causeway, and rise about four times that height; and the rock is twice as high as the tombs, which are sixty feet wide in the middle. Under each tomb is a separate table, filled with large figures in low relief; and on two of these tables are some traces of men fighting on horseback. Between these tombs are three other tables, covered with figures, on which is a man on horseback, preceded by two others, and followed by a third, which is almost defaced. There are also some figures in the space between the two last works, and three under the third, two of which hold out their hands to each other. One of these is a woman, and both of them are half-buried in the earth.

These tombs possess an extent of 280 paces, and

at sixty paces distance from the first of them is a little square building. The figure of a man on horseback, between the two tombs, and in the middle of the fourth niche, has his hair shaped according to our mode, with a crown upon his head, and a pointed bonnet rising above it. He is dressed after the Roman manner, and has a large sword by his side, with the hilt in his left hand; his right is presented to a person before him. The third figure, which is also dressed in the Roman manner, opens his hands like a suppliant.

The figures half buried appear on the side of the third tomb, and two of them have their hands placed in a kind of circle. That in the middle, which is on horseback, represents Rustan in a Roman dress; he has likewise a bonnet, and an ornament like a crown, with flowing hair, a large beard, and his left hand upon the hilt of his sword: but notwithstanding the pretence of his prodigious stature, both he and his horse are of the common size. Before him is the figure of a woman, with flowing hair; she likewise wears a crown. She is dressed like Pallas, and supports part of her drapery with her left hand. The third figure represents a military man, with a tiara on his head, and his left hand likewise grasps the hilt of his sword. The fifth compartment is an imperfect appearance of figures fighting on horseback. All these are carved on the rock.

On the western side of this mountain, at 200 paces distance, are two tables with figures, likewise cut in the rock. That to the left represents two men on horseback, one of whom grasps a circle, of which the other has quitted the hold.

The tomb, said to have been that of Naxi Rus-

tan, evidently appears to be that made by Darius Hystaspes, from its exactly corresponding with the description given of it by Ctesias, in his History of Persia, after Herodotus; and with that of Diodorus Siculus.

On the 19th of February I left Persepolis, and the next morning reached Schiras, the capital of the province of Fars, and one of the greatest and most considerable cities in Persia. It is situated between the mountains, in a plain, between seven and eight leagues in length, and about four in breadth; as fine and as fertile a spot as imagination can conceive.

The city, which is about two leagues round, is not surrounded with walls, for they have been suffered to fall to ruin; but the gates, which remain entire, are large, strong, and covered with iron plates. Of these there are four, opening to the four cardinal points. The great streets are bordered with trees; these are their principal ornaments, for there are not many grand bazars, nor fine baths. The coffee-houses are spacious enough, consisting of scaffolds built over the running water, to give them the greater coolness. As to the mosques, there are nine more sumptuous than the rest, and, besides them, about three hundred more, that serve for chapels.

The public gardens at Schiras, which are about twenty, are extremely delightful; the trees are the largest of the kind, perhaps, in the whole world; these are planted without order, and the soil enamelled with flowers, which are in the greatest plenty, and of the brightest colours. In the king's garden, to the south of Schiras, I observed a tree, the trunk of which was eight yards round. The in-

habitants, from the great age of this tree, conceive the highest veneration for it; they go to pray under its shade, and tie chaplets, amulets, and pieces of their clothes to the boughs. The sick, or others for them, come there to burn incense, to fix lighted candles to it, and to perform other superstitious ceremonies, with the hopes of recovering ther health. There are, thoughout Persia, many trees thus superstitiously revered by the people.

About a quarter of a league to the east of Schiras is a tomb of Sheik Sadi, one of the most celebrated Persian authors, in prose and verse, who lived about four hundred years ago, and whose works contain the finest morals. On one side of his tomb is a large octagon bason, the water of which is moderately warm, and contains plenty of fish consecrated to the sheik; but the common people imagine, that if any person takes them, he will be punished with sudden death: but though I was several times at Schiras, I never went thither without having a good plate of these fish with the Carmelite friars, with whom I lodged.

On the same side of the city, by the corner of a mountain, are the ruins of an ancient castle, and at some distance from it, a convent of the Dervises, near which are two deep holes in the ground. The mouth of one of them is four feet and a half round, and it is of an unfathomable depth. I was told, that on throwing a large stone into it, one might distinctly repeat the Lord's prayer before the noise of its falling ceased; and this I found to be true, by trying the experiment three times successively.

A league beyond these ruins, you see the remains of an ancient building of stone and marble, which, notwithstanding the solidity of the structure, and

the durableness of the materials, is greatly decayed. It is a small temple, thirty-eight or forty paces round, situated on the declivity of a mountain, with three gates, which are still pretty entire, opening to the south and east. They are eleven feet high, and three broad; on the sides of each is the figure of a woman, done in relief, as big as the life, resembling those at Persepolis. The Persians call this place Mador Sulemon, that is, the mother of Solomon; they pretend that she built the temple, and came thither to pay her devotions. Bizarus relates, that a tomb is found there inscribed with Hebrew characters; but I saw no such thing, and am persuaded that these opinions are ill founded.

To the north-west of the city is a delightful avenue, extending to the king's garden, which is ninety-five paces wide, and nine hundred and sixty-six in length. On passing through the lodge at the end of the garden, you come into another beautiful avenue, bordered with cypress-trees; this is six hundred and twenty paces long, and twenty broad, and is covered over in the middle with flowers. You there see a delightful house, surrounded with a fine canal. At each corner of the building is a square fountain, that mingles its streams with the water of the canal. This house is spacious, and in the middle of it is a grand hall, covered with a dome, filled with niches both within and without. This beautiful avenue is bordered on each side with seventy-two lofty cypress-trees, one of which is twenty-two palms in circumference. We have given a view of the avenue and hall in the print. Behind the house is another avenue, bordered with cypress and senna trees, equal in extent to that of the others.

A Beautiful Avenue near the Kings Garden at Schiras.

Dublin. Published by J. Christie. 17 Reiss Lane.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

This is called Baeg Siae, or the Royal Garden.

The fertility of the country about Schiras is very surprising. It produces the finest horses, and the best pastures. The sheep are so fat, that their tails weigh eighteen or twenty pounds weight. As to the fruits, the pomegranates are as large as the head of a new-born child: but the best fruit is the grape, of which there are three principal sorts; one very small, which is sweet and delicious, and the seed so minute and tender that it can scarcely be perceived: the great white grape, and a large red grape, the bunches of which weigh twelve or thirteen pounds. Of this grape alone they make the excellent wine distinguished by the name of, the wine of Schiras, which, for its fine colour, and the richness of its taste, is esteemed the best, not only in Persia, but throughout the East. It indeed does not please at first, it appearing to be rough; but when one has drank it a few days, one cannot help preferring it to all others; and those who are used to it can relish no other wine. The people also make rose-water and oil, preserves and pickles.

On the 24th I left Schiras, where I had lodged in the monastery of the Carmelites, who give a very civil reception to all Europeans who come to them, without distinction of nation or religion, and thankfully take whatever any one gives them, in return for their hospitality.

Two days after, I took up my lodging at a caravansera named Kafer, situated by a town of the same name, that has several hundred houses, and a great number of gardens, in which is plenty of the most excellent fruits, as peaches, nectarines, figs and dates. The town is situated on the bank of a river that runs by in a deep hollow.

On the 27th, I proceeded seven leagues, and the next day reached Jarron, a town consisting of 350 houses, and most of them built of date wood. This town is remarkable for the manufacture of felt bonnets, and for a kind of camblet: but is more particularly famous for its dates, which are esteemed the best in the world. The adjacent country abounds in water, brought thither by subterranean canals.

On the 5th of March we arrived at Laer, the capital of the province of the same name, situated between the mountains, in 29° 40′ north latitude, in a sandy country, rendered barren by the heat of the climate.

On the 7th of March I set out from Laer at three in the afternoon, and passing by the village of Chercoff, which is full of gardens, arrived at Gormouth, a town which, with its gardens, consisting chiefly of date-trees, was a league in length; and beyond the town groves of these trees extended as far as the eye could reach. The inhabitants of Caramania Deserta retire, during summer, into these woods, to shelter themselves from the heat, which, in that season, is insupportable. I had taken two camels at Laer, the one to carry water, and the other provisions, because the country was deserted; and really, for twenty-five leagues, I did not see a single person, every body being then retired into the woods, or to the mountains; and as the datés were then ripe, the people lived on almost nothing else. This fruit is nourishing, and wherever it grows there is a certainty of finding water.

On the 9th I proceeded six leagues through a mountainous and stony country, where are nevertheless many streams of running water, especially in spring. On the 12th we reached Courestoon, a

village that abounds in dates, and a kind of wild plums. The inhabitants cultivate tobacco, and sow great quantities of a kind of grain called zoura, which grows in bunches, somewhat like the ears of Indian corn, on canes eight or nine feet long. Of this they make bread, which is of a reddish colour; they also bake it like rice. As I was preparing to set out, at five in the evening, I observed that the air was darkened, as when the sky is covered with clouds; and considering that this could not be the case, I recollected that these clouds consisted of locusts; and indeed, as they passed, a prodigious number of those destructive insects fell to the ground: they were the largest I had ever seen, and so heavy, that they could not rise again. The peasants gathered them as they fell; and told me, that in this season such clouds appear almost every night: having gathered, they dry and salt them, after which they live upon them, and sell them to each other very cheap, as they are their common food.

This day we proceeded five leagues in a very level country; but through moving sands, into which the horses sunk. After advancing a league, we passed by a small village, abounding in date-trees and running-water: the inhabitants I found there cutting their corn; and as I had seen the people about Persepolis sowing their land about three weeks before, I could not help thinking it very remarkable, that I should see people sow corn after the middle of February, and reap it before the middle of March following. This has happened to me several times in my journeys through Persia, in the like space of three weeks. I have seen them plowing in one place; two days after the people have been sowing wheat; in a few days I have seen

the blade begin to sprout up out of the ground; then, advancing further, I have seen the green corn; then it has appeared in ear; then ripe, then cut, and then threshed. Indeed, the empire of Persia is so situated, and so extensive, that it has summer and winter at the same time; the one on the one side, and the other at the other.

The next day I set out at two in the morning, and reached Gambroon, or, as it is called by the Persians, Bander Abassie, or the Port of Abas. Gambroon is situated to the south-east of Schiras, as that town is of Ispahan. The distance between this place and the last-mentioned city is computed at 183 leagues; but these leagues are very long, and the mountains, with the badness of the roads, render the journey very tedious.

The houses of Gambroon are built so near the water, that, in a high sea, they are washed by the waves. It is situated between the isles of Ormus and Kismis, the one to the left, and the other to the right; and the coast of Arabia, being bordered by high mountains, may also be seen in a clear day to the right, at 20 leagues distance. Three leagues behind Gambroon are also very high mountains, which are far from barren, being covered with trees, and abounding with water. The territory belonging to Gambroon is, however, dry and sterile, consisting of a moving sand. The town is surrounded by a wall on the land side, and has two small fortresses. The houses are computed at 14 or 1500, one-third of which are Indian Gentoos, or idolaters, and a few Jews; the greatest part are Persians, and the rest English, French and Dutch, belonging to their respective companies. The governor of the province usually resides there, and not at the

capital, which is called Neris, and is ten days journey from thence: he has a pretty large and commodious palace at the end of the town, at the greatest distance from the sea, built with stone brought from the isle of Ormus.

This town has no port, but the road is as large, good and safe, as any in the universe; however, it has one great inconvenience, which is, that the vessels that stay there during the summer are subject to damage by the worms. The ships lie at anchor in four or five fathoms water, in as secure a situation as if they were in a basin.

The water of Gambroon is very brackish, and drank by none but the poor: it is taken out of pits dug three fathoms deep in the sand. The common people drink the water of Mines, a village at the distance of a league from the port; and the people in easy circumstances drink the water of Issin, a large and fine village, situated at the foot of the mountains.

As to the air of Gambroon, it is extremely disagreeable and unhealthy; the wind almost throughout the year changes four times a day. From midnight to break of day it blows from the north, and is cold: from break of day till ten or eleven o'clock in the morning it blows from the east, and is also cold: a south wind arises about three o'clock, which is hot, it proceeding from the sea: this changes to the west at sun-set, and blows hot till midnight. These sudden changes of the air from hot to cold produce many diseases, that are extremely fatal to foreigners, the most common of which are the dysentery, the bloody-flux, and malignant fevers.

Provisions are here very good, and in great plenty, particularly fish, which are brought fresh on shore

night and morning; they sometimes catch antelopes and partridges, but the natives live chiefly on milk and plants, of which there are all sorts here. As to fruits, they being brought from a great distance, cannot be had very cheap; the most common are nectarines, quinces, citrons, oranges, pomegranates, figs, melons, apples, pears, nuts, almonds, and grapes of several kinds.

On the 13th of March the principal person belonging to the French company took me with him to dine with the governor, who entertained us with great magnificence, after the Persian manner; we had music and dancing, and, among the rest, a young Indian posture-master.

I had not been long at Gambroon before the climate affected all my men, who were taken very ill, and I was much disordered myself, when, being informed of the danger of our being soon carried off, if we remained there, I resolved to return to Ispahan, without waiting any longer for a vessel I expected from India. I therefore set out, but was taken so ill at Tanguedelan, that my life was despaired of; I recovered however, reached Ispahan, and soon after returned to Europe.

CATHEDRAL LIBRARY,
A. M. D. G.
111 E. 50TH STREET,
NEW YORK CITY.

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

form 410

B'D JUN 10 1916